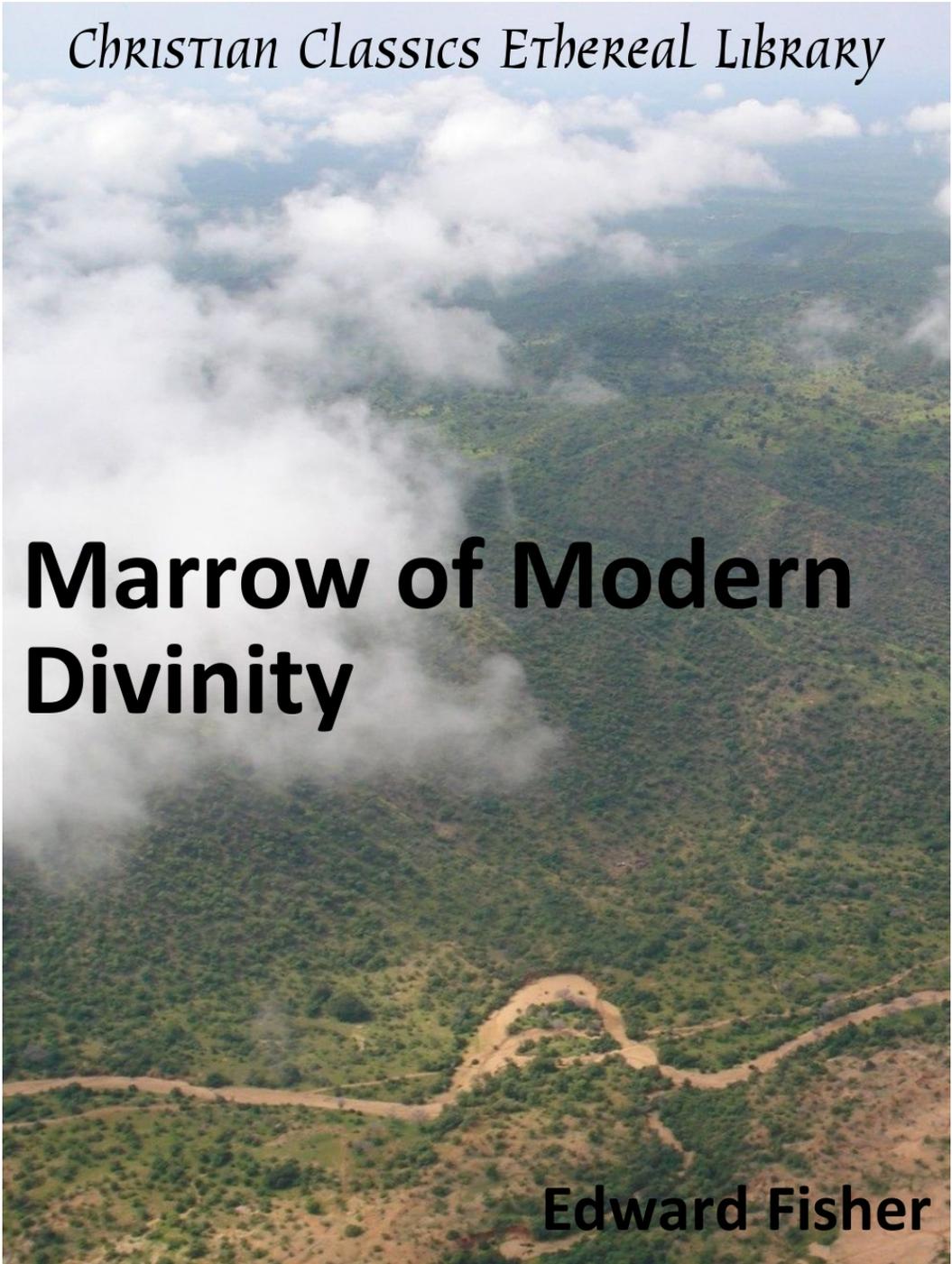


CHRISTIAN CLASSICS ETHEREAL LIBRARY

Marrow of Modern Divinity

Edward Fisher





Christian Classics
Ethereal Library

The Marrow of Modern Divinity

Author(s): Fisher, Edward (1627-1655)

Publisher: Grand Rapids, MI: Christian Classics Ethereal Library

Subjects: Doctrinal theology
Salvation

Contents

Title Page	1
Part I.	2
Recommendations	3
Preface	7
Dedication	10
To The Reader	12
Introduction	17
Chapter I	23
Chapter II	34
Chapter III	147
Chapter IV	206
Conclusion	219
Part II.	221
Dedication	222
The Author to the Reader	224
The Sum of the first commandment, &c.	228
Wherein the first and second commandments differ, &c.	233
Wherein the second and third commandments differ, &c.	238
The difference between the third and fourth commandments, &c.	246
The sum of the fifth commandment.	249
The sum of the sixth commandment.	256
The sum of the seventh commandment	260
The sum of the eighth commandment	262
The sum of the ninth commandment	265
The sum of the tenth commandment	268
The use of the law	271

The difference between the law and the gospel	288
Appendix	294
Indexes	328
Index of Scripture References	329



This PDF file is from the Christian Classics Ethereal Library, www.ccel.org. The mission of the CCEL is to make classic Christian books available to the world.

- This book is available in PDF, HTML, ePub, and other formats. See http://www.ccel.org/ccel/fisher_e/marrow.html.
- Discuss this book online at <http://www.ccel.org/node/20670>.

The CCEL makes CDs of classic Christian literature available around the world through the Web and through CDs. We have distributed thousands of such CDs free in developing countries. If you are in a developing country and would like to receive a free CD, please send a request by email to cd-request@ccel.org.

The Christian Classics Ethereal Library is a self supporting non-profit organization at Calvin College. If you wish to give of your time or money to support the CCEL, please visit <http://www.ccel.org/give>.

This PDF file is copyrighted by the Christian Classics Ethereal Library. It may be freely copied for non-commercial purposes as long as it is not modified. All other rights are reserved. Written permission is required for commercial use.

THE MARROW
OF
MODERN DIVINITY

BY
EDWARD FISHER
WITH

NOTES

BY THE REV. THOMAS BOSTON,
MINISTER OF THE GOSPEL, ETTRICK.

Appendix (103k)

The Occasion of the "Marrow" Controversy, Stated by the Late Rev. John Brown, of Haddington. Queries Agreed Unto by the Commission of the General Assembly, and put to those Ministers who gave in a Representation and Petition against the 5th and 8th Acts of Assembly 1720, with the Answers given by these Ministers to the Said Queries.

RECOMMENDATIONS.

I have perused this ensuing Dialogue, and find it tending to peace and holiness; the author endeavouring to reconcile and heal those unhappy differences, which have lately broken out afresh amongst us, about the points therein handled and cleared; for which cause I allow it to be printed, and recommend it to the reader, as a discourse stored with many necessary and seasonable truths, confirmed by Scripture, and avowed by many approved writers: all composed in a familiar, plain, moderate style, without bitterness against, or uncomely reflections upon others,—which flies have lately corrupted many boxes of otherwise precious ointment. May 1, 1645. JOS. CARYL.

The marrow of the second bone is like that of the first, sweet and good. The commandments of God are marrow to the saints, as well as the promises; and they shall never taste the marrow of the promise who distaste the commandments. This little treatise breaketh the bone, the hard part of commandments, by a plain exposition, that so all, even babes in Christ, yea, such as are yet out of Christ, may suck out and feed upon the marrow by profitable meditation. Sept. 6, 1648. JOS. CARYL.

If thou wilt please to peruse this little book, thou shalt find great worth in it. There is a line of a gracious spirit drawn through it, which has fastened many precious truths together, and presented them to thy view: according to the variety of men's spirits, the various ways of presenting known truths are profitable. The grace of God has helped this author in making his work. If it in like manner help thee in reading, thou shalt have cause to bless God for these truths thus brought to thee, and for the labours of this good man, whose ends, I believe, are very sincere for God and thy good. JER. BURROUGHS.

Occasionally lighting upon the dialogue, under the approbation of a learned and judicious divine, I was thereby induced to read it, and afterwards, on a serious consideration of the usefulness of it, to commend it to the people in my public ministry.

Two things in it especially took with me: First, The matter; the main substance being distinctly to discover the nature of the two covenants, upon which all the mysteries, both of the law and gospel, depend. To see the first Adam to be *primus federatus* in the one, and the second Adam in the other: to distinguish rightly betwixt the law standing alone as a covenant, and standing in subordination to the gospel as a servant: this I assure myself to be the key which opens the hidden treasure of the gospel. As soon as God had given Luther but a glimpse hereof, he professes that he seemed to be brought into paradise again, and the whole face of the Scripture to be changed to him: and he looked upon every truth with another eye.

Secondly, The manner; because it is an irenicum, and tends to an accommodation and a right understanding. Times of reformation have always been times of division. Satan will cast out a flood after the woman, as knowing that more die by the disagreement of the hu-

mours of their own bodies, than by the sword; and that, if men be once engaged, they will contend, if not for truth, yet for victory.

Now, if the difference be in things of lesser consequence, the best way to quench it were silence. But if the difference be of greater concernment than this is, the best way to decide it, is to bring in more light, which this author has done with much evidence of Scripture, backed with the authority of most modern divines. So that whosoever desires to have his judgment cleared in the main controversy between us and the Antinomians, with a small expense, either of money or time, he may here receive ample satisfaction. This I testify upon request, professing myself a friend both to truth and peace. W. STRONG.

This book, at first well accommodated with so valuable a testimony as Mr. Caryl's, besides its better approving itself to the choicer spirits every where, by the speedy distribution of the whole impression; it might seem a needless or superfluous thing to add any more to the praise thereof; yet meeting with detracting language from some few, by reason of some phrases, by them either not duly pondered, or not rightly understood, it is thought meet, in this second impression, to relieve that worthy testimony, which still stands to it, with fresh supplies, not for any need the truth therein contained hath thereof, but because either the prejudice or darkness of some men's judgments does require it. I, therefore, having thoroughly perused it, cannot but testify, that if I have any the least judgment, or relish of truth, he that finds this book finds a good thing, and not unworthy of its title; and may account the saints to have obtained favour with the Lord in the ministration of it, as that which, with great plainness and evidence of truth, comprises the chief, if not all the differences that have been lately engendered about the law. It has, I must confess, not only fortified my judgment, but also warmed my heart in the reading of it; as indeed inculcating, throughout the whole dialogue, the clear and familiar notion of those things by which we live, as [Ezekiel 16](#) speaks in another case; and it appears to me to be written from much experimental knowledge of Christ, and teaching of the Spirit. Let all men that taste the fruit of it confess, to the glory of God, he is no respecter of persons; and endeavour to know no man henceforth after the flesh, nor envy the compiler thereof the honour to be accounted, as God has made him in this point, a healer of breaches, and a restorer of the overgrown paths of the gospel. As for my own part, I am so satisfied in this testimony I lend, that I reckon whatever credit is thus pawned, will be a glory to the name that stands by and avows this truth, so long as the book shall endure to record it. JOSHUA SPRIGGE.

I have, according to your desire, read over your book, and find it full of evangelical light and life; and I doubt not but the oftener I read it, the more true comfort I shall find in the knowledge of Christ thereby; the matter is pure, the method is apostolical, wherein the works of love, in the right place, after the life of faith, be effectually required. God has endowed his Fisher with the net of a trying understanding, and discerning judgment and judgment and discretion, whereby, out of the christaline streams of the well of life, you have

taken a mess of the sweetest and wholesome fish that the world can afford, which, if I could daily have enough of, I should not care for the flesh, or the works thereof. SAMUEL PRETTIE.

This book came into my hand by a merciful and most unexpected dispose of providence, and I read it with great and sweet complacence. It contains a great deal of the marrow of revealed and gospel truth, selected from authors of great note, clearly enlightened, and of most digested experience; and some of them were honoured to do eminent and heroical services in their day. Thus the Christian reader has the flower of their labours communicated to him very briefly, yet clearly and powerfully. And the manner of conveyance, being by way of amicable conference, is not only fitted to afford delight to the judicious reader, but lays him also at the advantage of trying, through grace, his own heart the more exactly, according to what echo it gives, or how it relishes, or is displeased with the several speeches of the communers. Here we have the greatest depths, and most painted delusions of hell, in opposition to the only way of salvation, discovered with marvellous brevity and evidence, and that by the concurring suffrages of burning and shining lights, men of the clearest experience, and honoured of God to do eminent service in their day, for advancing the interests of our Lord's kingdom and gospel.

The reluctance of gospel light has been the choice mean blessed by the Lord, for the effecting of great things, in the several periods of the Church, since that light brake up in paradise, after our first sin and fall; and ever since, the balance has swayed, and will sway, according to the better or worse state of matters in that important regard. When gospel light is clear, and attended with power, Satan's kingdom cannot stand before it; the prince and powers of darkness must fall as lightning from heaven. And upon the contrary, according to the recessions from thence, Christian churches went off, by degrees, from the only foundation, even from the rock Christ, until the man of sin, the great antichrist, did mount the throne. Nevertheless, while the world is wandering after the beast, behold! evangelical light breaks forth in papal darkness, and hereupon antichrist's throne shakes, and is at the point of falling; yet his wounds are cured, and he recovers new strength and spirits, through a darkening of the glorious gospel, and perversion thereof, by anti-evangelical errors and heresies.

That the tares of such errors are sown in the reformed churches, and by men who profess reformed faith, is beyond debate; and these, who lay to heart the purity of gospel doctrine. Such dregs of antichristianism do yet remain, or are brought in amongst us. Herein the words of the apostle are verified, viz: "Of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things to draw away disciples after them": and as this renders the essays for a further diffusion of evangelical light the more necessary and seasonable, so there is ground to hope, that in these ways the churches of Christ will gradually get the ascendant over their enemies, until the great antichrist shall fall, as a trophy before a gospel dispensation. For the Lord will

"destroy him by the breath of his mouth, and with the brightness of his coming." That this excellent and spiritual piece may be blessed to the reader, is the prayer of their sincere well-wisher and servant in the work of the gospel. Carnock, December 4, 1717. JAMES HOG.

The Act about the "Marrow" occasioned great thoughts of heart among us. I have been acquainted with that book about 18 or 19 years, and many times have admired the gracious conduct of holy Providence which brought it to my hand, having occasionally lighted upon it in a house of the parish where I was first settled. As to any distinct uptakings of the doctrine of the gospel I have, such as they are, I owe them to that book.—Extract of a Letter from Mr. Boston to Mr. Hog.

I never read the "Marrow" with Mr. Boston's Notes, till this present time, 1755; and I find, by not having read it, I have sustained a considerable loss. It is a most valuable book; the doctrines it contains are the life of my soul, and the joy of my heart. Might my tongue or pen be made instrumental to recommend and illustrate, to support and propagate such precious truths, I should bless the day wherein I was born. Mr. Boston's Notes on the "Marrow" are, in my opinion, some of the most judicious and valuable that ever were penned.—Extract of a Letter from Mr. Hervey to Mr. William Hog.

I have frequently perused, with great satisfaction, the "Marrow of Modern Divinity," first and second parts; and, as far as I can judge, it will be found, by those that read it, very useful for illustrating the difference between the law and the gospel, and preventing them from splitting, either on the rock of legality on the one hand, or that of Antinomianism on the other; and, accordingly, recommend it [by desire] as a book filled with precious, seasonable, and necessary truth, clearly founded upon the sacred oracles. Falkirk, December 9, 1788. JOHN BELFRAGE.

It is considered necessary to add the following account of the author of "The Marrow of Modern Divinity" from Wood's *Athena Oxonienses*, vol. 2, p 198:—"THOMAS BOSTON, the eldest son of a knight, became a gentleman-commoner of Brasen-nose College, August 25, 1627, took on his degree in arts, and soon after left that house. Afterwards, being called home by his relations, who were then, as I have been informed, much in debt, he improved that learning which he had obtained in the university so much, that he became a noted person among the learned, for his great reading in ecclesiastical history, and in the fathers, and for his admirable skill in the Greek and Hebrew languages. His works are,—1. 'An Appeal to the Conscience, as thou wilt answer it at the great and dreadful day of Jesus Christ.' Oxford, 1644. Quarto.—2. 'The Marrow of Modern Divinity.' 1646, Octavo.—3. 'A Christian Caveat to Old and New Sabbatarians,' 1650.—4. 'An Answer to Sixteen Queries, touching the Rise and Observation of Christmas.'" The Marrow of Modern Divinity by THOMAS BOSTON

PREFACE.

Whosoever thou art into whose hands this book shall come, I presume to put thee in mind of the divine command, binding on thy conscience, [Deuteronomy 1:17](#) - "Ye shall not respect persons in judgment; but ye shall hear the small as well as the great." Reject not the book with contempt, nor with indignation neither, when thou findest it entitled *The Marrow of Modern Divinity*, lest thou do it to thine own hurt. Remember, that our blessed Lord himself was "accounted a friend of publicans and sinners," ([Matt 11:19](#)).—"Many said of him, He hath a devil, and is mad; why hear ye him?" ([John 10:20](#)). The apostle Paul was slanderously reported to be an Antinomian; one who, by his doctrine, encouraged men to do evil, and "make void the law," ([Rom 3:8,31](#)). And the first martyr, in the days of the gospel, was stoned for pretended "blasphemous words against Moses and against the law," ([Acts 6:11,13](#)).

The gospel method of sanctification, as well as of justification, lies so far out of the ken of natural reason, that if all the rationalists in the world, philosophers and divines, had consulted together to lay down a plan for repairing the lost image of God in man, they had never hit upon that which the divine wisdom has pitched upon, viz: that sinners should be sanctified in Christ Jesus, ([1 Cor 1:2](#)), by faith in him, ([Acts 26:18](#)); nay, being laid before them, they would have rejected it with disdain, as foolishness, ([1 Cor 1:23](#)).

In all views which fallen man has towards the means of his own recovery, the natural bent is to the way of the covenant of works. This is evident in the case of the vast multitudes throughout the world, embracing Judaism, Paganism, Mahometanism, and Popery. All these agree in this one principle, that it is by doing men must live, though they hugely differ as to the things to be done for life.

The Jews, in the time of Julian the Apostate, attempted to rebuild their temple, after it had lain many years in ruins, by the decree of heaven never to be built again; and ceased not, till by an earthquake, which shook the old foundation and turned all down to the ground, they were forced to forbear, as Socrates the historian tells us. But the Jews were never more addicted to that temple, than mankind naturally is to the building on the first covenant: and Adam's children will by no means quit it, until Mount Sinai, where they desire to work what they do work, be all on a fire about them. Oh, that those who have been frightened from it were not so ready to go back towards it!

Howbeit, that can never be the channel of sanctification, whatsoever way men prepare it and fit it out for that purpose, because it is not, by divine appointment, the "ministration of righteousness and life," ([2 Cor 3](#)).

And hence it is always to be observed, that as the doctrine of the gospel is corrupted, to introduce a more rational sort of religion, the flood of looseness and licentiousness swells proportionably; insomuch that morality, brought in for doctrine, in room and stead of the

gospel of the grace of God, never fails to be, in effect, a signal for an inundation of immorality in practice. A plain instance hereof is to be seen in the grand apostasy from the truth and holiness of the gospel, as exemplified in Popery. And on the other hand, real and thorough reformation in churches is always the effect of gospel light, breaking forth again, from under the cloud which had gone over it; and hereof the Church of Scotland, among others, has, oftener than once, had comfortable experience.

The real friends of true holiness, then, do exceedingly mistake their measures, in affording a handle, on any occasion whatsoever, for advancing the principles of legalism, for bringing under contempt the good old way in which our fathers found rest to their souls, and for removing the ancient landmarks which they set.

It is now above fourscore years since this book made its first entrance into the world, under the title of *The Marrow of Modern Divinity*, at that time not unfitly prefixed to it; but it is too evident it has outlived the fitness of that title. The truth is, the divinity therein taught is now no longer the modern, but the ancient divinity, as it was recovered from underneath the Antichristian darkness; and as it stood before the tools of the late refiners on the Protestant doctrine were lifted up upon it—a doctrine which, being from God, must needs be according to godliness.

It was to contribute towards the preserving of this doctrine, and the withstanding of its being run down, under the odious name of Antinomianism, in the disadvantageous situation it has in this book, whose undeserved lot it is to be everywhere spoken against, that the following notes were written.

And herein two things chiefly have had weight: one is, lest that doctrine, being put into such an ill name, should become the object of the settled aversion of sober persons, and they be thereby betrayed into legalism. The other is, lest in these days of God's indignation so much appearing in spiritual judgments, some taking up the principles of it, from the hand of this author and ancient divines, for truths, should take the sense, scope, and design of them, from (now) common fame; and so be betrayed unto real Antinomianism.

Reader, lay aside prejudices,—look and see with thine own eyes,—call things by their own names, and do not reckon Anti-Baxterianism or Anti-Neonomianism to be Antinomianism, and thou shalt find no Antinomianism taught here; but thou wilt be perhaps surprised to find, that the tale is told of Luther and other famous Protestant divines, under the borrowed name of the despised Mr. Fisher, author of *The Marrow of Modern Divinity*.

In the Notes, obsolete or ambiguous words, phrases, and things are explained; truth cleared, confirmed, and vindicated; the annotator making no scruple of declaring his dissent from the author, where he saw just ground for it.

I make no question but he will be thought by some to have constructed too favourably of several passages; but, as it is nothing strange that he inclines to the charitable side, the book having been many years ago blessed of God to his own soul; so, if he has erred on that

side, it is the safest of the two for thee and me, judging of the words of another man, whose intention, I believe, with Mr. Burroughs, to have been very sincere for God and the reader's good. However, I am satisfied he has dealt candidly in that matter, according to his light.

Be advised always to read over a lesser section of the book, before reading any of the notes thereupon, that you may have the more clear understanding of the whole.

I conclude this preface, in the words of two eminent professors of theology, deserving our serious regard:—

"I dread mightily that a rational sort of religion is coming in among us: I mean by it, a religion that consists in a bare attendance on outward duties and ordinances, without the power of godliness: and thence people shall fall into a way of serving God, which is a mere deism, having no relation to Jesus Christ and the Spirit of God."¹

"I warn each one of you, and especially such as are to be directors of the conscience, that you exercise yourselves in study, reading, meditation, and prayer, so as you may be able to instruct and comfort both your own and other's consciences in the time of temptation, and to bring them back from the law to grace, from the active (or working) righteousness, to the passive (or received) righteousness; in a word, from Moses to Christ."²

1 Memoirs of Mr. Halyburton's Life, page 199.

2 Luth. Comment. in Epist. ad Gal. page 27

TO THE HON. COLONEL JOHN DOWNES, One of
the Members of the Honourable House of Commons, &c., E. F. wishes the true knowledge
of God in Jesus Christ.

MOST HONOURED SIR,

Although I do observe that new editions, accompanied with new additions, are sometimes
published with new dedications; yet so long as he who formerly owned the subject does yet
live, and has the same affections towards it, I conceive there is no need of a new patron, but
of a new epistle.

Be pleased then, most honoured sir, to give me leave to tell you, that your eminency of
place did somewhat induce me, both now and before, to make choice of you for its patron;
but your endowments with grace did invite me to it, God having bestowed upon you special
spiritual blessings in heavenly things in Christ: for it has been declared unto me, by them
that knew you when you were but a youth, how Christ met with you then, and by sending
his Spirit into your heart, first convinced you of sin, as was manifest by those conflicts which
your soul then had both with Satan and itself, whilst you did not believe in Christ; secondly,
of righteousness, as was manifest by the peace and comfort which you afterwards had, by
believing that Christ was gone to the Father, and appeared in his presence as your advocate
and surety that had undertaken for you; thirdly, of judgment, as has been manifest ever
since, in that you have been careful with the true godly man, [Psalm 112:5](#), to "guide your
affairs with judgment," in walking according to the mind of Christ.

I have not forgotten what desires you have expressed to know the true difference between
the covenant of works and the covenant of grace; and experimentally to be acquainted with
the doctrine of free grace, the mysteries of Christ, and the life of faith. Witness not only
your high approving of some heads of a sermon, which I once heard a godly minister preach,
and repeated in your hearing, of the life of faith; but also your earnest request to me to write
them out fair, and send them to you into the country; yea, witness your highly approving
of this dialogue, when I first acquainted you with the contents thereof, encouraging me to
expedite it to the press, and your kind acceptance, together with your cordial thanks for my
love manifested in dedicating it to your honourable name.

Since then, worthy sire, it has pleased the Lord to enable me both to amend and enlarge
it, I hope your affection will also be enlarged towards the matter therein contained, consid-
ering that it tends to the clearing of those forenamed truths, and, through the blessing of
God, may be a means to root them more deeply in your heart. And truly, sir, I am confident
the more they grown and flourish in any man's heart, the more will all heart-corruptions
wither and decay. O sir, if the truths contained in this dialogue were but as much in my
heart, as they are in my head, I were a happy man; for then should I be more free from pride,
vain glory, wrath, anger, self-love, and love of the world, than I am; and then should I have
more humility, meekness, and love, both to God and man, than I have. Oh! then should I

be content with Christ alone, and live above all things in the world;—then should I experimentally know both how to abound and how to want;—and then should I be fit for any condition: nothing could come amiss to me. Oh, that the Lord would be pleased to write them in our hearts by his blessed Spirit!

Most humbly beseeching you still to pardon my boldness, and vouchsafe to take it into your patronage and protection, I humbly take my leave of you, and remain, your obliged servant to be commanded,

THOMAS BOSTON.

To All Such Humble-Hearted Readers,

As See Any Need To Learn Either To Know Themselves, Or
God In Christ.

LOVING CHRISTIANS,

Consider, I pray you, that as the first Adam did, as a common person, enter into covenant with God for all mankind, and brake it, whereby they became sinful and guilty of everlasting death and damnation; even so Jesus Christ, the second Adam, did, as a common person, enter into covenant with God his Father, for all the elect³, that is to say, all those that have, or shall believe on his name⁴, and for them kept it⁵; whereby they become righteous, and heirs of everlasting life and salvation⁶; and therefore it is our greatest wisdom, and ought to be our greatest care and endeavour, to come out⁷ and from the first Adam, unto and into the second Adam;⁸ that so we "may have life through his name," ([John 20:31](#)).

And yet, alas! there is no point in all practical divinity that we are naturally so much averse and backward to as unto this; neither does Satan strive to hinder us so much from doing anything else as this; and hence it is, that we are all of us naturally apt to abide and continue in that sinful and miserable state that the first Adam plunged us into, without either taking any notice of it, or being at all affected with it, so far are we from coming out of it. And if the Lord be pleased by any means to open our eyes to see our misery, and we do thereupon begin to step out of it, yet, alas! we are prone rather to go backwards towards the first Adam's pure state⁹, in striving and struggling to leave sin, and perform duties, and do good works; hoping thereby to make ourselves so righteous and holy, that God will let us into paradise again, to eat of the tree of life, and live for ever: and this we do, until we see

3 "The covenant (viz: of works) being made with Adam, not only for himself but for his posterity, all mankind, descending from him by ordinary generation, sinned in him, and fell with him in his first transgression." Shorter Catechism, quest. 16.—"The covenant of grace was made with Christ, as the second Adam, and in him, with all the elect, as his seed." Larger Cat., quest. 31.

4 See chap. 2. sect. 3. note.

5 Namely, by doing and dying for them, viz: the elect.

6 Thus the imputation or purchase of redemption, and the application of it, are taught to be of the same extent; even as Adam's representation, and the ruins by his fall are: the former extending to the elect, as the latter unto all mankind.

7 Of.

8 Uniting with Christ by faith.

9 That is, to the way of the covenant of works, which innocent Adam was set upon.

the "flaming sword at Eden's gate turning every way to keep the way of the tree of life,"¹⁰ (Gen 3:24). Is it not ordinary, when the Lord convinceth a man of his sin (either by means of his word or his rod) to cry after this manner: Oh! I am a sinful man! for I have lived a very wicked life, and therefore surely the Lord is angry with me, and will damn me in hell! Oh! what shall I do to save my soul? And is there not at hand some ignorant, miserable comforter, ready to say, Yet do not despair, man, but repent of thy sins, and ask God forgiveness, and reform your life, and doubt not but he will be merciful unto you¹¹; for he has promised, you know, "that at what time soever a sinner repenteth him of his sins, he will forgive him."¹²

And does he not hereupon comfort himself, and say in his heart at least, Oh! if the Lord will but spare my life, and lengthen out my days, I will become a new man! I am very sorry that I have lived such a sinful life; but I will never do as I have done for all the world! Oh! you shall see a great change in me! believe it?

And hereupon he betakes himself to a new course of life; and, it may be, becomes a zealous professor of religion, performing all Christian exercises, both public and private, and leaves off his old companions, and keeps company with religious men; and so, it may be, goes on till his dying day, and thinks himself sure of heaven and eternal happiness; and

10 That is, till we be brought to despair of obtaining salvation in the way of the covenant of works. Mark here the spring of legalism, namely, the natural bias of man's heart towards the way of the law, as a covenant of works, and ignorance of the law, in its spirituality and vast extent, (Rom 7:9, 10:2,3).

11 There is not one word of Jesus Christ the glorious Mediator, nor of faith in his blood, in all the advice given by this casuist to the afflicted; and agreeable thereto is the effect it has upon the afflicted, who takes comfort to himself, without looking unto the Lord Jesus Christ at all, as appears from the next paragraph.

Behold the Scripture pattern in such a case: [Acts 2:37,38](#), "Men and brethren, what shall we do? Then Peter said unto them, Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of sins." Chapter 16:30,31, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved? and they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved." And thus the Directory, title "Concerning Visitation of the Sick." "If it appear that he hath not a due sense of his sins, endeavours ought to be used to convince him of his sins—to make known the danger of deferring repentance, and of salvation at any time offered, to awaken the conscience, and to rouse him out of a stupid and secure condition, to apprehend the justice and wrath of God";—here this miserable comforter finds the afflicted, and should have taught him concerning an offended God, as there immediately follows—"before whom none can stand but he that, being lost in himself, layeth hold upon Christ by faith."

12 This sentence, taken from the English service-book, is in the "Practice of Piety," p. 122, cited from Ezekiel 33:14,16, and is reckoned amongst these Scriptures, an ignorant mistake of which keeps back a sinner from the practice of piety. But the truth is, it is not to be found in the Old or New Testament; and therefore it was objected against, as standing in the service-book under the name of a "Sentence of Scripture," pretended to be cited from Ezekiel 18:21,22.—Reasons Showing the Necessity of Reformation, &c. p. 26.

yet, it may be, all this while is ignorant of Christ and his righteousness, and therefore establisheth his own.

Where is the man, or where is the woman that is truly come to Christ, that has not had some experience in themselves of such a disposition as this? If there be any that have reformed their lives, and are become professors of religion, and have not taken notice of this in themselves more, or less, I wish they may have gone beyond a legal professor, or one still under the covenant of works.

Nay, where is the man or woman, that is truly in Christ, that findeth not in themselves an aptness to withdraw their hearts from Christ, and to put some confidence in their own works and doings? If there be any that do not find it, I wish their hearts may not deceive them.

Let me confess ingenuously, I was a professor of religion at least a dozen of years before I knew any other way to eternal life, than to be sorry for my sins, and ask forgiveness, and strive and endeavour to fulfil the law, and keep the commandments, according as Mr. Dod and other godly men had expounded them; and truly, I remember I was in hope I should at last attain to the perfect fulfilling of them; and, in the mean time, I conceived that God would accept the will for the deed; or what I could not do, Christ had done for me.

And though at last, by means of conferring with Mr. Thomas Hooker in private, the Lord was pleased to convince me that I was yet but a proud Pharisee, and to show me the way of faith and salvation by Christ alone, and to give me, I hope, a heart in some measure to embrace it; yet, alas! through the weakness of my faith, I have been, and am still apt to turn aside to the covenant of works; and therefore have not attained to that joy and peace in believing, nor that measure of love to Christ, and man for Christ's sake, as I am confident many of God's saints do attain unto in the time of this life. The Lord be merciful unto me, and increase my faith!

And are there not others, though I hope but few, who being enlightened to see their misery, by reason of the guilt of sin, though not by reason of the filth of sin, and hearing of justification freely by grace, through the redemption which is in Jesus Christ, do applaud and magnify that doctrine, following them that do most preach and press the same, seeming to be, as it were, ravished with the hearing thereof, out of a conceit that they are by Christ freely justified from the guilt of sin, though still they retain the filth of sin?¹³ These are they that content themselves with a gospel knowledge, with mere notions in the head, but not

13 Mark here the spring of Antinomianism; namely, the want of a sound conviction of the odiousness and filthiness of sin, rendering the soul loathsome and abominable in the sight of a holy God. Hence, as the sinner sees not his need of, so neither will he receive and rest on Christ for all his salvation, but will go about to halve it, grasping at his justifying blood, neglecting his sanctifying Spirit, and so falls short of all part or lot in that matter.

in the heart; glorying and rejoicing in free grace and justification by faith alone; professing faith in Christ, and yet are not possessed of Christ;—these are they that can talk like believers, and yet do not walk like believers; these are they that have language like saints, and yet have conversation like devils;—these are they that are not obedient to the law of Christ, and therefore are justly called Antinomians.

Now, both these paths¹⁴ leading from Christ, have been justly judged as erroneous; and to my knowledge, not only a matter of eighteen or twenty years ago, but also within these three or four years, there has been much ado, both by preaching, writing, and disputing, both to reduce men out of them, and to keep them from them; and hot contentions have been on both sides, and all, I fear, to little purpose: for has not the strict professor according to the law, whilst he has striven to reduce the loose professor according to the gospel out of the Antinomian path, entangled both himself and others the faster in the yoke of bondage? (Gal 5:1). And has not the loose professor according to the gospel, whilst he has striven to reduce the strict professor according to the law out of the legal path, "by promising liberty from the law, taught others, and been himself the servant of corruption?" (2 Peter 2:19).

For this cause I, though I be nothing, have by the grace of God endeavoured, in this Dialogue, to walk as a middle man betwixt them both, in showing to each of them his erroneous path, with the middle path, (which is Jesus Christ received truly, and walked in answerably),¹⁵ as a means to bring them both unto him, and make them both one in him; and Oh! that the Lord would be pleased so to bless it to them, that it might be a means to produce that effect!

I have, as you may see, gathered much of it out of known and approved authors; and yet have therein wronged no man, for I have restored it to the right owner again. Some part of it my manuscripts have afforded me; and of the rest I hope I may say, as Jacob did of his venison, (Gen 27:20), "the Lord hath brought it unto me." Let me speak it without vain glory, I have endeavoured herein to imitate the laborious bee, who out of divers flowers gathers

14 Namely, legalism and Antinomianism.

15 A short and pithy description of the middle path, the only pathway to heaven—"Jesus Christ [the way, (John 14:6)] received truly [by faith, (John 1:12); this is overlooked by the legalist] and walked in answerably," by holiness of heart and life, (Col 2:6); this is neglected by the Antinomian. The Antinomian's faith is but pretended, and not true faith, since he walks not in Christ answerably. The legalist's holiness is but pretended, and not true holiness, since he hath not "received Christ" truly, and therefore is incapable of walking in Christ, which is the only true holiness competent to fallen mankind. Thus, both the legalist and Antinomian are each of them destitute of true faith and true holiness; forasmuch as there can be no walking in Christ, without a true receiving of him; and there cannot be a true receiving of him without walking in him: so both of them are off the only way of salvation, and, continuing so, must needs perish. Wherefore it concerns every one who has a value for his own soul, to take heed that he be found in the middle path.

honey and wax, and thereof makes one comb: if any souls feel any sweetness in it, let them praise God, and pray for me, who am weak in faith, and cold in love.

E. F.

A Catalogue of those Writers' Names, out of whom I have collected much of the matter contained in this ensuing Dialogue.

Mr. Ainsworth, Dr. Ames, Bishop Babington, Mr. Ball, Mr. Bastingius, Mr. Beza, Mr. Robert Bolton, Mr. Samuel Bolton, Mr. Bradford, Mr. Bullinger, Mr. Calvin, Mr. Careless, Mr. Caryl, Mr. Cornwall, Mr. Cotton, Mr. Culverwell, Mr. Dent, Mr. Diodati, Mr. D. Dixon, Mr. Downham, Mr. Du Plesse, Mr. Dyke, Mr. Elton, Mr. Forbes, Mr. Fox, Mr. Frith, Mr. Gibbons, Mr. Thos. Godwin, Mr. Gray, jun., Mr. Greenham, Mr. Grotius, Bishop Hall, Mr. Thos. Hooker, Mr. Lestanno, Mr. Lightfoot, Dr. Luther, Mr. Marbeck, Mr. Marshal, Peter Martyr, Dr. Mayer, Wolfgangus Musculus, Bernardine Ochin, Dr. Pemble, Mr. Perkins, Mr. Polanus, Dr. Preston, Mr. Reynolds, Mr. Rollock, Mr. Rouse, Dr. Sibs, Mr. Slater, Dr. Smith, Mr. Stock, Mr. Tindal, Mr. Robert Town, Mr. Vaughan, Mr. Vaumeth, Dr. Urban Regius, Dr. Ursinus, Mr. Walker, Mr. Ward, Dr. Willet, Dr. Williams, Mr. Wilson.

The Marrow of Modern Divinity by THOMAS BOSTON

INTRODUCTION

EVANGELISTA, a Minister of the Gospel.

NOMIST, a Legalist.

ANTINOMISTA, an Antinomian.

NEOPHYTUS, a Young Christian.

Sect. 1. Differences about the Law.—2. A threefold Law.

Nomista. Sir, my neighbour, Neophytus and I having lately had some conference with this our friend and acquaintance, Antinomista, about some points of religion, wherein he, differing from us both, at last said he would be contented to be judged by our minister: therefore, have we made bold to come unto you, all three of us, to pray you to hear us, and judge of our differences.

Evan. You are all of you very welcome to me; and if you please to let me hear what your differences are, I will tell you what I think.

SECT. 1.—Nom. The truth is, sir, he and I differ in very many things; but more especially about the law: for I say, the law ought to be a rule of life to a believer; and he says, it ought not.

Neo. And surely, sir, the greatest difference betwixt him and me, is this;—he would persuade me to believe in Christ; and bids me rejoice in the Lord, and live merrily, though I feel never so many corruptions in my heart, yea, though I be never so sinful in my life; the which I cannot do, nor, I think, ought to do; but rather to fear, and sorrow, and lament for my sins.

Ant. The truth is, sir, the greatest difference betwixt my friend Nomista and me, is about the law; and therefore that is the greatest matter we come to you about.

Evan. I remember the Apostle Paul willeth Titus to "avoid contentions and strivings about the law, because they are unprofitable and vain," ([Titus 3:9](#)); and so I fear yours have been.

Nom. Sir, for my own part, I hold it very meet, that every true Christian should be very zealous for the holy law of God; especially now, when a company of these Antinomians do set themselves against it, and do what they can quite to abolish it, and utterly to root it out of the church: surely, sir, I think it not meet they should live in a Christian commonwealth.

Evan. I pray you, neighbour Nomista, be not so hot, neither let us have such unchristian-like expressions amongst us; but let us reason together in love, and with the spirit of meekness, ([1 Cor 4:21](#)), as Christians ought to do. I confess with the apostle, "It is good to be zealously affected always in a good thing," ([Gal 4:18](#)). But yet, as the same apostle said of the Jews, so I fear I may say of some Christians, that "they are zealous of the law," ([Acts 21:20](#)); yea, some

would be doctors of the law, and yet neither understand "what they say, nor whereof they affirm," (1 Tim 1:7).

Nom. Sir, I make no doubt but that I both know what I say, and whereof I affirm, when I say and affirm that the holy law of God ought to be a rule of life to a believer; for I dare pawn my soul on the truth of it.

Evan. But what law do you mean?

Nom. Why, sir, what law do you think I mean? Are there any more laws than one?

SECT. 2.—Evan. Yea, in the Scriptures there is mention made of divers laws, but they may all be comprised under these three, viz.—the law of works, the law of faith, and the law of Christ;¹ (Rom 3:27, Gal 6:2); and, therefore, I pray you, tell me, when you say the law ought to be a rule of life to a believer, which of these three laws you mean.

1 These terms are scriptural, as appears from the whole texts quoted by our author, namely, (Rom 3:27), "Where is boasting then? it is excluded. By what law? of works? nay: but by the law of faith."—(Gal 6:2), "Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfil the law of Christ." By the law of works is meant the law of the ten commandments, as the covenant of works. By the law of faith, the gospel, or covenant of grace; for justification being the point upon which the apostle there states the opposition betwixt these two laws, it is evident that the former only is the law that doth not exclude boasting; and that the latter only is it, by which a sinner is justified in a way that doth exclude boasting. By the law of Christ, is meant the same law of the ten commandments, as a rule of life, in the hand of a Mediator, to believers already justified, and not any one command of the law only; for "bearing one another's burdens" is a "fulfilling of the law of Christ," as it is a loving one another: but, according to the Scripture, that love is not a fulfilling of one command only, but of the whole law of the ten commands, (Rom 13:8-10).—"He that loveth another hath fulfilled the law. For this, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not kill, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Thou shalt not covet; and if there be any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself; therefore love is the fulfilling of the law." It is a fulfilling of the second table directly, and of the first table indirectly and consequentially: therefore, by the law of Christ is meant, not one command only, but the whole law. The law of works is the law to be done, that one may be saved; the law of faith is the law to be believed, that one may be saved; the law of Christ is the law of the Saviour, binding his saved people to all the duties of obedience, (Gal 3:12, Acts 16:31).

The term law is not here used univocally; for the law of faith is neither in the Scripture sense, nor in the sense of our author, a law, properly so called. The apostle uses that phrase only in imitation of the Jews' manner of speaking, who had the law continually in their mouths. But since the promise of the gospel proposed to faith, is called in Scripture "the law of faith," our author was sufficiently warranted to call it so too. So the law of faith is not a proper preceptive law.

The law of works, and the law of Christ, are in substance but one law, even the law of the ten commandments—the moral law—that law which was from the beginning, continuing still the same in its own nature, but vested with different forms. And since that law is perfect, and sin is any want of conformity unto, or transgression of it, whatever form it be vested with, whether as the law of works or as the law of Christ, all commands of God unto

men must needs be comprehended under it, and particularly the command to repent, common to all mankind, pagans not excepted, who doubtless are obliged, as well as others, to turn from sin unto God; as also the command to believe in Christ, binding all to whom the gospel revelation comes, though, in the meantime, this law stands under different forms to those who are in a state of union with Christ by faith, and to those who are not so. The law of Christ is not a new, proper, preceptive law, but the old, proper, preceptive law, which was from the beginning, under a new accidental form.

The distinction between the law of works and the law of faith cannot be controverted, since the apostle doth so clearly distinguish them, ([Rom 3:27](#)).

The distinction between the law of works and the law of Christ, as above explained according to the Scriptures, and the mind of our author, is the same in effect with that of the law, as a covenant of works, and as a rule of life to believers, and ought to be admitted, (Westm. Confess. chap. 19, art. 6). For, (1.) Believers are not under, but dead to the law of works, ([Rom 6:14](#)), "For ye are not under the law, but under grace."—(7:4), "Wherefore my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law, that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead."—(1 Cor 9:21), "Being not without law to God, but under the law of Christ." Some copies read here "of God," and "of Christ"; which I mention, not out of any regard to that different reading, but that upon the occasion thereof the sense is owned by the learned to be the same either way. To be under the law to God is, without question, to be under the law of God; whatever it may be judged to import more, it can import no less; therefore to be under the law to Christ, is to be under the law of Christ. This text gives a plain and decisive answer to the question, "How is the believer under the law of God?" namely, as he is under the law to Christ. (2.) The law of Christ is an "easy yoke," and a "light burden," ([Matt 11:30](#)); but the law of works, to a sinner, is an insupportable burden, requiring works as the condition of justification and acceptance with God, as is clear from the whole of the apostle's reasoning, ([Rom 3](#)). [and therefore it is called the law of works, for otherwise the law of Christ requires works too,] and cursing "every one that continues not in all things written in it to do them," ([Gal 3:10](#)). The apostle assures us, that "what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law," ([Rom 3:19](#)). The duties of the law of works, as such, are, as I conceive, called by our Lord himself, "heavy burdens, and grievous to be borne," ([Matt 23:4](#)).—"For they," viz: the Scribes and Pharisees, "bind heavy burdens, and grievous to be borne, and lay them on men's shoulders; but they themselves will not move them with one of their fingers." These heavy burdens were not human traditions, and rites devised by men; for Christ would not have commanded the observing and doing of these, as in this case he did, (verse 3), "Whatsoever they bid you observe, that observe and do"; neither were they the Mosaic rites and ceremonies, which were not then abrogated, for the Scribes and Pharisees were so far from not moving these burdens with one of their own fingers, that the whole of their religion was confined to them, namely to the rites and ceremonies of Moses' law, and those of their own devising. But the duties of the moral law they laid on others, binding them on with the tie of the law of works, yet made no conscience of them in their own practice: the which duties, nevertheless, our Lord Jesus commanded to be observed and done.

"He who hath believed on Jesus Christ, [though he be freed from the curse of the law,] is not freed from the command and obedience of the law, but tied thereunto by a new obligation, and a new command from Christ. Which new command from Christ importeth help to obey the command."—Practical Use of Saving Knowledge, title, The Third Warrant to Believe, fig. 5.

Nom. Sir, I know not the difference betwixt them; but this I know, that the law of the ten commandments, commonly called the moral law, ought to be a rule of life to a believer.

Evan. But the law of the ten commandments, or moral law may be either said to be the matter of the law of works, or the matter of the law of Christ: and therefore I pray you to tell me, in whether of these senses you conceive it ought to be a rule of life to a believer?

Nom. Sir, I must confess, I do not know what you mean by this distinction; but this I know, that God requires that every Christian should frame and lead his life according to the ten commandments; the which if he do, then may he expect the blessing of God both upon his own soul and body; and if he do not, then can he expect nothing else but his wrath and curse upon them both.

Evan. The truth is, Nomista, the law of the ten commandments, as it is the matter of the law of works, ought not to be a rule of life to a believer. But in thus saying, you have affirmed that it ought; and therefore therein you have erred from the truth. And now, Antinomista, that I may also know your judgment, when you say the law ought not to be a rule of life to a believer, pray tell me what law do you mean?

Ant. Why, I mean the law of the ten commandments.

Evan. But whether do you mean that law, as it is the matter of the law of works, or as it is the matter of the law of Christ?

What this distinction amounts to is, that thereby a difference is constituted betwixt the ten commandments as coming from an absolute God out of Christ unto sinners, and the same ten commandments as coming from God in Christ unto them; a difference which the children of God, assisting their consciences before him to "receive the law at his mouth," will value as their life, however they disagree about it in words and manner of expression. But that the original indispensable obligation of the law of the ten commandments is in any measure weakened by the believer's taking it as the law of Christ, and not as the law of works; or that the sovereign authority of God the Creator, which is inseparable from it for the ages of eternity, in what channel soever it be conveyed unto men, is thereby laid aside,—will appear utterly groundless, upon an impartial consideration of the matter. For is not our Lord Jesus Christ, equally with the Father and the Holy Spirit, JEHOVAH, the Sovereign, Supreme, Most High God, Creator of the world? (*Isa 47:4, Jer 23:6, with Psa 83:18, John 1:3, Rev 3:14*). Is not the same [or sovereign authority] of God in Christ? (*Exo 23:21*). Is not he in the Father, and the Father in him? (*John 14:11*). Nay, doth not all the fullness of the Godhead dwell in him? (*Col 2:9*). How, then, can the original obligation of the law of the ten commandments, arising from the authority of the Creator, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, be weakened by its being issued unto the believer from and by that blessed channel, the Lord Jesus Christ?

As for the distinction betwixt the law of faith and the law of Christ, the latter is subordinated unto the former. All men by nature are under the law of works; but taking the benefit of the law of faith, by believing in the Lord Jesus Christ, they are set free from the law of works, and brought under the law of Christ.—(*Matt 11:28,29*), "Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden—take my yoke upon you."

Ant. Surely, sir, I do conceive, that the ten commandments are no way to be a rule of life to a believer; for Christ hath delivered him from them.

Evan. But the truth is, the law of the ten commandments, as it is the matter of the law of Christ, ought to be a rule of life to a believer;² and therefore you having affirmed the contrary, have therein also erred from the truth.

2 The law of the ten commandments, being the natural law, was written on Adam's heart on his creation; while as yet it was neither the law of works, nor the law of Christ, in the sense wherein these terms are used in Scripture, and by our author. But after man was created, and put into the garden, this natural law, having made man liable to fall away from God, a threatening of eternal death in case of disobedience, had also a promise of eternal life annexed to it in case of obedience; in virtue of while he, having done his work, might thereupon plead and demand the reward of eternal life. Thus it became the law of works, whereof the ten commandments were, and are still the matter. All mankind being ruined by the breach of this law, Jesus Christ obeys and dies in the room of the elect, that they might be saved; they being united to him by faith, are, through his obedience and satisfaction imputed to them, freed from eternal death, and become heirs of everlasting life; so that the law of works being fully satisfied, expires as to them, as it would have done of course in the case of Adam's having stood the time of his trial: howbeit it remains in full force as to unbelievers. But the natural law of the ten commandments [which can never expire or determine, but is obligatory in all possible states of the creature, in earth, heaven, or hell] is, from the moment the law of works expires as to believers, issued forth to them [still liable to infirmities, though not to falling away like Adam] in the channel of the covenant of grace, bearing a promise of help to obey, ([Ezek 36:27](#)), and, agreeable to their state before the Lord, having annexed to it a promise of the tokens of God's fatherly love, for the sake of Christ, in case of that obedience; and a threatening of God's fatherly displeasure in case of their disobedience. ([John 14:21](#)), "He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me; and he that loveth me, shall be loved of my Father; and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him."—([Psa 89:31-33](#)), "If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. Nevertheless, my loving kindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail." Thus it becomes the law of Christ to them; of which law also the same ten commandments are likewise the matter. In the threatenings of this law there is no revenging wrath; and in the promises of it no proper conditionality of works; but here is the order in the covenant of grace, to which the law of Christ belongs; a beautiful order of grace, obedience, particular favours, and chastisements for disobedience. Thus the ten commandments stand, both in the law of works and in the law of Christ at the same time, being the common matter of both; but as they are the matter of [i.e. stand in] the law of works, they are actually a part of the law of works; howbeit, as they are the matter of, or stand in, the law of Christ, they are actually a part, not of the law of works, but of the law of Christ. And as they stand in the law of Christ, our author expressly asserts, against the Antinomian, that they ought to be a rule of life to a believer; but that they ought to be a rule of life to a believer, as they stand in the law of works, he justly denies, against the legalist. Even as when one and the same crime stands forbidden in the laws of different independent kingdoms, it is manifest that the rule of life to the subjects in that particular is the prohibition, as it stands in the law of that kingdom whereof they are subjects respectively, and not as it stands in the law of that kingdom of which they are not subjects.

Nom. The truth is, sir, I must confess I never took any notice of this threefold law, which, it seems, is mentioned in the New Testament.

Ant. And I must confess, if I took any notice of them, I never understood them.

Evan. Well, give me leave to tell you, that so far as any man comes short of the true knowledge of this threefold law,³ so far he comes short both of the true knowledge of God and of himself; and therefore I wish you both to consider of it.

Nom. Sir, if it be so, you may do well to be a means to inform us, and help us to the true knowledge of this threefold law; and therefore, I pray you, first tell us what is meant by the law of works.

3 Not of the terms here used to express it by, but of the things thereby meant, viz: the covenant of works, the covenant of grace, and the law as a rule of life to believers, in whatever terms these things be expressed.

Chapter I, Section I

The nature of the covenant of works.

Evan. The law of works, opposed to the law of faith, ([Rom 3:27](#)), holds forth as much as the covenant of works; for it is manifest, says Musculus, that the word which signifies covenant, or bargain, is put for law: so that you see the law of works is as much as to say, the covenant of works; the which covenant the Lord made with all mankind in Adam before his fall; the sum whereof was, "Do this, and thou shalt live," ([Lev 18:5](#)); "and if thou do it not, thou shalt die the death," ([Gen 2:17](#)). In which covenant there was contained first a precept, "Do this"; secondly a promise joined unto it, "If thou do it thou shalt live"; thirdly, a like threatening, "If thou do it not, thou shalt die the death." Imagine, says Musculus, that God had said to Adam, Lo, to the intent that thou mayest live, I have given thee liberty to eat, and have given thee abundantly to eat: let all the fruits of paradise be in thy power, one tree excepted, which see thou touch not, for that I keep to mine own authority: the same is "the tree of knowledge of good and evil"; if thou touch it, the meat thereof shall not be life, but death.

Nom. But, sir, you said, that the law of the ten commandments, or moral law, may be said to be the matter of the law of works; and you have also said, that the law of works is as much as to say the covenant of works, whereby it seems to me, you hold that the law of the ten commandments was the matter of the covenant of works, which God made with all mankind in Adam before his fall.

Evan. That is a truth agreed upon by all authors and interpreters that I know. And indeed the law of works [as a learned author says] signifies the moral law; and the moral law, strictly and properly taken, signifies the covenant of works.¹⁶

16 The moral law is an ambiguous term among divines. (1.) The moral law is taken from the decalogue, or ten commandments, simply. So the law in the ten commandments is owned to be commonly called the moral law, Westm. Confess. chap. 19, art. 2, 3. And thus our author has hitherto used that term, reckoning the moral law not the covenant of works itself, but only the matter of it. (2.) The moral law is taken for the ten commandments, having the promise of life, and threatening of death annexed to them; that is for the law, or covenant of works. Thus the moral law is described to be, "the declaration of the will of God to mankind, directing and binding every one to personal, perfect, and perpetual conformity and obedience thereunto, in the frame and disposition of the whole man, soul and body, and in performance of all these duties of holiness and righteousness, which he oweth to God and man, promising life upon the fulfilling, and threatening death upon the breach of it." Larger Catech. Quest. 93. That this is the covenant of works, is clear from Westm. Confess. chap. 19, art. 1, "God gave to Adam a law, as a covenant of works, by which he bound him and all his posterity to personal, entire, exact, and perpetual obedience; promised life upon the fulfilling, and threatened death upon the breach of it." And this our author owns to be the sense of that term, strictly and properly taken; the reason whereof I conceive to be, that the moral law, properly signifying the law of manners, answers to the Scripture term, the law of works,

Nom. But, sir, what is the reason you call it but the matter of the covenant of works?

Evan. The reason why I rather choose to call the law of the ten commandments the matter of the covenant of works, than the covenant itself, is, because I conceive that the matter of it cannot properly be called the covenant of works, except the form be put upon it; that is to say, except the Lord require, and man undertake to yield perfect obedience thereunto, upon condition of eternal life and death.

And therefore, till then, it was not a covenant of works betwixt God and all mankind in Adam; as, for example, you know, that although a servant¹⁷ have an ability to do a master's work, and though a master have wages to bestow upon him for it; yet is there not a covenant betwixt them till they have thereupon agreed. Even so, though a man at the first had power to yield perfect and perpetual obedience to all the ten commandments, and God had an eternal life to bestow upon him; yet was there not a covenant betwixt them till they were thereupon agreed.

Nom. But, sir, you know there is no mention made in the book of Genesis of this covenant of works, which, you say, was made with man at first.

Evan. Though we read not the word "covenant" betwixt God and man, yet have we there recorded what may amount to as much; for God provided and promised to Adam eternal happiness, and called for perfect obedience, which appears from God's threatening, ([Gen 2:17](#)); for if man must die if he disobeyed, it implies strongly, that God's covenant was with him for life, if he obeyed.

Nom. But, sir, you know the word "covenant" signifies a mutual promise, bargain, and obligation betwixt two parties. Now, though it is implied that God promised man to give him life if he obeyed, yet we read not, that man promised to be obedient.

Evan. I pray take notice, that God does not always tie man to verbal expressions, but doth often contract the covenant in real impressions in the heart and frame of the creature,¹⁸

by which is meant the covenant of works. And if he had added, that in this sense believers are delivered from it, he had said no more than the Larger Catechism doth, in these words: "They that are regenerate, and believe in Christ, be delivered from the moral law as a covenant of works," Quest. 97. But, in the meantime, it is evident he does not here use that term in this sense; and in the next paragraph, save one, he gives a reason why he did not so use it.

17 Not a hired servant, for there is a covenant betwixt such an one and the master, but a bond-servant, bought with money, of another person, or born in the master's house, who is obliged to serve his master, and is liable to punishment in case he do not, but cannot demand wages, since there is no covenant between them.

This was the case of mankind, with relation to the Creator, before the covenant of works was made.

18 The soul approving, embracing, and consenting to the covenant; which, without any more, is plain language, though not unto men, yet unto God, who knoweth the heart.

and this was the manner of covenanting with man at the first;¹⁹ for God had furnished his soul with an understanding mind, whereby he might discern good from evil, and right from wrong: and not only so, but also in his will was most great uprightness, ([Eccl 7:29](#)); and his instrumental parts²⁰ were orderly framed to obedience. The truth is, God did engrave in man's soul wisdom and knowledge of his will and works, and integrity in the whole soul, and such a fitness in all the powers thereof, that neither the mind did conceive, nor the heart desire, nor the body put in execution, anything but that which was acceptable to God; so that man, endued with these qualities, was able to serve God perfectly.

Nom. But, sir, how could the law of the ten commandments be the matter of this covenant of works, when they were not written, as you know, till the time of Moses?

Evan. Though they were not written in tables of stone until the time of Moses, yet were they written in the tables of man's heart in the time of Adam: for we read that man was created in the image or likeness of God, ([Gen 1:27](#)). And the ten commandments are a doctrine agreeing with the eternal wisdom and justice that is in God; wherein he hath so painted out his own nature, that it does in a manner express the very image of God, ([Col 3:10](#)). And does not the apostle say, ([Eph 4:24](#)), that the image of God consists in knowledge, righteousness, and true holiness? And is not knowledge, righteousness, and true holiness, the perfection of both the tables of the law? And indeed, says Mr. Rollock, it could not well stand with the justice of God, to make a covenant with man, under the condition of holy and good works, and perfect obedience to his law, except he had first created man holy and pure, and engraven his law in his heart, whence those good works should proceed.

Nom. But yet I cannot but marvel that God, in making the covenant with man, did make mention of no other commandment than that of the forbidden fruit.

Evan. Do not marvel at it: for by that one species of sin the whole genus or kind is shown; as the same law, being more clearly unfolded, doth express, ([Deut 28:26](#), [Gal 3:10](#)). And, indeed, in that one commandment the whole worship of God did consist; as obedience, honour, love, confidence, and religious fear; together with the outward abstinence from sin, and reverend respect to the voice of God; yea, herein also consisted his love, and so his whole

19 The covenant being revealed to man created after God's own image, he could not but perceive the equity and benefit of it; and so heartily approve, embrace, accept, and consent to it. And this accepting is plainly intimated in Eve's words to the serpent, ([Gen 3:2,3](#)), "We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden; but of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die."

20 Executive faculties and powers, whereby the good known and willed was to be done.

duty to his neighbour;²¹ so that, as a learned writer says, Adam heard as much [of the law] in the garden, as Israel did at Sinai; but only in fewer words, and without thunder.

Nom. But, sir, ought not man to have yielded perfect obedience to God, though this covenant had not been made betwixt them?

Evan. Yea, indeed; perfect and perpetual obedience was due from man unto God, though God had made no promise to man; for when God created man at first, he put forth an excellency from himself into him; and therefore it was the bond and tie that lay upon man to return that gain unto God;²² so that man being God's creature, by the law of creation he owed all obedience and subjection to God his Creator.

Nom. Why, then, was it needful that the Lord should make a covenant with him, by promising him life, and threatening him with death?

Evan. For answer hereunto, in the first place, I pray you understand, that man was a reasonable creature; and so, out of judgment, discretion, and election, able to make choice of his way, and therefore it was meet there should be such a covenant made with him, that he might, according to God's appointment, serve him after a reasonable manner. Secondly, It was meet there should be such a covenant made with him, to show that he was not such a prince on earth, but that he had a sovereign Lord: therefore, God set a punishment upon the breach of his commandment;²³ that man might know his inferiority, and that things betwixt him and God were not as betwixt equals. Thirdly, It was meet there should be such a covenant made with him, to show that he had nothing by personal, immediate, and underrived right, but all by gift and gentleness: so that you see it was an equal covenant,²⁴ which God, out of his prerogative-royal, made with mankind in Adam before his fall.

Nom. Well, sir, I do perceive that Adam and all mankind in him were created most holy.

Evan. Yea, and most happy, too: for God placed him in paradise in the midst of all delightful pleasures and contents, wherein he did enjoy most near and sweet communion with his Creator, in whose presence is fullness of joy, and whose right hand are pleasures evermore, (Psa 16:11). So that if Adam had received of the tree of life, by taking and eating it, while he stood in the state of innocency before his fall, he had certainly been established in a happy

21 That one commandment was in effect a summary of the whole duty of man, the which clearly appears, if one considers that the breach of it was a transgressing of all the ten commandments at once, as our author afterwards distinctly shows.

22 God having given man a being after his own image, a glorious excellency, it was his natural duty to make suitable returns thereof unto the Giver, in a way of duty, being and acting for him; even as the waters, which originally are from the sea, do in brooks and rivers return to the sea again. Man, being of God as his first cause, behoved to be to him as his chief and ultimate end, (Rom 11:36).

23 The punishment of death upon the breach of his commandment touching the forbidden fruit.

24 That is, an equitable covenant, fair and reasonable.

estate for ever, and could not have been seduced and supplanted by Satan, as some learned men, do think, and as God's own words seem to imply, ([Gen 3:22](#)).²⁵

Chapter I, Section II

Adam's fall.

Nom. But it seemeth that Adam did not continue in that holy and happy estate.

Evan. No, indeed; for he disobeyed God's express command, in eating the forbidden fruit, and so became guilty of the breach of the covenant.

Nom. But, sir, how could Adam, who had his understanding so sound, and his will so free to choose good, be so disobedient to God's express command?

Evan. Though he and his will were both good, yet were they mutually good; so that he might stand or fall, at his own election or choice.

Nom. But why then did not the Lord create him immutable? or, why did he not so over-rule him in that action, that he might not have eaten the forbidden fruit?²⁶

25 The author says, that some learned men think so, and that the words, ([Gen 3:22](#)), seem to imply so much; but all this amounts not to a positive determination of the point. The words are these, "Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil; and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever," &c. Whether or not these words seem to imply some such things, I leave to the judgment of the reader, whom I incline not to entertain with mine own or others' conjectures upon this head; but three things I take to be plain, and beyond conjecture, in this text, (1.) That there is no irony nor scoff here, as many think there is; but, on the contrary, a most pathetic lamentation over fallen man. The literal version and sense of the former part of the text runs thus: "Behold the man that was one of us," &c., compare for the version, [Lamentations 3:1](#); [Psalm 3:7](#); and for the sense, [Genesis 1:26, 27](#), "And God said, Let us make man in our image.—So God created man in his own image," &c. The latter part of the text I would read thus, "And eat that he may live for ever." Compare for this version, [Exodus 4:23](#); [1 Samuel 6:8](#). It is evident the sentence is broken off abruptly; the words, "I will drive him out," being suppressed; even as in the case of a father, with sighs, sobs, and tears, putting his son out of doors. (2.) That it was God's design, to prevent Adam's eating of the tree of life, as he had of the forbidden tree, "lest he take also of the tree of life"; thereby mercifully taking care that our fallen father, to whom the covenant of grace was now proclaimed, might not, according to the corrupt natural inclination of fallen mankind, run back to the covenant of works for life and salvation, by partaking of the tree of life, a sacrament of that covenant, and so reject the covenant of grace, by eating of that tree now, as he had before broken the covenant of works, by eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. (3.) That at this time Adam did think, that by eating of the tree of life he might live for ever. Farther I dip not here in this matter.

26 These are two distinct questions, both of them natively arising from a legal temper of spirit: and I doubt if ever the heart of a sinner shall receive a satisfying answer as to either of them, until it come to embrace the gospel-way of salvation; taking up its everlasting rest in Christ, for wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption.

Evan. The reason why the Lord did not create him immutable, was because he would be obeyed out of judgment and free choice, and not by fatal necessity and absolute determination;²⁷ and withal, let me tell you, it was not reasonable to restrain God to this point, to make man such an one as would not, nor could not sin at all, for it was at his choice to create him how he pleased. But why he did not uphold him with strength of steadfast continuance; that resteth hidden in God's secret council. Howbeit, this we may certainly conclude, that Adam's state was such as served to take away from him all excuse; for he received so much, that of his own will he wrought his own destruction;²⁸ because this act of his was a willful transgression of a law, under the precepts whereof he was as necessarily and righteously subject, if he transgressed: for, as being God's creature, he was to be subject to his will, so by being God's prisoner, he was as justly subject to his wrath; and that so much the more, by how much the precept was most just, the obedience more easy, the transgression more reasonable, and the punishment more certain.

Chapter I, Section III

The sinfulness and misery of mankind by the fall.

Nom. And was Adam's sin and punishment imputed unto his whole offspring?

27 Immutability, properly so called, or absolute unchangeableness, is an incommunicable attribute of God, (Mal 3:6, James 1:17); and mutably, or changeableness, is so of the nature of a creature, that it should cease to be a creature, or a dependent being, if it should cease to be mutable. But there is an immutability, improperly so called, which is competent to the creature, whereby it is free from being actually liable to change in some respect; the which, in reference to man, may be considered two ways. (1.) As putting him beyond the hazard of change by another hand than his own. (2.) As putting him beyond the hazard of change by himself. In the former sense, man was indeed made immutable in point of moral goodness; for he could only be made sinful or evil by himself, and not by any other. If he had been made immutable in the latter sense, that immutability behoved either to have been woven into his very nature, or else to have arisen from confirming grace. Now God did not create man thus immutable in his nature; which is it that the first question aims at; and that for this very good reason, viz: that, at that rate, man would have obeyed by fatal necessity and absolute determination, as one not having so much as a remote power in his nature to change himself. And neither glorified saints, nor angels, are thus immutable; their immutability in goodness entirely depending on confirming grace. As for immutability by confirming grace, which is it that the second question aims at, it is conferred on glorified saints and angels; but why it was not afforded to Adam at his creation, our author wisely declines to give any reason. "The reason, says he, why the Lord did not create him immutable was, because," &c.; but why he did not uphold him with strength of steadfast continuance, that resteth hidden in God's secret counsel.

28 That is, he received so much strength, that it was not of weakness, but willfulness, that he destroyed himself.

Evan. Yea, indeed; for says the apostle, ([Rom 5:12](#)), "Death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned"; or, "in whom all have sinned," that is, in Adam. The very truth is, Adam by his fall threw down our whole nature²⁹ headlong into the same destruction, and drowned his whole offspring in the same gulf of misery,³⁰ and the reason is, because, by God's appointment, he was not to stand or fall as a single person only, but as a common public person, representing all mankind to come of him:³¹ therefore, as all that happiness, all those gifts, and endowments, which were bestowed upon him, were not bestowed upon him alone, but also upon the whole nature of man, and as that covenant which was made with him, was made with the whole of mankind; even so he by breaking covenant lost all, as well for us as for himself. As he received all for himself and us, so he lost all both for himself and us.

Nom. Then, sir, it seemeth by Adam's breach of covenant, all mankind were brought into a miserable condition?

Evan. All mankind by the fall of Adam received a twofold damage: First, A deprivation of all original goodness. Secondly, An habitual natural proneness to all kind of wickedness. For the image of God, after which they were created, was forthwith blotted out; and in place of wisdom, righteousness, and true holiness, came blindness, uncleanness, falsehood, and injustice. The very truth is, our whole nature³² was thereby corrupted, defiled, deformed, depraved, infected, made infirm, frail, malignant, full of venom, contrary to God; yea, enemies and rebels unto him. So that, says Luther, this is the title we have received from Adam: in this one thing we may glory, and in nothing else at all; namely, that every infant that is born into this world, is wholly in the power of sin, death, Satan, hell, and everlasting damnation. Nay, says Musculus, "The whirlpool of man's sin in paradise is bottomless and unsearchable."

Nom. But, sir, methinks it is a strange thing that so small an offence, as eating of the forbidden fruit seems to be, should plunge the whole of mankind into such a gulf of misery.

Evan. Though at first glance it seems to be a small offence, yet, if we look more wistfully³³ upon the matter it will appear to be an exceeding great offence; for thereby intolerable injury was done unto God; as, first, His dominion and authority in his holy command was violated. Secondly, His justice, truth, and power, in his most righteous threatenings, were despised. Thirdly, His most pure and perfect image, wherein man was created in righteousness and true holiness, was utterly defaced. Fourthly, His glory, which, by an active service, the creature should have brought to him, was lost and despoiled. Nay, how could there be a greater sin committed than that, when Adam, at that one clap, broke all the ten commandments?

29 That is, all mankind.

30 With himself.

31 By virtue of the blessing of fruitfulness given before the fall.

32 That is, all mankind.

33 That is, earnestly.

Nom. Did he break all the ten commandments, say you? Sir, I beseech you show me wherein.

Evan. 1. He chose himself another God when he followed the devil.

2. He idolized and deified his own belly;³⁴ as the apostle's phrase is, "He made his belly his God."

3. He took the name of God in vain, when he believed him not.

4. He kept not the rest and estate wherein God had set him.

5. He dishonoured his Father who was in heaven; and therefore his days were not prolonged in that land which the Lord his God had given him.

6. He massacred himself and all his posterity.

7. From Eve he was a virgin, but in eyes and mind he committed spiritual fornication.

8. He stole, like Achan, that which God had set aside not to be meddled with; and this his stealth is that which troubles all Israel,—the whole world.

9. He bare witness against God, when he believed the witness of the devil before him.

10. He coveted an evil covetousness, like Amnon, which cost him his life, (2 Sam 13), and all his progeny. Now, whosoever considers what a nest of evils here were committed at one blow, must needs, with Musculus, see our case to be such, that we are compelled every way to commend the justice of God,³⁵ and to condemn the sin of our first parents, saying, concerning all mankind, as the prophet Hosea does concerning Israel, "O Israel, thou hast destroyed thyself," (Hosea 3:9).

Chapter I, Section IV

No recovery by the law, or covenant of works.

Nom. But, sir, had it not been possible for Adam both to have helped himself and his posterity out of his misery, by renewing the same covenant with God, and keeping it so afterwards?

Evan. No, by no means; for the covenant of works was a covenant no way capable of renovation.³⁶ When he had once broken it, he was gone for ever; because it was a covenant

34 That is, as the apostle's, &c.

35 That is, to justify God.

36 The covenant of works could by no means be renewed by fallen Adam, so as thereby to help himself and his posterity out of his misery, the which is the only thing in question here; otherwise, indeed, it might have been renewed, which is evident by this sad token, that many do actually renew it in their covenanting with God, being prompted thereto by their ignorance of the high demands of the law, their own utter inability, and the way of salvation by Jesus Christ. And from the same principle our legalist here makes no question but Adam might have renewed it, and kept it too, for the after-time; only, he questions whether or not Adam might thereby have helped himself and his posterity too, out of the misery they were brought into by his sin.

between two friends, but now fallen man was become an enemy. And besides it was an impossible thing for Adam to have performed the conditions which now the justice of God did necessarily require at his hands; for he was now become liable for the payment of a double debt, viz: the debt of satisfaction for his sin committed in time past, and the debt of perfect and perpetual obedience for the time to come; and he was utterly unable to pay either of them.

Nom. Why was he unable to pay the debt of satisfaction for his sin committed in time past?

Evan. Because his sin, in eating the forbidden fruit [for that is the sin I mean]³⁷ was committed against an infinite and eternal God, and therefore merited an infinite and eternal satisfaction; which was to be either some temporal punishment, equivalent to eternal damnation, or eternal damnation itself. Now Adam was a finite creature, therefore, between finite and infinite there could be no proportion; so that it was impossible for Adam to have made satisfaction by any temporal punishment; and if he had undertaken to have satisfied by an eternal punishment, he should always have been satisfying, and never have satisfied, as is the case of the damned in hell.

Nom. And why was he unable to pay the debt of perfect and perpetual obedience for the time to come?

Evan. Because his former power to obey was by his fall utterly impaired; for thereby his understanding was both enfeebled and drowned in darkness; and his will was made perverse, and utterly deprived of all power to will well; and his affections were quite set out of order; and all things belonging to the blessed life of the soul were extinguished, both in him and us; so that he was become impotent, yea, dead, and therefore not able to stand in the lowest terms to perform the meanest condition. The very truth is, our father Adam falling from God, did, by his fall, so dash him and us all in pieces, that there was no whole part left, either in him or us, fit to ground such a covenant upon. And this the apostle witnesseth, both when he says, "We are of no strength"; and, "The law was made weak, because of the flesh," ([Rom 5:6, 8:3](#)).

Nom. But, sir, might not the Lord have pardoned Adam's sin without satisfaction?

Evan. O no! for justice is essential in God, and it is a righteous thing with God, that every transgression receive a just recompense:³⁸ and if recompense be just, it is unjust to pardon sin without satisfaction. And though the Lord had pardoned and forgiven his former transgression, and so set him in his former condition of amity and friendship, yet having no power to keep the law perfectly, he could not have continued therein.³⁹

37 That being the sin in which all mankind fell with him, (Rom 5:15).

38 (2 Thess 1:6), "Seeing it is a righteous thing with God, to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you."—(Heb 2:2), "Every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense."

39 But would have sinned again, and so fallen under the curse anew.

Nom. And is it also impossible for any of his posterity to keep the law perfectly?

Evan. Yea, indeed, it is impossible for any mere man in the time of this life to keep it perfectly; yea, though he be a regenerate man; for the law requireth of man that he "love the Lord with all his heart, soul, and might"; and there is not the holiest man that lives, but he is flesh as well as spirit in all parts and faculties of his soul, and therefore cannot love the Lord perfectly. Yea, and the law forbiddeth all habitual concupiscence, not only saying, "thou shalt not consent to lust," but, "thou shalt not lust": it doth not only command the binding of lust, but forbids also the being of lust: and who in this case can say, "My heart is clean"?

Ant. Then, Nomista, take notice, I pray, that as it was altogether impossible for Adam to return into that holy and happy estate wherein he was created, by the same way he went from it,⁴⁰ so is it for any of his posterity; and therefore, I remember one says very wittingly, "The law was Adam's lease when God made him tenant of Eden; the conditions of which bond when he kept not, he forfeited himself and all for us." God read a lecture of the law to him before he fell, to be a hedge to him to keep him in paradise; but when Adam would not keep within compass, this law is now become as the flaming sword at Eden's gate, to keep him and his posterity out.

Chapter I, Section V

The covenant of works binding, though broken.

Nom. But, sir, you know, that when a covenant is broken, the parties that were bound are freed and released from their engagements; and therefore, methinks, both Adam and his posterity should have been released from the covenant of works when it was broken, especially considering they have no strength to perform the condition of it.

Evan. Indeed it is true, in every covenant, if either party fail in his duty, and perform not his condition, the other party is thereby freed from his part, but the party failing is not freed till the other release him; and, therefore, though the Lord be freed from performing his condition, that is, from giving to man eternal life, yet so is not man from his part; no, though strength to obey be lost, yet man having lost it by his own default, the obligation to obedience remains still; so that Adam and his offspring are no more discharged of their duties, because they have no strength to do them, than a debtor is quitted of his bond, because

⁴⁰ Walking back by the way of the covenant of works, which he left by his sinning.

Object. "Do we then make void the law," ([Rom 3:31](#)), leaving an imputation of dishonour upon it, as a disregarded path, by pretending to return another way? Ans. Sinners being united to Christ by faith, return, being carried back the same way they came; only their own feet never touch the ground; but the glorious Mediator, sustaining the persons of them all, walked every bit of the road exactly, ([Gal 4:4,5](#)). Thus, in Christ, the way of free grace, and of the law, sweetly meet together; and through faith we establish the law.

he wants money to pay it. And thus, Nomista, I have, according to your desire, endeavoured to help you to the true knowledge of the law of works.

Chapter II

Of the Law of Faith, or Covenant of Grace

Ant. I beseech you, sir, proceed to help us to the true knowledge of the law of faith.

Evan. The law of faith is as much as to say the covenant of grace, or the gospel, which signifies good, merry, glad, and joyful tidings; that is to say, that God, to whose eternal knowledge all things are present, and nothing past or to come, foreseeing man's fall, before all time purposed,⁴¹ and in time promised,⁴² and in the fullness of time performed,⁴³ the sending of his Son Jesus Christ into the world, to help and deliver fallen mankind.⁴⁴

Section I.

Of the eternal purpose of grace.

Ant. I beseech you, sir, let us hear more of these things; and first of all, show how we are to conceive of God's eternal purpose in sending of Jesus Christ.

Evan. Why, here the learned frame a kind of conflict in God's holy attributes; and by a liberty, which the Holy Ghost, from the language of holy Scripture, alloweth them, they speak of God after the manner of men, as if he were reduced to some straits and difficulties, by the cross demands of his several attributes.⁴⁵ For Truth and Justice stood up and said,

41 (2 Tim 1:9), "Who hath saved us according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began."—(Eph 3:11), "According to the eternal purpose, which he purposed in Christ Jesus our Lord."

42 (Rom 1:1,2), "The gospel of God, which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy Scriptures."

43 (Gal 4:4,5), "But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law."

44 These are the good tidings, this is the law of faith, i.e. the law to be believed for salvation, which the apostle plainly teacheth. (Rom 1:16), "The gospel is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth"; and, (verse 17), "For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith." In this last text, clouded with a great variety of interpretations, I think there is a transposition of words to be admitted, and would read the whole verse thus: "For therein is revealed the righteousness of God by faith unto faith; as it is written, But the just by faith shall live." The key to this construction and reading of the words in the former part of the verse, is, the testimony adduced by the apostle in the latter part of it, from Habakkuk 2:4, where the original text appears to me to determine the version of that testimony as here offered. The sense is, the righteousness which is by faith, namely, the righteousness of Christ, the only righteousness in which a sinner can stand before God, is in the gospel revealed unto faith, i.e. to be believed. See a like phrase, 1 Timothy 4:3, translated after this manner.

45 "How shall I give thee up, Ephraim? How shall I deliver thee, Israel? How shall I make thee as Admah? How shall I set thee as Zeboim? Mine heart is turned within me, my repentings are kindled together," (Hosea 11:8).

that man had sinned, and therefore man must die; and so called for the condemnation of a sinful, and therefore worthily a cursed creature; or else they must be violated: for thou saidst, [said they to God], "In that day that thou eatest of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt die the death." Mercy, on the other side, pleaded for favour, and appeals to the great court in heaven: and there it pleads, saying, Wisdom, and power, and goodness, have been all manifest in the creation; and anger and justice have been magnified in man's misery that he is now plunged into by his fall: but I have not yet been manifested.⁴⁶ O let favour and compassion be shown towards man, woefully seduced and overthrown by Satan! Oh! said they⁴⁷ unto God, it is a royal thing to relieve the distressed; and the greater any one is, the more placable and gentle he ought to be. But Justice replied, If I be offended, I must be satisfied and have my right; and therefore I require, that man, who hath lost himself by his disobedience, should, for remedy, set obedience against it, and so satisfy the judgment of God. Therefore the wisdom of God became an umpire, and devised a way to reconcile them; concluding, that before there could be reconciliation made, there must be two things effected; (1.) A satisfaction of God's justice. (2.) A reparation of man's nature: which two things must needs be effected by such a middle and common person that had both zeal towards God, that he might be satisfied; and compassion towards man, that he might be repaired: such a person, as, having man's guilt and punishment translated on him, might satisfy the justice of God, and as having a fullness of God's Spirit and holiness in him, might sanctify and repair the nature of man.⁴⁸ And this could be none other but Jesus Christ, one of the Three Persons of the blessed Trinity; therefore he, by his Father's ordination, his own voluntary offering, and the Holy Spirit's sanctification, was fitted for the business. Whereupon there was a special covenant, or mutual agreement made between God and Christ, as is expressed, ([Isa](#)

46 Mercy requires an object in misery.

47 Favour and compassion.

48 As man lay in ruins, by the fall guilty and unclean, there stood int he way of his salvation, by mercy designed, 1. The justice of God, which could not admit the guilty creature; and, 2. The holiness of God, which could not admit the unclean and unholy creature to communion with him. Therefore, in the contrivance of his salvation, it was necessary that provision should be made for the satisfaction of God's justice, by payment of the double debt mentioned above; namely, the debt of punishment and the debt of perfect obedience. It was also necessary that provision should be made for the sanctification of the sinner, the repairing of the lost image of God in him. And man being as unable to sanctify himself, as to satisfy justice, [a truth which proud nature cannot digest], the Saviour behoved, not only to obey and suffer in his stead, but also to have a fullness of the Spirit of holiness in him to communicate to the sinner, that his nature might be repaired through sanctification of the Spirit. Thus was the groundwork of man's salvation laid in the eternal counsel; the sanctification of the sinner, according to our author, being as necessary to his salvation as the satisfaction of justice; for indeed the necessity of the former, as well as of the latter, ariseth from the nature of God, and therefore is an absolute necessity.

53:10), that if Christ would make himself a sacrifice for sin, then he should "see his seed, he should prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord should prosper by him." So in [Psalm 89:19](#), the mercies of this covenant between God and Christ, under the type of God's covenant with David, are set forth: "Thou spakest in vision to thy holy One, and saidst, I have laid help upon One that is mighty": or, as the Chaldee expounds it, "One mighty in the law." As if God had said concerning his elect, I know that these will break, and never be able to satisfy me; but thou art a mighty and substantial person, able to pay me, therefore I will look for my debt of thee.⁴⁹ As Pareus well observes, God did, as it were, say to Christ, What they owe me I require all at thy hands. Then said Christ, "Lo, I come to do thy will! in the volume of the book it is written of me, I delight to do thy will, O my God! yea, thy law is in my heart," ([Psa 40:7,8](#)). Thus Christ assented, and from everlasting struck hands with God, to put upon him man's person, and to take upon him his name, and to enter in his stead in obeying his Father, and to do all for man that he should require, and to yield in man's flesh the price of the satisfaction of the just judgment of God, and, in the same flesh, to suffer the punishment that man had deserved; and this he undertook under the penalty that lay upon man to have undergone.⁵⁰ And thus was justice satisfied, and mercy by the Lord Jesus Christ; and so God took Christ's single bond; whence Christ is not only called the "surety of the covenant for us," ([Heb 7:22](#)), but the covenant itself, ([Isa 49:8](#)). And God laid all upon him, that he might be sure of satisfaction; protesting that he would not deal with us, nor so much as expect any payment from us; such was his grace. And thus did our Lord Jesus Christ enter into the same covenant of works that Adam did to deliver believers from it:⁵¹ he was contented to

49 That is, the debt which the elect owe to me. Thus was the covenant made betwixt the Father and the Son for the elect, that he should obey for them, and die for them.

50 The Son of God consented to put himself in man's stead, in obeying his Father, and so to do all for man that his Father should require, that satisfaction should be made: farther, he consented, in man's nature, to satisfy and suffer the deserved punishment, that the same nature that sinned might satisfy; and yet farther, he undertook to bear the very same penalty that lay upon man, by virtue of the covenant of works, to have undergone; so making himself a proper surety for them, who, as the author observes, must pay the sum of money that the debtor oweth. This I take to be the author's meaning; but the expression of "Christ's undertaking under the penalty," &c., is harsh and unguarded.

51 Our Lord Jesus Christ became surety for the elect in the second covenant, ([Heb 8:22](#)); and in virtue of that suretyship, whereby he put himself in the room of the principal debtors, he came under the same covenant of works that Adam did; in so far as the fulfilling of that covenant in their stead was the very condition required of him, as the second Adam in the second covenant. ([Gal 4:4,5](#)), "God sent forth his Son; made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law." Thus Christ put his neck under the yoke of the law as a covenant of works, to redeem them who were under it as such. Hence he is said to be the "end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth," ([Rom 10:4](#)); namely, the end for consummation, or perfect fulfilling of it by his obedience and death, which pre-supposeth his coming under it. And thus the law as a covenant of works was

be under all that commanding, revenging authority, which that covenant had over them, to free them from the penalty of it; and in that respect, Adam is said to be a type of Christ, as you have it, (Rom 5:14), "who was the type of him that was to come." To which purpose, the titles which the apostle gives these two, Christ and Adam, are exceeding observable: he calls Adam the "first man," and Christ our Lord the "second man," (1 Cor 15:47); speaking of them as if there never had been any more men in the world besides these two; thereby making them head and root of all mankind, they having, as it were, the rest of the sons of men included in them. The first man is called the "earthy man"; the second man, Christ, is called the "Lord from heaven," (1 Cor 15:47). The earthy man had all the sons of men born into the world included in him, and is so called, in conformity unto them, the "first man":⁵² the second Man, Christ, is called the "Lord from heaven," who had all the elect included in him, who are said to be the "first born," and to have their "names written in heaven," (Heb 12:23), and therefore are appositely called "heavenly men"; so that these two, in God's account, stood for all the rest.⁵³ And thus you see, that the Lord, willing to show mercy to the fallen creature, and withal to maintain the authority of his law, took such a course as might best manifest his clemency and severity. Christ entered into covenant, and became surety for man, and so became liable to man's engagements: for he that answers as a surety must pay the same sum of money that the debtor oweth.

And thus have I endeavoured to show you, how we are to conceive of God's eternal purpose in sending of Jesus Christ to help and deliver fallen mankind.

Chapter II, Section II, 1

The promise made to Adam.

Ant. I beseech you, sir, proceed also to the second thing; and first tell us, when the Lord began to make a promise to help and deliver fallen mankind.

magnified and made honourable; and it clearly appears how "by faith we establish the law," (Rom 3:31). How then is the second covenant a covenant of grace? In respect of Christ, it was most properly and strictly a covenant of works, in that he made a proper, real, and full satisfaction in behalf of the elect; but in respect of them, it is purely a covenant of richest grace, in as much as God accepted the satisfaction from a surety, which he might have demanded of them; provided the surety himself, and gives all to them freely for his sake.

52 And so, in relation to them, is called the "first man."

53 Thus Adam represented all mankind in the first covenant, and Christ represented all the elect in the second covenant.—See the first note on the Preface.

Evan. Even the same day that he sinned,⁵⁴ which, as I suppose, was the very same day he was created.⁵⁵ For Adam, by his sin, being become the child of wrath, and both in body and in soul subject to the curse, and seeing nothing due to him but the wrath and vengeance of God, was "afraid, and sought to hide himself from the presence of God," (Gen 3:10), whereupon the Lord promised Christ unto him, saying to the serpent, "I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed"; he [that is to say, the seed of the woman, for so is the Hebrew text] "shall break thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel." This promise of Christ, the woman's seed, (verse 15), was the gospel; and the only comfort of Adam, Abel, Enoch, Noah, and the rest of the godly fathers, until the time of Abraham.⁵⁶

54 This, our author does here positively assert, and afterwards confirm. And there is plain evidence for it from the holy Scriptures, which determines the time of our Lord's calling our guilty first parents before him, at the which time he gave them the promise. (Gen 3:8), "And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day"; [Heb, "At the wind of that day," as Junius and Tremellius, Piscator and Picherellus, read it;] the which, as soon as it began to blow, might convince them that their aprons of fig-leaves were not fit covers for their nakedness.

55 Our author is far from being singular in this opinion. The learned Gataker, [apud Pol. Synop. Crit. in Genesis 3:23,] owns it to be the common opinion, though he himself is of another mind, "That man fell, and was cast out of paradise, the same day in which he was created." And he tells us, [Ibid. in Psalm 49:13,] that "Broughton does most confidently assert Adam not to have stood in his integrity so much as one day; and that he saith, out of Maimonides, This is held by all the Jews, as also by the Greek fathers." That this opinion is less received than formerly, is, if I mistake not, not a little owing to the cavils of the Deists; who, to weaken the credit of the inspired history, allege it to be incredible that the events recorded (Gen 1:24-26, 2:7,18, to the end of the third chapter), could all be crowded into one day. [See Nichol's Conference with a Theist.] The reasons to support it, taken from the learned Sharp, one of the six ministers banished in the year 1606. [Curs. Theol. Loc. de Peccato.] 1. "Because of the devil's envy, who, it is likely, could not long endure to see a man in a happy state. 2. If man had stood more days, the blessing of marriage would have taken place, Adam would have known his wife, and begot a child without original sin. 3. The Sabbath was not so much appointed for meditating on the works of creation, as on the work of redemption. 4. It appears from the words of the serpent, and of the woman, that she had not yet tasted any fruit. 5. When the Holy Ghost speaks of the sixth day, (Gen 1), and of the day of the fall, it is with HE emphatic. [Compare Genesis 1 ult. and 3:8.] 6. He fell so soon, that the work of redemption might be the more illustrious, since man could not stand one day without the Mediator's help." How the Sabbath was broken by Adam's sin, though committed the day before, may be learned from the Larger Catechism, on the fourth commandment, which teaches, that "The Sabbath is to be sanctified—and to that end we are to prepare our hearts—that we may be the more fit for the duties of that day": and that "the sins forbidden in the fourth commandment, are all omissions of the duties required," &c.

56 In this promise was revealed, 1. Man's restoration unto the favour of God, and his salvation; not to be effected by man himself, and his own works, but by another. For our first parents, standing condemned for breaking of

Nom. I pray you, sir, what ground have you to think that Adam fell the same day he was created?

Evan. My ground for this opinion is, [Psalm 49:12](#); which text Mr. Ainsworth makes to be the 13th verse, and reads it thus, "But man in honour doth not lodge a night; he is likened unto beasts that are silenced."⁵⁷ That may be minded, says he, both for the first man Adam, who continued not in his dignity, and for all his children.

the covenant of works, are not sent back to it, to essay the mending of the matter, which they had marred before; but a new covenant is purposed,—a Saviour promised as their only hope. 2. That this Saviour was to be incarnate, to become man, "the seed of the women." 3. That he behoved to suffer; his heel, namely his humanity, to be bruised to death. 4. That by his death he should make a full conquest over the devil, and destroy his works, who had now overcome and destroyed mankind; and so recover the captives out of his hand: "he shall bruise thy head, viz: while thou bruise his heel." This encounter was on the cross: there Christ treading on the serpent, it bruised his heel, but he bruised its head. 5. That he should not be held by death, but Satan's power should be broken irrecoverably: the Saviour being only bruised in the heel, but the serpent in the head. 6. That the saving interest in him, and his salvation, is by faith alone, believing the promise with particular application to one's self, and so receiving him, forasmuch as these things are revealed by way of a simple promise.

57 "From this text the Hebrew doctors, also in Bereshit Rabba, do gather, that the glory of the first man did not night with him, and that in the beginning of the Sabbath his splendour was taken away from him, and he was driven out of Eden."—[Cartwright and Pol. Synops. Crit. in Loc.] The learned Leigh, [in his Crit. Sacr. in voc. Lun,] citing this text, says, "Adam lodged not one night in honour, for so are the words, if they be properly translated." He repeats the same in his annotations on the book of Psalms, and points his reader to Ainsworth, whose version does evidently favour this opinion, and is here faithfully cited by our author, though without the marks of composition—"lodge a night," there being no such marks in my copy of Ainsworth's version or annotations, printed at London, 1639. However the word lun may signify, to abide or continue, it is certain the proper and primary signification of it is, tonight [at, in, or with]. I must be allowed the use of this word to express the true import of the original one. Thus we have it rendered, (Gen 28:11), "tarried all night."—(Judg 19:9,10,13), "Tarry all night—tarry that night—lodged all night." And since this is the proper and primary signification of the word, it is not to be receded from, without necessity; the which I cannot discover here. The text seems to me to stand thus, word for word, the propriety of the tenses also observed: "Yet Adam in honour could not night; he became like as the beasts, they were alike." Compare the Septuagint, and the vulgar Latin; with which, according to Pool, [in Synop. Crit.,] the Ethiopic, Syriac, and Arabic, do agree, though unhappy in not observing the difference between this and the last verse of the Psalm. Nothing can be more agreeable to the scope and content. Worldly men boast themselves in the multitude of their riches, (verse 6), as if their houses should continue for ever, (verse 11); and yet Adam, as happy as he was in paradise, continued not one night in his honour; it quickly left him; yea, he died, and in that respect became like the beasts; (compare verse 14), "Like sheep they are laid in the grave, death shall feed on them." And after showing that the worldly man shall die, notwithstanding of his worldly wealth and honour, (verse 19), this suitable memorial for Adam's sons is repeated with a very small variation, (verse 20,21), "Adam was in honour, but could not understand; he became," &c.

Ant. But, sir, do you think that Adam and those others did understand that promised seed to be meant of Christ?

Evan. Who can make doubt, but that the Lord had acquainted Adam with Christ, betwixt the time of his sinning and the time of his sacrificing, though both on one day?

Ant. But did Adam offer sacrifice?

Evan. Can you make any question, but that the bodies of those beasts, whose skins went for a covering for his body, were immediately before offered in sacrifice for his soul? Surely these skins could be none other but of beasts slain, and offered in sacrifice; for before Adam fell, beasts were not subject to mortality nor slaying. And God's clothing of Adam and his wife with skins signified, that their sin and shame were covered with Christ's righteousness. And, questionless, the Lord had taught him, that his sacrifice did signify his acknowledgment of his sin, and that he looked for the Seed of the woman, promised to be slain in the evening of the world, thereby to appease the wrath of God for his offence; the which, undoubtedly, he acquainted his sons, Cain and Abel, with, when he taught them also to offer sacrifice.

Ant. But how doth it appear that this his sacrificing was the very same day that he sinned?

Evan. It is said, ([John 7:3](#)), concerning Christ, "That they sought to take him, yet no man laid hands on him, because his hour was not yet come"; but after that when the time of his suffering was at hand, he himself said, ([John 12:23](#)), "The hour is come"; which day is expressly set down by the Evangelist Mark to be the sixth day, and ninth hour of that day, when "Christ, through the eternal Spirit, offered up himself without spot to God," ([Mark 15:34,42](#)). Now, if you compare this with [Exodus 12:6](#), you shall find that the paschal lamb, a most lively type of Christ, was offered the very same day and hour, even the sixth day, and ninth hour of that day, which was at three of the clock in the afternoon: and the Scripture testifies, that Adam was created the very same sixth day; and gives us ground to think that he sinned the same day. And do not the before alleged Scriptures afford us warrant to believe that it was the very same hour of that day, ([Gen 1:26](#)); when Christ entered mystically and typically upon the work of redemption, in being offered as a sacrifice for Adam's sin?⁵⁸ And surely we may suppose, that the covenant [as you heard] being broken between God and Adam, justice would not have admitted of one hour's respite, before it had proceeded to execution, to the destruction both of Adam and the whole creation, had not Christ, at that

58 That the promise was given the same day that Adam sinned, was evinced before: and from the history, ([Gen 3](#)), and the nature of the thing itself, one may reasonably conclude, that the sacrifices were annexed to the promise. And since the hour of Christ's death was all along the time of the evening sacrifice, it is very natural to reckon that it was also the hour of the first sacrifice; even as the place on which the temple stood was at first designed by an extraordinary sacrifice on that spot, ([1 Chron 20:18-28, 22:1](#)). 1. "At three o'clock in the afternoon, Christ yielded up the Ghost, ([Mark 15:34](#)), the very time when Adam had received the promise of this his passion for his redemption."—Lightfoot on Acts 2:1.

very time, stood as the ram [or rather the lamb] in the bush, and stepped in to perform the work of the covenant. And hence I conceive it is, that Saint⁵⁹ John calls him the "Lamb slain" from the beginning of the world,⁶⁰ (Rev 13:8). For as the first state of creation was confirmed by the covenant which God made with man, and all creatures were to be upheld by means of observing the law and condition of that covenant; so that covenant being broken by man, the world should have come to ruin, had it not been, as it were, created anew, and upheld by the covenant of grace in Christ.

Ant. Then, sir, you think that Adam was saved?

Evan. The Hebrew doctors hold that Adam was a repentant sinner, and say, that he was by wisdom, [that is to say, by faith in Christ,] brought out of his fall; yea, and the Church of God doth hold, and that for necessary causes, that he was saved by the death of Christ; yea, says Mr. Vaughan, it is certain he believed the promise concerning Christ, in whose commemoration he offered continual sacrifice; and in the assurance thereof, he named his wife Hevah, that is to say, life,⁶¹ and he called his son Seth, settled or persuaded in Christ.

Ant. Well, now, I am persuaded that Adam did understand this seed of the woman to be meant of Christ.

Evan. Assure yourself, that not only Adam, but all the rest of the godly fathers did so understand it, as is manifest in that the Targum, or Chaldee Bible, which is the ancient translation of Jerusalem, has it thus: "Between thy son and her son"; adding further, by way

59 This word might well have been spared here; notwithstanding that we so read in the title of the book of the Revelation in our English Bibles; and in like manner, in the titles of other books in the New Testament, St. [i.e. Saint] Matthew, St. Mark, St. Luke, &c.; it is evident, there is not such a word to be found in the titles of these books in the original Greek; and the Dutch translators have justly discarded it out of their translations. If it is to be retained, because John, Matthew, Mark, Luke, &c., were, without controversy, saints, why not on the same ground, Saint Moses, Saint Aaron, [expressly called "the Saint of the Lord," (Psa 106:16)] &c.? No reason can be given of the difference made in this point, but that it pleased Antichrist to canonize these New Testament saints, but not the Old Testament ones. Canonizing is an act or sentence of the Pope, decreeing religious worship and honours to such men or women departed, as he sees meet to confer the honour of saintship on. These honours are seven, and the first of them is, "That they are enrolled in the catalogue of saints, and must be accounted and called saints by all."—Bellarmine Disp. tom. 1. Col. 1496.

60 The benefits thereof [viz: of Christ's redemption] "were communicated unto the elect from the beginning of the world in and by those promises, types, and sacrifices, wherein he was revealed, and signified to be the Seed of the woman which should bruise the serpent's head, and the Lamb slain from the beginning of the world."—Westm. Confess. chap. 8, art. 6.

61 So the Septuagint expounds it. Others, an enliverer, not doubting but Adam, in giving her this name, had the promised life-giving Seed, our Lord Jesus Christ, particularly in view, amongst the "all living" she was to be mother of.

of comment, "So long, O serpent, as the woman's children keep the law, they kill thee! and when they cease to do so, thou stingest them in the heel, and hast power to hurt them much; but whereas for their harm there is a sure remedy, for thee there is none; for in the last days they shall crush thee all to pieces, by means of Christ their king." And this was it which did support and uphold their faith until the time of Abraham.

Chapter II, Section II, 2

The promise renewed to Abraham.

Ant. What followed then?

Evan. Why, then, the promise was turned into a covenant with Abraham and his seed, and oftentimes repeated, that in his seed all nations should be blessed,⁶² ([Gen 12:3](#), [18:18](#), [22:18](#)); which promise and covenant was the very voice itself of the gospel, it being a true testimony of Jesus Christ; as the apostle Paul beareth witness, saying, The Scripture foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles through faith, preached before the Gospel unto Abraham, ([Gal 3:8](#)), saying, "In thee shall all the nations of the earth be blessed." And the better to confirm Abraham's faith in this promise of Christ, it is said, ([Gen 14:19](#)), that Melchisedec came forth and met him, and blessed him. Now, says the apostle, ([Heb 7:1-3](#), [6:20](#)), "This Melchisedec was a priest of the most high God, and king of righteousness, and king of peace, without father and without mother; and so like unto the Son of God, who is a priest for ever, after the order of Melchisedec"; and both king of righteousness and king of peace, ([Jer 23:6](#), [Isa 9:6](#)); yea, and without father as touching his manhood, and without mother as touching his godhead. Whereby we are given to understand, that it was the purpose of God that Melchisedec should, in these particulars, resemble the person and office of Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and so, by God's own appointment, be a type of him to Abraham, to ratify and

62 The ancient promise given to Adam was the first gospel, the covenant of grace; for man, by his fall, "having made himself incapable of life by the covenant of works, the Lord was pleased to make a second, commonly called the covenant of grace," ([Gen 3:15](#)). Westm. Confess. chap. 7, art. 3. When that promise or covenant, in which the persons it respected were not expressly designed, was renewed, Abraham and his seed were designed expressly therein; and so it became a covenant with Abraham and his seed. And the promise being still the same as to the substance of it, was often repeated, and in the repetition more fully and clearly opened. So Jesus Christ, revealed to Adam only as the seed of the woman, was thereafter revealed to Abraham as Abraham's own seed; and thus was it believed and embraced unto salvation in the various revelations thereof. "God did seek Adam again, call upon him, rebuke his sin, convict him of the same; and, in the end, made unto him a most joyful promise, viz: that the seed of the woman should break down the serpent's head; that is, he should destroy the works of the devil; which promise, as it was repeated, and made more clear from time to time, so was it embraced with joy, and may constantly [i.e. most steadfastly] be received of all the faithful, from Adam to Noe, and from Noe to Abraham, from Abraham to David, and so, forth to the incarnation of Christ Jesus." Old Confess. art. 4.

confirm the promise made to him and his seed, in respect of the eternal covenant,⁶³ namely, that he and his believing seed should be so blessed in Christ, as Melchisedec had blessed him.⁶⁴ Nay, let me tell you more, some have thought it most probable, yea, and have said, if we search out this truth without partiality, we shall find that this Melchisedec, which appeared unto Abraham, was none other than the Son of God, manifest by a special dispensation and privilege unto Abraham in the flesh, who is therefore said to have "seen his day and rejoiced."⁶⁵ ([John 8:56](#)). Moreover, in [Genesis 15](#), we read that the Lord did again confirm this covenant with Abraham; for when Abraham had divided the beasts, God came between the parts like a smoking furnace and a burning lamp, which,⁶⁶ as some have thought, did primarily typify the torment and rending of Christ; and the furnace and fiery lamp did typify the wrath of God which ran between, and yet did not consume the rent and torn nature. And the blood of circumcision did typify the blood of Christ;⁶⁷ and the resolved sacrificing of Isaac on Mount Moriah, by God's appointment, did prefigure and foreshow, that by the offering up of Christ, the promised seed, in the very same place, all nations should be saved. Now this covenant, thus made and confirmed with Abraham, was renewed with Isaac, ([Gen 26:4](#)), and made known unto Jacob by Jesus Christ himself; for that man which wrestled with Jacob was none other but the man Christ Jesus; for himself said, that Jacob should be called Israel, a wrestler and prevailer with God; and Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, because he had "seen God face to face," ([Gen 32:28,30](#)). And Jacob left it by his last will unto his children in these words, "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, till Shiloh come," ([Gen 49:10](#)); that is to say, of Judah shall kings come one after another, and many in number, till at last the Lord Jesus come, who is King of kings, and Lord of lords; or, as the Targum of Jerusalem and Onkelos do translate it, until Christ the Anointed come.

63 That passed betwixt the Father and the Son from everlasting.

64 Melchisedec was unto Abraham a type, to confirm him in the faith, that he and his believing seed should be as really blessed in Christ, as he was blessed by Melchisedec.

65 This seems to me to be a more than groundless opinion, as being inconsistent with the Scripture account of Melchisedec, ([Gen 14:18](#), [Heb 7:1-4](#)); howbeit it wants no patrons among the learned; the declaring of which is no just ground to fit it on our author, especially after his speaking so plainly of Christ and Melchisedec as two different persons, a little before. The text, ([John 8:56](#)), alleged by the patrons of that opinion, makes nothing for their purpose: "for all [we mean the faithful fathers under the law] did see [viz: by faith] the joyful day of Christ Jesus, and did rejoice." Old Confess. art. 4.

66 Namely, the passing of the furnace and burning lamp between the pieces.

67 ([Heb 9:22](#)), "And almost all things are by the law purged with blood: and without shedding of blood is no remission." Compare [Genesis 17:14](#), "The uncircumcised man-child shall be cut off from his people: he hath broken my covenant."

Nom. But, sir, are you sure that this promised seed was meant of Christ?

Evan. The apostle puts that out of doubt, ([Gal 3:16](#)), saying, "Now unto Abraham and to his seed were the promises made."⁶⁸ He says not—and to seeds, as of many, but as of one, and to thy seed, which is Christ."⁶⁹ And so no doubt but these godly patriarchs did understand it.

Ant. But, sir, the great promise that was made to them, as I conceive, and which they seemed to have most regard to, was the land of Canaan.

Evan. There is no doubt but that these godly patriarchs did see their heavenly inheritance [by Christ] through the promise of the land of Canaan, as the apostle testifies of Abraham, ([Heb 11:9,10](#)), saying, "He sojourned in a strange country, and looked for a city having foundations, whose builder and maker is God." "Whereby it is evident," says Calvin, [Instit. p. 204,] "that the height and eminency of Abraham's faith was the looking for an everlasting life in heaven." The like testimony he gives of Sarah, Isaac, and Jacob, saying, "All these died in the faith,"⁷⁰ ([Heb 11:13](#)); implying that they did not expect to receive the fruit of the promise till after death. And, therefore in all their travails they had before their eyes the blessedness of the life to come; and which caused old Jacob to say at his death, "Lord, I have waited for thy salvation," ([Gen 49:18](#)). The which speech the Chaldee paraphrase expounds thus, "Our father Jacob said not, I expect the salvation of Gideon, son of Joash, which is a temporal salvation, nor the salvation of Samson, son of Manoah, which is a transitory salvation, but the salvation of Christ, the Son of David, who shall come, and bring unto himself the sons of Israel, whose salvation my soul desireth." And so you see that this covenant, made with Abraham in Christ, was the comfort and support of these and the rest of the godly fathers, until their departure out of Egypt.

Ant. And what followed then?

Evan. Why, then, Christ Jesus was most clearly manifested unto them in the passover lamb; for, as that lamb was to be without spot or blemish, ([Exo 12:5](#)), even so was Christ, ([1 Peter 1:19](#)). And as that lamb was taken up the tenth day of the first new moon in March, even so on the very same day of the same month came Christ to Jerusalem to suffer his

68 Namely, the promises of the everlasting inheritance, typified by the land of Canaan: the which promises see in [Genesis 12:7](#), and [13:15](#).

69 That is, Christ mystical, Christ and the Church, the head and the members; yet so as the dignity of the head being still reserved—he is to be understood here primarily, which is sufficient for our author's purposes; and his members secondarily only.

70 That these three, together with Abraham, are here meant by the apostle, and not these mentioned in the first seven verses of the chapter, if it is considered, that of them he spoke last, ([verse 9,11](#)). To none before them was the promise of Canaan given; and they were the persons who had opportunity to have returned to the country whence they came out, ([verse 15](#)).

passion. And as that lamb was killed on the fourteenth day at even, just then, on the same day, and at the same hour, did Christ give up the ghost; and as the blood of that lamb was to be sprinkled on the Israelites' doors, (*Exo 12:7*), even so is the blood of Christ sprinkled on believers' hearts by faith, (*1 Peter 1:2*) And their deliverance out of Egypt was a figure of their redemption by Christ,⁷¹ their passing through the Red Sea was a type of baptism,⁷² when Christ should come in the flesh, and their manna in the wilderness, and water out of the rock, did resemble the sacrament of the Lord's Supper; and hence it is that the apostle says, (*1 Cor 10:2- 4*), "They did all eat the same spiritual meat, and did all drink the same spiritual drink; for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them, and that Rock was Christ." And when they were come to Mount Sinai, the Lord delivered the ten commandments unto them.

Chapter II, Section II, 3

The law, as the covenant of works, added to the promise.

Ant. But whether were the ten commandments, as they were delivered to them on Mount Sinai, the covenant of works or no?

Evan. They were delivered to them as the covenant of works.⁷³

71 That is, the deliverance of the Israelites out of Egypt was a figure of the redemption of believers by Christ.

72 Not that it prefigured or represented baptism as a proper and prophetic type thereof, though some orthodox divines seem to be of that mind; but that, as the author expresses himself, in the case of the manna and the water out of the rock, it resembled baptism, being a like figure [or type] thereunto, as the apostle Peter determines, concerning Noah's ark with the waters of the deluge, (*1 Peter 3:21*), even as the printer's types of the letters impressed on the paper, both signifying one and the same word. For the ancient church is expressly said to have been "baptized in the sea," (*1 Cor 10:1,2*), and as the rock, with the waters flowing from it, did not signify the Lord's Supper, but the thing signified by that New Testament Sacrament, namely, Christ, (verse 4), so their baptism in the sea did not signify our baptism itself, but the thing represented thereby. And thus it was a type or figure answering to and resembling the baptism of the New Testament-church; the one being an extraordinary sacrament of the Old Testament, and the other an ordinary sacrament of the New, both representing the same thing.

73 As to this point, there are different sentiments among orthodox divines; though all of them do agree, that the way of salvation was the same under the Old and New Testament, and that the Sinai covenant, whatever it was, carried no prejudice to the promise made unto Abraham, and the way of salvation therein revealed, but served to lead men to Jesus Christ. Our author is far from being singular in this decision of this question. I adduce only the testimonies of three late learned writers, "That God made such a covenant [viz: the covenant of works] with our first parents, is confirmed by several parts of Scripture," (*Hosea 6:7, Gal 4:24*),—Willison's *Sacr. Cat.* p. 3. The words of the text last quoted are these: "For these are the two covenants, the one from the Mount Sinai which gendereth to bondage." Hence it appears, that in the judgment of this author, the covenant from Mount

Nom. But, by your favour, sir, you know that these people were the posterity of Abraham, and therefore under that covenant of grace which God made with their father; and therefore I do not think that they were delivered to them as the covenant of works; for you know the Lord never delivers the covenant of works to any that are under the covenant of grace.

Evan. Indeed it is true, the Lord did manifest so much love to the body of this nation, that all the natural seed of Abraham were externally, and by profession, under the covenant of grace made with their father Abraham; though, it is to be feared, many of them were still under the covenant of works made with their father Adam.⁷⁴

Nom. But, sir, you know, in the preface to the ten commandments, the Lord calls himself by the name of their God in general; and therefore it should seem that they were all of them the people of God.⁷⁵

Sinai was the covenant of works, otherwise there is no shadow of reason from this text for what it is adduced to prove. The Rev. Messrs. Flint and M'Claren, in their elaborate and seasonable treatise against Professor Simpson's doctrine, [for which I make no question but their names will be in honour with posterity] speak to the same purpose. The former having adduced the fore-cited text, (Gal 4:24), says, *Jam duo federa, &c.*, that is, "Now here are two covenants mentioned, the first the legal one, by sin rendered ineffectual, entered into with Adam, and now again promulgate." [Exam. Doctr. Joh. Simp. p. 125.] And afterwards, speaking of the law of works, he adds, *Atque hoc est illud fadus, &c.*, that is, "And this is that covenant promulgate on Mount Sinai, which is called one of the covenants," (Gal 4:24). *Ibid.* p. 131. The words of the latter, speaking of the covenant of works are these, "Yea, it is expressly called a covenant," (Hosea 6, Gal 4). And Mr. Gillespie proves strongly, that Galations 4 is understood of the covenant of works and grace. See his *Ark of the Testament*, part 1. chap. 5. p. 180. The *New Scheme Examined*, p. 176. The delivering of the ten commandments on Mount Sinai as the covenant of works, necessarily includes in it the delivering of them as a perfect rule of righteousness; forasmuch as that covenant did always contain in it such a rule, the true knowledge of which the Israelites were at that time in great want of, as our author afterwards teaches.

74 The strength of the objection in the preceding paragraph lies here, namely, that at this rate, the same person, at one and the same time, were both under the covenant of works, and under the covenant of grace, which is absurd. Ans. The unbelieving Israelites were under the covenant of grace made with their father Abraham externally and by profession, in respect of their visible church state; but under the covenant of works made with their father Adam internally and really, in respect of the state of their souls before the Lord. Herein there is no absurdity; for to this day many in the visible church are thus, in these different respects, under both covenants. Farther, as to believers among them, they were internally and really, as well as externally, under the covenant of grace; and only externally under the covenant of works, and that, not as a covenant co-ordinate with, but subordinate and subservient unto, the covenant of grace: and in this there is no more inconsistency than in the former.

75 As delivered from the covenant of works, by virtue of the covenant of grace.

Evan. That is nothing to the purpose;⁷⁶ for many wicked and ungodly men, being in the visible church, and under the external covenant, are called the chosen of God, and the

76 That will not, indeed, prove them all to have been the people of God in the sense before given, for the reason here adduced by our author. Howbeit, the preface to the ten commandments deserves a particular notice in the matter of the Sinai transaction, (Exo 20:2), "I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage." Hence it is evident to me, that the covenant of grace was delivered to the Israelites on Mount Sinai. For the Son of God, the messenger of the covenant of grace, spoke these words to a select people, the natural seed of Abraham, typical of his whole spiritual seed. He avoucheth himself to be their God; namely, in virtue of the promise, or covenant made with Abraham, (Gen 17:7), "I will establish my covenant—to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee": and their God, which brought them out of the land of Egypt; according to the promise made to Abraham at the most solemn renewal of the covenant with him.—(Gen 15:14), "Afterwards shall they come out with great substance. And he first declares himself their God, and then requires obedience, according to the manner of the covenant with Abraham, (Gen 17:1); "I am the Almighty God, [i.e. in the language of the covenant, The Almighty God TO THEE, to make THEE for ever blest through the promised SEED,] walk thou before me, and be thou perfect." But that the covenant of works was also, for special ends, repeated and delivered to the Israelites on Mount Sinai, I cannot refuse, 1. Because of the apostle's testimony, (Gal 4:24), "These are the two covenants; the one from Mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage." For the children of this Sinai covenant the apostle here treats of, are excluded from the eternal inheritance, as Ishmael was from Canaan, the type of it, (verse 30), "Cast out the bond-woman and her son; for the son of the bond-woman shall not be heir with the son of the free woman"; but this could never be said of the children of the covenant of grace under any dispensation, though both the law and covenant from Sinai itself, and its children, were even before the coming of Christ under a sentence of exclusion, to be executed on them respectively in due time. 2. The nature of the covenant of works is most expressly in the New Testament brought in, propounded, and explained from the Mosaical dispensation. The commands of it from Exodus 20 by our blessed Saviour, (Matt 19:17-19), "If thou wilt enter into life keep the commandments. He saith unto him, Which? Jesus said, Thou shalt do no murder, thou shalt not commit adultery," &c. The promise of it, (Rom 10:5), "Moses describes the righteousness which is of the law, that the man which doth these things shall live by them." The commands and promise of it together, see Luke 10:25-28. The terrible sanction of it, Galations 3:10. For it is written [viz: Deuteronomy 27:26,] "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them." 3. To this may be added the opposition betwixt the law and grace, so frequently inculcated in the New Testament, especially in Paul's epistles. See one text for all, (Gal 3:12), "And the law is not of faith, but the man that doeth them shall live in them." 4. The law from Mount Sinai was a covenant, (Gal 4:24), "These are the two covenants, the one from the Mount Sinai"; and such a covenant as had a semblance of disannulling the covenant of grace, (Gal 3:17), "The covenant that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law which was 430 years after, cannot disannul"; yea, such an one as did, in its own nature, bear a method of obtaining the inheritance, so far different from that of the promise, that it was inconsistent with it; "For if the inheritance be of the law, it is no more of promise," (Gal 3:18), wherefore the covenant of the law from Mount Sinai could not be the covenant of grace, unless one will make this last not only a covenant seeming to destroy itself, but really in-

people of God, though they be not so. In like manner were many of these Israelites called the people of God, though indeed they were not so.

consistent: but it was the covenant of works, which indeed had such a semblance, and in its own nature did bear such a method as before noted; howbeit, as Ainsworth says, "The covenant of the law now given could not disannul the covenant of grace," (Gal 3:17). Annot. on Exodus 19:1 Wherefore I conceive the two covenants to have been both delivered on Mount Sinai to the Israelites. First, The covenant of grace made with Abraham, contained in the preface, repeated and promulgate there unto Israel, to be believed and embraced by faith, that they might be saved; to which were annexed the ten commandments, given by the Mediator Christ, the head of the covenant, as a rule of life to his covenant people. Secondly, the covenant of works made with Adam, contained in the same ten commands, delivered with thunderings and lightnings, the meaning of which was afterwards cleared by Moses, describing the righteousness of the law and sanction thereof, repeated and promulgate to the Israelites there, as the original perfect rule of righteousness, to be obeyed; and yet were they no more bound hereby to seek righteousness by the law than the young man was by our Saviour's saying to him, (Matt 19:17,18), "If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments—Thou shalt do no murder," &c. The latter was a repetition of the former. Thus there is no confounding of the two covenants of grace and works; but the latter was added to the former as subservient unto it, to turn their eyes towards the promise, or covenant of grace: "God gave it to Abraham by promise. Wherefore then serveth the law? it was added, because of transgressions, till the Seed should come," (Gal 3:18,19). So it was unto the promise given to Abraham, that this subservient covenant was added; and that promise we have found in the preface to the ten commands. To it, then was the subservient covenant, according to the apostle, added, put, or set to, as the word properly signifies. So it was no part of the covenant of grace, the which was entire to the fathers, before the time that was set to it; and yet is, to the New Testament church, after that is taken away from it: for, says the apostle, "It was added till the seed should come." Hence it appears that the covenant of grace was, both in itself, and in God's intention, the principal part of the Sinai transaction: nevertheless, the covenant of works was the most conspicuous part of it, and lay most open to the view of the people. According to this account of the Sinai transaction, the ten commands, there delivered, must come under a twofold notion or consideration; namely, as the law of Christ, and as the law of works: and this is not strange, if it is considered, that they were twice written on tables of stone, by the Lord himself,—the first tables the work of God, (Exo 32:16), which were broken in pieces, (verse 19), called the tables of the covenant, (Deut 9:11,15)—the second tables, the work of Moses, the typical Mediator, (Exo 34:1), deposited at first [it would seem] in the tabernacle mentioned, (33:7), afterward, at the rearing of the tabernacle with all its furniture, laid up in the ark within the tabernacle, (25:16); and whether or not, some such thing is intimated, by the double accentuation of the decalogue, let the learned determine; but to the ocular inspection it is evident, that the preface to the ten commands, (Exo 20:2, Deut 5:6), stands in the original, both as a part of a sentence joined to the first commands, and also as an entire sentence, separated from it, and shut up by itself. Upon the whole, one may compare with this the first promulgation of the covenant of grace, by the messenger of the covenant in paradise, (Gen 3:15), and the flaming sword placed there by the same hand, "turning every way to keep the way of the tree of life."

Nom. But, sir, was the same covenant of works made with them that was made with Adam?

Evan. For the general substance of the duty, the law delivered on Mount Sinai, and formerly engraven on man's heart, was one and the same; so that at Mount Sinai the Lord delivered no new thing, only it came more gently to Adam before his fall, but after his fall came thunder with it.

Nom. Ay, sir, but as yourself said, the ten commandments, as they were written in Adam's heart, were but the matter of the covenant of works, and not the covenant itself, till the form was annexed to them, that is to say, till God and man were thereupon agreed: now, we do not find that God and these people did agree upon any such terms at Mount Sinai.

Evan. No;⁷⁷ say you so? do you not remember that the Lord consented and agreed, when he said, ([Lev 18:5](#)), "Ye shall therefore keep my statutes and my judgments, which if a man do, he shall live in them"; and in [Deuteronomy 27:26](#), when he said, "Cursed is he that confirmeth not all the words of this law, to do them?" And do you not remember that the people consented, ([Exo 19:8](#)), and agreed, when they said, "All that the Lord hath spoken we will do?" And doth not the apostle Paul give evidence that these words were the form of the covenant of works, when he says, ([Rom 10:5](#)), "Moses describeth that righteousness which is of the law, that the man that doeth these things shall live in them"; and when he says, ([Gal 3:10](#)), "For it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things written in the book of the law to do them?"⁷⁸ And in [Deuteronomy 4:13](#), Moses, in express

⁷⁷ Here, there is a large addition in the ninth edition of this book, London, 1699. It well deserves a place, and is as follows: "I do not say, God made the covenant of works with them, that they might obtain life and salvation thereby; no, the law was become weak through the flesh, as to any such purpose, ([Rom 8:3](#)). But he repeated, or gave a new edition of the law, and that, as a covenant of works, for their humbling and conviction; and so do his ministers preach the law to unconverted sinners still, that they who 'desire to be under the law may hear what the law says,' ([Gal 4:21](#)). And as to what you say of their not agreeing to this covenant, I pray take notice, that the covenant of works was made with Adam, not for himself only, but as he was a public person representing all his posterity, and so that covenant was made with the whole nature of man in him, as appears by Adam's sin and curse coming upon all, ([Rom 5:12](#), [Gal 3:10](#)). Hence all men are born under that covenant, whether they agree to it or no; though, indeed, there is by nature such a proneness in all to desire to be under that covenant, and to work for life, that if natural men's consent were asked, they would readily [though ignorantly] take upon them to do all that the Lord requireth; for do you not remember," &c.

⁷⁸ That the conditional promise, ([Lev 18:5](#)), [to which agrees [Exodus 19:8](#),] and the dreadful threatening, ([Deut 27:26](#)), were both given to the Israelites, as well as the ten commands, is beyond question; and that according to the apostle, ([Rom 10:5](#), [Gal 3:10](#)), they were the form of the covenant of works, is as evident as the repeating of the words, and expounding them so, can make it. How, then, one can refuse the covenant of works to have been given to the Israelites, I cannot see. Mark the Westminster Confession upon the head of the covenant of works; "The first covenant made with man was a covenant of works, wherein life was promised to Adam, and

terms, calls it a covenant, saying, "And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even the ten commandments, and he wrote them upon tables of stone." Now, this was not the covenant of grace; for Moses afterwards, (*Deut 5:3*), speaking of this covenant, says, "God made not this covenant with your fathers, but with you"; and by "fathers" all the patriarchs unto Adam may be meant, [says Mr. Ainsworth,] who had the promise of the covenant of Christ.⁷⁹ Therefore, if it had been the covenant of grace, he would have said, God did make this covenant with them, rather than that he did not.⁸⁰

Nom. And do any of our godly and modern writers agree with you on this point?

Evan. Yes, indeed. Polonus says, "The covenant of works is that in which God promiseth everlasting life unto a man that in all respects performeth perfect obedience to the law of works, adding thereunto threatenings of eternal death, if he shall not perform perfect obedience thereto. God made this covenant in the beginning with the first man Adam, whilst he was in the first estate of integrity: the same covenant God did repeat and make again by Moses with the people of Israel." And Dr. Preston, on the New Covenant, [p. 317,] says, "The covenant of works runs in these terms, 'Do this and thou shalt live, and I will be thy God.' This was the covenant which was made with Adam, and the covenant that is expressed by Moses in the moral law." And Mr. Pemble [*Vind. Fid.* p. 152] says, "By the covenant of works, we understand what we call in one word 'the law,' namely, that means of bringing man to salvation, which is by perfect obedience unto the will of God. Hereof there are also two several administrations; the first is with Adam before his fall, when immortality and happiness were promised to man, and confirmed by an external symbol of the tree of life, upon condition that he continued obedient to God, as well in all other things, as in that particular commandment of not eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. The second

in him to his posterity, upon condition of perfect and personal obedience." And this account of the being and nature of that covenant is there proved from these very texts among others, *Romans 10:5*, *Galatians 3:10*, chap. 7, art. 2.

79 "But the covenant of the law [adds he] came after, as the apostle observeth, (*Gen 3:17*).—They had a greater benefit than their fathers; for though the law could not give them life, yet it was a schoolmaster unto, i.e., to bring them unto, Christ." (*Gal 3:21-24*). Ainsworth on *Deuteronomy 5:3*.

80 The transaction at Sinai or Horeb [for they are but one mountain] was a mixed dispensation; there was the promise or covenant of grace, and also the law; the one a covenant to be believed, the other a covenant to be done, and thus the apostle states, the difference betwixt these two, (*Gal 3:12*), "And the law is not of faith, but the man that DOETH them shall live in them." As to the former, viz: the covenant to be believed, it was given to their fathers as well as to them. Of the latter, viz: the covenant to be done, Moses speaks expressly, (*Deut 4:12,13*), "The Lord spake unto you out of the midst of the fire, and he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to PERFORM [or DO] even ten commandments." And (*5:3*), he tells the people no less expressly, that "the Lord made not THIS COVENANT with their fathers."

administration of this covenant was the renewing thereof with the Israelites at Mount Sinai; where, after the light of nature began to grow darker, and corruption had in time worn out the characters of religion and virtue first grave in man's heart,⁸¹ God revived the law by a compendious and full declaration of all duties required of man towards God or his neighbour, expressed in the decalogue; according to the tenor of which law God entered into covenant with the Israelites, promising to be their God in bestowing upon them all blessings of life and happiness, upon condition that they would be his people, obeying all things that he had commanded; which condition they accepted of, promising an absolute obedience, ([Exo 19:8](#)), 'all things which the Lord hath said we will do'; and also submitting themselves to all punishment in case they disobeyed, saying, 'Amen' to the curse of the law, 'Cursed be every one that confirmeth not all the words of the law: and all the people shall say, Amen.'" And Mr. Walker, on the Covenant, [p. 128,] says, that "the first part of the covenant, which God made with Israel at Horeb, was nothing else but a renewing of the old covenant of works,⁸² which God made with Adam in paradise." And it is generally laid down by our divines, that we are by Christ delivered from the law as it is a covenant.⁸³

Nom. But, sir, were the children of Israel at this time better able to perform the condition of the covenant of works, than either Adam or any of the old patriarchs were, that God renewed it now with them, rather than before?

Evan. No, indeed; God did not renew it with them now, and not before, because they were better able to keep it, but because they had more need to be made acquainted what the covenant of works is, than those before. For though it is true the ten commandments, which were at first perfectly written in Adam's heart, were much obliterated⁸⁴ by his fall, yet some impressions and relics thereof still remained;⁸⁵ and Adam himself was very sensible of his fall, and the rest of the fathers were helped by tradition;⁸⁶ and, says Cameron, "God did

81 That is, had worn them out, in the same measure and degree as the light of nature was darkened; but neither the one nor the other was ever fully done. (Rom 2:14,15).

82 Wherein I differ from this learned author as to this point, and for what reasons, may be seen earlier [footnote #4].

83 But not as it is a rule of life, which is the other member of that distinction.

84 Both in the heart of Adam himself, and of his descendants in the first ages of the world.

85 Both with him and them.

86 The doctrine of the fall, with whatsoever other doctrine was necessary to salvation, was handed down from Adam, the fathers communicating the same to their children and children's children. There were but eleven patriarchs before the flood; 1. Adam, 2. Seth, 3. Enos, 4. Cainan, 5. Mahalaleel, 6. Jared, 7. Enoch, 8. Methuselah, 9. Lamech, 10. Noah, 11. Shem. Adam having lived 930 years, (Gen 5:5), was known to Lamech, Noah's father, with whom he lived 66 years, and much longer with the rest of the fathers before him; so that Lamech, and those before him, might have the doctrine from Adam's own mouth. Methuselah lived with Adam 243 years, and with Shem 98 years before the deluge. See Genesis 5. And what Shem, who, after the deluge, lived 502 years, (Gen

speak to the patriarchs from heaven, yea, and he spake unto them by his angels";⁸⁷ but now, by this time, sin had almost obliterated and defaced the impressions of the law written in their hearts;⁸⁸ and by their being so long in Egypt, they were so corrupted, that the instructions and ordinances of their fathers were almost worn out of mind; and their fall in Adam was almost forgotten, as the apostle testifies, ([Rom 5:13,14](#)), saying, "Before the time of the law, sin was in the world, but sin is not imputed when there is no law." Nay, in that long course of time betwixt Adam and Moses, men had forgotten what was sin; so, although God had made a promise of blessing to Abraham, and to all his seed, that would plead interest in it,⁸⁹ yet these people at this time were proud and secure, and heedless of their estate; and though "sin was in them, and death reigned over them," yet they being without a law to evidence this sin and death unto their consciences,⁹⁰ they did not impute it unto themselves, they would not own it, nor charge themselves with it; and so, by consequence, found no need of pleading the promise made to Abraham;⁹¹ ([Rom 5:20](#)), therefore, "the law entered," that Adam's offence and their own actual transgression might abound, so that now the Lord saw it needful, that there should be a new edition and publication of the covenant of works, the sooner to compel the elect unbelievers to come to Christ, the promised seed, and that the grace of God in Christ to the elect believers might appear the more exceeding glorious. So that you see the Lord's intention therein was, that they, by looking upon this covenant might be put in mind what was their duty of old, when they were in Adam's loins; yea, and what was their duty still, if they would stand to that covenant, and so go the old and natural way to work; yea, and hereby they were also to see what was their present infirmity in not doing their duty:⁹² that so they seeing an impossibility of obtaining life by that way of works,

11:10,11), had learned from Methuselah, he had occasion to teach Arphaxad, Salah, Eber, Peleg, Reu, Serug, Nahor, Terah, Abraham, Isaac, ([Gen 21:5](#)), and Jacob, to whose 51st year he [viz: Shem] reached. [Genesis 11:10](#), and [21:5](#), and [25:26](#), compared. [Vid. *Bail. Op. Hist. Chron.* p. 2, 3.] Thus one may perceive, how the nature of the law and covenant of works given to Adam, might be far better known to them, than to the Israelites after their long bondage in Egypt.

87 That is, and besides all this, God spake to the patriarchs immediately and by angels. But neither of these do we find during the time of the bondage in Egypt, until the angel of the Lord appeared to Moses in the bush, and ordered him to go and bring the people out of Egypt, ([Exo 3](#)).

88 The remaining impressions of the law on the hearts of the Israelites.

89 By faith; believing, embracing, and appropriating it to themselves, ([Heb 11:13](#), [Jer 3:4](#)).

90 Inasmuch as the remaining impressions of the law on their hearts were so weak, that they were not sufficient for the purpose.

91 By faith proposing it as their only defence, and opposing it to the demands of the law or covenant of works, as their only plea.

92 How far they came short of, and could not reach unto the obedience they owed unto God, according to the perfection of the holy law.

first appointed in paradise, they might be humbled, and more heedfully mind the promise made to their father Abraham, and hasten to lay hold on the Messiah, or promised seed.

Nom. Then, sir, it seems that the Lord did not renew the covenant of works with them, to the intent that they should obtain eternal life by their yielding obedience to it?

Evan. No, indeed; God never made the covenant of works with any man since the fall, either with expectation that he should fulfil it,⁹³ or to give him life by it; for God never appoints any thing to an end, to the which it is utterly unsuitable and improper. Now the law, as it is the covenant of works, is become weak and unprofitable to the purpose of salvation;⁹⁴ and, therefore, God never appointed it to man, since the fall, to that end. And besides, it is manifest that the purpose of God, in the covenant made with Abraham, was to give life and salvation by grace and promise; and, therefore, his purpose in renewing the covenant of works, was not, neither could be, to give life and salvation by working; for then there would have been contradictions in the covenants, and instability in him that made them. Wherefore let no man imagine that God published the covenant of works on Mount Sinai, as though he had been mutable, and so changed his determination in that covenant made with Abraham; neither, yet let any man suppose, that God now in process of time had found out a better way for man's salvation than he knew before: for, as the covenant of grace made with Abraham had been needless, if the covenant of works made with Adam would have given him and his believing seed life; so, after the covenant of grace was once made, it was needless to renew the covenant of works, to the end that righteousness of life should be had by the observation of it. The which will yet more evidently appear, if we consider, that the apostle, speaking of the covenant of works as it was given on Mount Sinai, says, "It was added because of transgressions," ([Gal 3:19](#)). It was not set up as a solid rule of righteousness, as it was given to Adam in paradise, but was added or put to;⁹⁵ it was not set up as a thing in gross by itself.

Nom. Then, sir, it should seem that the covenant of works was added to the covenant of grace, to make it more complete.

93 Nor before the fall neither, properly speaking; but the expression is agreeable to Scripture style, ([Isa 5:4](#)), "Wherefore when I looked it should bring forth grapes, brought it forth wild grapes?"

94 ([Rom 8:3](#)), "For what the law could not DO, in that it was weak through the flesh; God sending his own Son," &c.

95 It was not set up by itself as an entire rule of righteousness, to which alone they were to look who desired righteousness and salvation, as it was in the case of upright Adam, "For no man, since the fall, can attain to righteousness and life by the moral law," *Lar. Cat. quest. 94*. But it was added to the covenant of grace, that by looking at it men might see what kind of righteousness it is by which they can be justified in the sight of God; and that by means thereof, finding themselves destitute of that righteousness, they might be moved to embrace the covenant of grace, in which that righteousness is held forth to be received by faith.

Evan. O no! you are not so to understand the apostle, as though it were added by way of ingrediency as a part of the covenant of grace, as if that covenant had been incomplete without the covenant of works; for then the same covenant should have consisted of contradictory materials, and so it should have overthrown itself; for, says the apostle, "If it be by grace, then it is no more of works; otherwise grace is no more grace: but if it be of works, then it is no more of grace; otherwise work is no more work," ([Rom 11:6](#)). But it was added by way of subserviency and attendance, the better to advance and make effectual the covenant of grace; so that although the same covenant that was made with Adam was renewed on Mount Sinai, yet I say still, it was not for the same purpose. For this was it that God aimed at, in making the covenant of works with man in innocency, to have that which was his due from man:⁹⁶ but God made it with the Israelites for no other end, than that man, being thereby convinced of his weakness, might flee to Christ. So that it was renewed only to help forward and introduce another and a better covenant; and so to be a manuduction unto Christ, viz: to discover sin, to waken the conscience, and to convince them of their own impotency, and so drive them out of themselves to Christ. Know it then, I beseech you, that all this while there was no other way of life given, either in whole, or in part, than the covenant of grace. All this while God did but pursue the design of his own grace; and, therefore, was there no inconsistency either in God's will or acts; only such was his mercy, that he subordinated the covenant of works, and made it subservient to the covenant of grace, and so to tend to evangelical purposes.

Nom. But yet, sir, methinks it is somewhat strange that the Lord should put them upon doing the law, and also promise them life for doing, and yet never intend it.

Evan. Though he did so, yet did he neither require of them that which was unjust, nor yet dissemble with them in the promise; for the Lord may justly require perfect obedience at all men's hands, by virtue of that covenant which was made with them in Adam; and if any man could yield perfect obedience to the law, both in doing and suffering, he should have eternal life; for we may not deny [says Calvin] but that the reward of eternal salvation belongeth to the upright obedience of the law.⁹⁷ But God knew well enough that the Israelites were never able to yield such an obedience: and yet he saw it meet to propound eternal life to them upon these terms; that so he might speak to them in their own humour, as indeed it was meet: for they swelled with mad assurance in themselves, saying, "All that the Lord commandeth we will do," and be obedient, ([Exo 19:8](#)). Well, said the Lord, if you will needs be doing, why here is a law to be kept; and if you can fully observe the righteousness of it,

96 This was the end of the work, namely, of making the covenant of works with Adam, but not of the repeating of it at Sinai; it was also the end or design of the worker, namely of God, who made that covenant with Adam, to have his due from man, and he got it from the Man Christ Jesus.

97 That is, the perfect obedience of the law; as it is said, ([Eccl 7:29](#)), "God made man upright."

you shall be saved: sending them of purpose to the law, to awaken and convince them, to sentence and humble them, and to make them see their own folly in seeking for life that way; in short, to make them see the terms under which they stood, that so they might be brought out of themselves, and expect nothing from the law, in relation to life, but all from Christ. For how should a man see his need of life by Christ, if he do not first see that he is fallen from the way of life? and how should he understand how far he had strayed from the way of life, unless he do first find what is that way of life? Therefore it was needful that the Lord should deal with them after such a manner to drive them out of themselves, and from all confidence in the works of the law; that so, by faith in Christ, they might obtain righteousness and life. And just so did our Saviour also deal with that young expounder of the law, ([Matt 19:16](#)), who it seems, was sick of the same disease: "Good Master," says he, "what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?" He doth not, says Calvin, simply ask, which way or by what means he should come to eternal life, but what good he should do to get it; whereby it appears, that he was a proud justiciary, one that swelled in fleshly opinion that he could keep the law, and be saved by it; therefore he is worthily sent to the law to work himself weary, and to see need to come to Christ for rest. And thus you see that the Lord, to the former promises made to the fathers, added a fiery law; which he gave from Mount Sinai, in thundering and lightning, and with a terrible voice, to the stubborn and stiff-necked Israel; whereby to break and tame them, and to make them sigh and long for the promised Redeemer.

Chapter II, Section II, 4

The promise and covenant with Abraham, renewed with the Israelites.

Ant. And, sir, did the law produce this effect in them?

Evan. Yea, indeed, it did; as will appear, if you consider, that although, before the publishing of this covenant, they were exceeding proud and confident of their own strength to do all that the Lord would have them do; yet when the Lord came to deal with them as men under the covenant of works, in showing himself a terrible judge sitting on the throne of justice, like a mountain burning with fire, summoning them to come before him by the sound of a trumpet, [yet not to touch the mountain without a mediator,] ([Heb 12:19,20](#)), they were not able to endure the voice of words, nor yet to abide that which was commanded, insomuch, as Moses himself did fear and quake; and they did all of them so fear, and shake, and shiver, that their peacock feathers were now pulled down. This terrible show wherein God gave his law on Mount Sinai, says Luther, did represent the use of the law: there was in the people of Israel that came out of Egypt a singular holiness; they gloried and said, "We are the people of God; we will do all that the Lord commandeth." Moreover, Moses sanctified them, and bade them wash their garments, and purify themselves, and prepare themselves

against the third day: there was not one of them but was full of holiness. The third day, Moses bringeth the people out of their tents to the mountain in the sight of the Lord, that they might hear his voice. What followed then? why, when they beheld the horrible sight of the mountain smoking and burning, the black clouds and the lightnings flashing up and down in this horrible darkness, and heard the sound of the trumpet blowing long, and waxing louder and louder, they were afraid, and standing afar off, they said not to Moses as before, "All that the Lord commandeth we will do; but talk thou with us, and we will hear, but let not God talk with us, lest we die." So that now they saw they were sinners, and had offended God; and, therefore, stood in need of a mediator to negotiate peace, and entreat for reconciliation between God and them; and the Lord highly approved of their words, as you may see, ([Deut 5:28](#)), where Moses, repeating what they had said, adds further: "The Lord heard the voice of your word, when ye spake to me, and the Lord said unto me, I have heard the voice of the words of this people, which they have spoken unto thee, they have well said, all that they have spoken," viz: in desiring a mediator. Wherefore, I pray you, take notice, that they were not commended for saying, "All that the Lord commandeth we will do." "No," says a godly writer, "they were not praised for any other thing, than for desiring a mediator";⁹⁸ whereupon the Lord promised Christ unto them, even as Moses testifies, saying, "The Lord thy God shall raise up unto thee a prophet like unto me, from among you, even of your brethren; unto him shall you hearken, according to all that thou desiredst of the Lord thy God in Horeb, in the day of the assembly, when thou saidst, Let me hear the voice of the Lord my God no more, nor see this great fire any more, that I die not: and the Lord said unto me, They have well spoken, I will raise them up a prophet from among their brethren like unto thee, and I will put my words in his mouth, and he shall speak unto them all that I command him"; and to assure us that Christ was the prophet here spoken of, he himself says unto the Jews, ([John 5:46](#)), "If you have believed Moses, you would have believed me; for he wrote of me"; and that this was it which he wrote of him, the apostle Peter wit-

98 I see no warrant for restraining the sense of this text to their desiring a mediator. The universal term, "All that they have spoken," includes also their engaging to receive the law at the mouth of the mediator, which is joined with their desire (verse 27): "Go thou near, and hear all that the Lord our God shall say; and speak thou unto us all that the Lord our God shall speak unto thee, and we will hear and do," (verse 28). And the Lord said, "They have well said all that they have spoken." But there is a palpable difference between what they spoke, ([Exo 19:8](#)), and what they spoke here, relative to their own practice. The former runs thus: "All that the Lord hath spoken we will do"; the latter thus: "And we will hear and do"; the original text bears no more. The one, relates to obedience only, the other to faith also,— "We will HEAR," i.e., believe, ([Isa 55:3](#), [John 9:27](#)). Hence the object of faith, that which is to be believed, is called a report, properly a hearing, ([Isa 53:1](#), [Rom 10:16](#)). The former speaks much blind self-confidence; the latter a sense of duty and a willing mind, but with all a sense of duty and fear of mismanagement.

nesses, ([Acts 3:22](#)); and so doth the martyr Stephen, ([Acts 7:37](#)). Thus you see, when the Lord had, by means of the covenant of works made with Adam, humbled them, and made them sigh for Christ the promised Seed, he renewed the promise with them, yea, and the covenant of grace made with Abraham.⁹⁹

Ant. I pray, sir, how doth it appear that the Lord renewed that covenant with them?

Evan. It plainly appears in this, that the Lord gave them by Moses the Levitical laws, and ordained the tabernacle, the ark, and the mercy-seat, which were all types of Christ. Moreover, ([Lev 1:1](#)), "The Lord called unto Moses and spake unto him out of the tabernacle,"¹⁰⁰ and commanded him to write the Levitical laws, and the tabernacle ordinances; telling him withal, ([Exo 34:27](#)), "that after the tenor of these words, he had made a covenant with him, and with Israel."¹⁰¹ So Moses wrote those laws, ([Exo 24:4](#)), not in tables of stone, but in an authentical book,¹⁰² says Ainsworth, called the Book of the Covenant, which book

99 Making a promise of Christ to them, not only as "the seed of the woman," but as "the seed of Abraham," and yet more particularly, as "the seed of Israel: the Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a prophet, from the midst of THEE, of THY BRETHREN," ([Deut 18:15](#)). And here it is to be observed, that this renewing of the promise and covenant of grace with them was immediately upon the back of the giving of the law on Mount Sinai, for at that time was their speech which the Lord commended as well spoken: this appears from Exodus 20:18,19, compared with Deuteronomy 5:23-28, and upon that speech of theirs was that renewal made, which is clear from Deuteronomy 18:17,18.

100 From the mercy-seat, which was within the tabernacle. The tabernacle was an eminent type of Christ, ([Heb 9:11](#)), as the temple also was, ([John 2:19,21](#)). So this represented God's speaking in a Mediator, in Jesus Christ. Here was a change agreeable to the people's desire on Mount Sinai. God speaks, not from a burning mountain as before, but out of the tabernacle: nor with terrible thunderings as at Sinai, but in a still small voice, intimated to us, and intimated by the extraordinary smallness of one letter in the original word rendered called, as the Hebrew doctors do account for that irregularity of writing in that word.

101 Moses exceedingly feared and quaked, ([Heb 22:21](#)), while he stood amongst the rest of the Israelites at Mount Sinai during the giving of the law, ([Exo 19:25, 20:21](#)). But here he is represented as Israel's federal head in this covenant, he being the typical mediator; which plainly intimated the covenant of grace to have been made with Christ, and with him in all the elect: "I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel," says the text.—See the first note on the preface, in the Larger Catechism, quest. 31.

102 Moses was twice on the Mount with God forty days. In the time of the second forty days he received the order to write, mentioned [Exodus 34:27](#), as appears by comparing verse 27 with 28. This comprehended his writings of the Levitical laws, but not of the decalogue or ten commandments; for these last, God himself wrote on tables of stone, verse 28 compared with verse 1. This peremptory divine order, Moses, no doubt, did obey; understanding it of writing in a book, since he was not commanded to write another way. So, in a like case, before he went up into the Mount for the first forty days, he wrote Levitical laws in a book called the Book of the Covenant, ([Exo 24:4,7](#)), "And Moses wrote all the words of the Lord. And he took the book of the covenant and read." Compare verse 18. This writing also comprehended Levitical laws, but not the ten commandments. For

Moses read in the audience of the people, (Exo 24:7), and the people consented unto it. Then Moses having before sent young men of the children of Israel, who were first-born,¹⁰³ and therefore priests until the time of the Levites, to offer sacrifices of burnt-offerings and peace-offerings unto the Lord, "took the blood and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant which the Lord hath made with you concerning these things"; whereby they were taught, that by virtue of blood, this covenant betwixt God and them was confirmed, and that Christ, by his blood shed, should satisfy for their sins; for, indeed, the covenant of grace was, before the coming of Christ, sealed by his blood in types and figures.¹⁰⁴

Chapter II, Section II, 5

The covenant of grace under the Mosaic dispensation.

Ant. But, sir, was this every way the same covenant that was made with Abraham?

Evan. Surely I do believe, that reverend Bullinger spake very truly, when he said that God gave unto these people no other religion, in nature, substance, and matter itself, differing from the laws of their fathers; though, for some respects, he added thereunto many ceremonies and certain ordinances; the which he did to keep their minds in expectation of the coming of Christ whom he had promised unto them; and to confirm them in looking for him, lest they should wax faint. And as the Lord did thus by the ceremonies, as it were, lead them by the hand to Christ; so did he make them a promise of the land of Canaan, and outward prosperity in it, as a type of heaven, and eternal happiness; so that the Lord dealt with them as with children in their infancy and under age, leading them on by the help of earthly things, to heavenly and spiritual, because they were but young and tender,¹⁰⁵ and had not that measure and abundance of the Spirit which he had bestowed upon his people now under the gospel.

Ant. And, sir, do you think that these Israelites at this time did see Christ and salvation by him in these types and shadows?

all the words of the Lord which Moses wrote, were all the words of the Lord which Moses told the people. And what these were, appears from his commission received for that effect: (20:21,22), "And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was; and the Lord said unto Moses, Thus thou shalt say unto the children of Israel," &c. So "all the words" were these which follow to the end of the 23rd chapter.

103 In the original text, (verse 5) they are called emphatically the young men [or ministers, or servants, (1 Sam 2:13,15, Esth 2:2)] of the children of Israel, to signify that they were first-born. And so Onkelos reads it, "the first-born of the children of Israel."

104 The blood of the sacrifice representing the precious blood of Christ.

105 The church was in her minority under the law, (Gal 4:1-3).

Evan. Yes, there is no doubt but Moses and the rest of the believers among the Jews did see Christ in them, "For," says Tindal, "though all the sacrifices and ceremonies had a star-light of Christ, yet some of them had the light of the broad day, a little before the sun-rising"; and did express him, with the circumstances and virtue of his death, as plainly, as if his passion had been acted upon a scaffold: "Insomuch," says he, "that I am fully persuaded, and cannot but believe, that God had showed Moses the secrets of Christ, and the very manner of his death aforehand"; and, therefore, no doubt but that they offered their sacrifices by faith in the Messiah, as the apostle testifies of Abel, (Heb 11:4). I say, there is no question but every spiritual believing Jew, when he brought his sacrifice to be offered, and, according to the Lord's command, laid his hands upon it whilst it was yet alive, (Lev 1:4), did, from his heart, acknowledge that he himself had deserved to die; but by the mercy of God he was saved,¹⁰⁶ and his desert laid upon the beast;¹⁰⁷ and as that beast was to die, and be offered in sacrifice for him, so did he believe that the Messiah should come and die for him, upon whom he put his hands, that is, laid all his iniquities by the hand of faith.¹⁰⁸ So that, as Beza on Job 1 says, "The sacrifices were to them holy mysteries, in which, as in certain glasses, they did both see themselves to their own condemnation before God,¹⁰⁹ and also beheld the mercy of God in the promised Messiah, in time to be exhibited": "And therefore," says Calvin, Institut. p. 239, "the sacrifices and satisfactory offerings were called Ashemoth, which word properly signifies sin itself, to show that Jesus Christ was to come and perform a perfect expiation, by giving his own soul to be an asham, that is, a satisfactory oblation."

Wherefore, you may assure yourself, that as Christ was always set before the fathers in the Old Testament, to whom they might direct their faith, and as God never put them in hope of any grace or mercy, nor ever showed himself good unto them without Christ:¹¹⁰ even so the godly in the Old Testament knew Christ by whom they did enjoy these promises of God, and were joined to him.¹¹¹ And, indeed, the promise of salvation never stood firm

106 From the death he had deserved by his sin.

107 Typically.

108 "The mystical signification of the sacrifices, and especially this rite, some think the apostle means by the doctrine of 'laying on of hands,' (Heb 6:2), which typified evangelical faith." Henry on Leviticus 1:4. It is evident that the offerer, by laying his hand on the head of the sacrifice, did legally unite with it; laid his sin, or transferred his guilt upon it, in a typical or ceremonial way., (Lev 16:21); the substance and truth of which ceremonial action plainly appears to be faith, or believing on Jesus Christ, which is the soul's assenting, for its own part, to, and acquiescing in the glorious device of, "the Lord's laying on him the iniquities of us all," (Isa 53:6).

109 That is, they saw themselves, as in themselves condemned by the holy law.

110 That is, as an absolute God out of Christ, but always as a God in Christ.

111 To Christ, by faith.

till it came to Christ.¹¹² And there was their comfort in all their troubles and distresses, according as it is said of Moses, ([Heb 11:26,27](#)), "He endured as seeing him who is invisible,¹¹³ esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures of Egypt, for he had respect to the recompense of reward."

And so, as Ignatius says, the prophets were Christ's servants, who, foreseeing him in spirit, both waited for him as their master, and looked for him as their Lord and Saviour, saying, "He shall come and save us."

And so says Calvin, *Institut.* p. 207, "So oft as the prophets speak of the blessedness of that faithful, the perfect image that they have painted thereof was such as might ravish men's minds out of the earth, and of necessity raise them up to the consideration of the felicity of the life to come"; so that we may assuredly conclude, with Luther, that all the fathers, prophets, and holy kings, were righteous, and saved by faith in Christ to come; and so, indeed, as Calvin says, *Institut.* p. 198, "were partakers of all one salvation with us."

Ant. But, sir, the Scriptures seem to hold forth as though they were saved one way, and we another way; for you know the prophet Jeremiah makes mention of a twofold covenant; therefore it is somewhat strange to me, that they should be partakers of one way of salvation with us.

Evan. Indeed, it is true, the Lord did bequeath unto the fathers, righteousness, life, and eternal salvation, in and through Christ the Mediator, being not yet come in the flesh, but promised: and unto us in the New Testament he gives and bequeaths them to us in and through Christ, being already come, and having actually purchased them for us; and the covenant of grace was, before the coming of Christ, sealed by his blood in types and figures; and at his death in his flesh,¹¹⁴ it was sealed and ratified by his very blood, actually, and in very deed shed for our sins. And the old covenant, in respect of the outward form and manner of sealing, was temporary and changeable; and therefore the types ceased, and only the substance remains firm; but the seals of the new are unchangeable, being commemorative, and shall show the Lord's death until his coming again. And their covenant did first and chiefly promise earthly blessings,¹¹⁵ and in and under these it did signify and promise all spiritual blessings and salvation; but our covenant promises, Christ and his blessings in the first place, and after them earthly blessings.

112 It stood, at first, on man's own obedience: which ground quickly failed: then, it came to Christ, where it stood firm, ([Gen 3:15](#)). It [namely, "the seed of the woman"] "shall bruise thy head," viz: the serpent's head.

113 "Faith presenting to his view at all times the great angel of the covenant, God the Son, the Redeemer of him and Israel." *Suppl. Poole's Annot. on the Text.*

114 "Christ—being put to death in the flesh," ([1 Peter 3:18](#)).

115 Chiefly; in so far as, in that dispensation of the covenant of grace, the promises of earthly blessings were chiefly insisted on; and the promises of spiritual blessings and salvation more sparingly.

These, and some other circumstantial differences in regard to administration, there were betwixt their way of salvation, or covenant of grace, and ours; which moved the author to the Hebrews, ([Heb 8:8](#)), to call theirs old, and ours new; but, in regard to substance, they were all one and the very same;¹¹⁶ for in all covenants this is a certain rule, "If the subject matter, the fruit and the conditions, be the same, then is the covenant the same": but in these covenants Jesus Christ is the subject matter of both, salvation the fruit of both, and faith the condition of both:¹¹⁷ therefore, I say, though they be called two, yet they are but one; the which is confirmed by two faithful witnesses: the one is the apostle Peter, who says, ([Acts 15:11](#)), "We believe, that through the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, we shall be saved even as they"; meaning the fathers in the Old Testament, as is evident in the verse next before. The other is the apostle Paul, who says, ([Gal 3:6,7](#)), "Abraham believed God, and it was accounted to him for righteousness, know ye, therefore, that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham": by which testimony, says Luther, on the Galatians, p. 116, "we may see that the faith of our fathers in the Old Testament, and ours in the New, is all one in substance."

Ant. But could they that lived so long before Christ, apprehend his righteousness by faith for their justification and salvation?

Evan. Yea, indeed; for as Mr. Forbes, on Justification, p. 90, truly says, it is as easy for faith to apprehend righteousness to come, as it is to apprehend righteousness that is past: wherefore, as Christ's birth, obedience, and death, were in the Old Testament as effectual to save sinners, as they are now; so all the faithful forefathers, from the beginning, did partake of the same grace with us, by believing in the same Jesus Christ, and so were justified by his righteousness, and saved eternally by faith in him. It was by virtue of the death of Christ, that Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and Elias was taken up into heaven

116 "There are not, therefore, two covenants of grace, differing in substance; but one and the same under various dispensations." Westm. Confess. chap. 7, art. 6. And their covenant of grace, confirmed by the sprinkling of blood, ([Exo 24](#), [Heb 9:19,20](#)) [the which covenant they brake, by their unbelief frustrating the manner in which it was administered to them,] was given to them when the Lord had led them out of Egypt, and at Sinai too, as well as the ten commandments delivered to them as the covenant of works. This is evident from [Exodus 20:1-17](#), compared with [Deuteronomy 5:2-22](#), and [Exodus 20:20,21](#), compared with [chapter 24:3-8](#).

117 Not in a strict and proper sense, as that, upon the performance of which the right and title to the benefits of the covenant are founded and pleaded; as perfect obedience was the condition of the covenant of works. Christ's fulfilling of the law, by his obedience and death, is the only condition of the covenant of grace, in that sense. But in a large and improper sense, as that whereby one accepts and embraces the covenant and the proper condition thereof, and is savingly interested in Jesus Christ, the head of the covenant. "The grace of God is manifested in the second covenant, in that he freely provideth and offereth to sinners a Mediator, and life and salvation by him; and requiring faith as the condition to interest them in him," &c. Lar. Cat. quest. 32.

by virtue of Christ's resurrection and ascension. So that from the world's beginning to the end thereof, the salvation of sinners is only by Jesus Christ; as it is written, "Jesus Christ, the same yesterday, and today, and for ever," ([Heb 13:8](#)).

Ant. Why, then, sir, it seems that those who were saved amongst the Jews, were not saved by the works of the law?

Evan. No, indeed; they were neither justified nor saved, either by the works of the moral law, or the ceremonial law. For, as you heard before, the moral law being delivered unto them with great terror, and under most dreadful penalties, they did find in themselves an impossibility of keeping it; and so were driven to seek help of a Mediator, even Jesus Christ, of whom Moses was to them a typical mediator:¹¹⁸ so that the moral law did drive them to the ceremonial law, which was their gospel, and their Christ in a figure; for that the ceremonies did prefigure Christ, direct unto him, and require faith in him, is a thing acknowledged and confessed by all men.

Nom. But, sir, I suppose, though believers among the Jews were not justified and saved by the works of the law, yet was it a rule of their obedience?

Evan. It is very true, indeed: the law of the ten commandments was a rule for their obedience;¹¹⁹ yet not as it came from Mount Sinai;¹²⁰ but rather as it came from Mount Zion; not as it was the law or covenant of works, but as it was the law of Christ. The which will appear, if you consider, that after the Lord had renewed with them the covenant of grace, as you heard before, ([Exodus 24](#) at the beginning) the Lord said unto Moses, (verse 12), "Come up to me into the mount, and be there, and I will give thee tables of stone, and a law that thou mayest teach them"; and after the Lord had thus written them the second time with his own finger, he delivered them to Moses, commanding him to provide an ark to put them into; which was not only for the safe keeping of them, ([Deut 9:10, 10:5](#)); but also to cover the form of the covenant of works that was formerly upon them, that believers might not perceive it; for the ark was a notable type of Christ; and therefore the putting of them therein did show that they were perfectly fulfilled in him, Christ being "the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth," ([Rom 10:4](#)). The which was yet more clearly manifest, in that the book of the law was placed between the cherubim, and upon the mercy-seat, to assure believers that the law now came to them from the mercy-seat;¹²¹

118 That is a type, he being to them a typical Mediator.

119 The obedience of the believing Jews.

120 That is, in the sense of our author, not as the covenant of works, but of the twofold notion or consideration under which the ten commandments were delivered from Mount Sinai.

121 From an atoned God in Christ, binding them to obedience with the strongest ties, arising from their creation and redemption jointly; but not with the bond of the curse, binding them over to eternal death in case of transgression, as the law or covenant of works does with them who are under it, ([Gal 3:10](#)). The mercy-seat was the cover of the ark, and both the one and the other type of Christ. Within the ark, under the cover of it, were the

for there the Lord promised to meet Moses, and to commune with him of all things which he would give him in commandment to them, ([Exo 25:22](#)).

Ant. But, sir, was the form quite taken away, so as the ten commandments were no more the covenant of works?

Evan. Oh no! you are not so to understand it. For the form of the covenant of works,¹²² as well as the matter, [on God's part,]¹²³ came immediately from God himself, and so consequently it is eternal, like himself; whence it is that our Saviour says, ([Matt 5:18](#)), "Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no ways pass from the law, till all be fulfilled." So that either man himself, or some other for him, must perform or fulfill the condition of the law, as it is the covenant of works, or else he remains still under it in a damnable condition: but now Christ hath fulfilled it for all believers; and therefore, I said, the form of the covenant of works was covered or taken away, as touching the believing Jews; but yet it was neither taken away in itself, nor yet as touching the unbelieving Jews.

Nom. Was the law then still of use to them, as it was the covenant of works?

Evan. Yea, indeed.

Ant. I pray you, sir, show of what use it was to them.

Evan. I remember Luther [on the Galatians, p. 171] says, "There be two sorts of unrighteous persons or unbelievers: the one to be justified, and the other not to be justified: even so was there among the Jews." Now, to them that were to be justified, as you have heard, the law was still of use to bring them to Christ: as the apostle says, ([Gal 3:24](#)), "The law was our schoolmaster until Christ,¹²⁴ that we might be made righteous by faith"; that is to say, the moral law¹²⁵ did teach and show them what they should do, and so what they did not; and this made them go to the ceremonial law;¹²⁶ and by that they were taught that Christ

tables of the law laid up. Thus was the throne of grace, which could not have stood on mere mercy, firmly established in Jesus Christ; according to Psalm 89:14, "Justice and judgment are the habitation [marg. 'establishment'] of thy throne." The word properly signifies a base, supporter, stay, or foundation, on which a thing stands firm, ([Ezra 2:68](#), [3:3](#), [Psa 104:5](#)). The sense is, O God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, ([Psa 89:19](#)), justice satisfied, and judgment fully executed in the person of the Mediator, are the foundation and base which thy throne of grace stands upon.

122 Namely, the promissory and penal sanction of eternal life and death, in which God's truth was engaged.

123 Man's part was his consenting to the terms set before him by his Creator.

124 That is, to bring us unto Christ, as we read it with the supplement.

125 As the covenant of works; so the author uses that term here, as it is used, *Larg. Cat. quest. 93*, above cited.

126 Broken under the sense of guilt, the curse of the law, and their utter inability to help themselves by doing or suffering.

had done it for them;¹²⁷ the which they believing,¹²⁸ were made righteous by faith in him. And to the second sort it was of use, to show them what was good, and what was evil; and to be as a bridle to them, to restrain them from evil, and as a motive to move them to good, for fear of punishment,¹²⁹ or hope of reward in this life; which, though it was but a forced and constrained obedience, yet was it necessary for the public commonwealth, the quiet thereof being thereby the better maintained. and though thereby they could neither escape death, nor yet obtain eternal life, for want of perfect obedience, yet the more obedience they yielded thereunto, the more they were freed from temporal calamities, and possessed with temporal blessings, according as the Lord promised and threatened, ([Deut 28](#)).

Ant. But, sir, in that place the Lord seemeth to speak to his own people, and yet to speak according to the tenor of the covenant of works, which has made me think that believers in the Old Testament were partly under the covenant of works.

Evan. Do you not remember how I told you before, that the Lord did manifest so much love to the body of that nation, that the whole posterity of Abraham¹³⁰ were brought under a state-covenant or national church; so that for the believers' sakes he enfolded unbelievers in the compact; whereupon the Lord was pleased to call them all by the name of his people, as well unbelievers as believers, and to be called their God? And though the Lord did there speak according to the tenor of the covenant of works, yet I see no reason why he might not direct and intend his speech to believers also, and yet they remain only under the covenant of grace.

Ant. Why, sir, you said that the Lord did speak to them out of the tabernacle, and from the mercy-seat; and that, doubtless, was according to the tenor of the covenant of grace, and not according to the tenor of the covenant of works.

Evan. I pray you take notice, that after the Lord had pronounced all those blessings and curses, ([Deut 28](#) in the beginning of the 29th chapter), it is said, "These are the words of the covenant, which the Lord commanded Moses to make with the children of Israel in the land of Moab, beside the covenant which he made with them in Horeb." Whereby it doth appear to me, that this was not the covenant of works which was delivered to them on Mount

127 Christ's satisfying the law for sinners by his obedience and death, being the great lesson taught by the ceremonial law, which was the gospel written in plain characters, to those whose eyes were opened.

128 Appropriating and applying to themselves by faith Christ's satisfaction held forth and exhibited to them in these divine ordinances.

129 Both in time and eternity.

130 Which were of that nation, according to Genesis 21:12, "In Isaac shall thy seed be called." And chapter 28:13, "I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac; the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed."

Sinai;¹³¹ for the form of that covenant was eternal blessings and curses, 28 but the form of this covenant was temporal blessings and curses. 29 So that this rather seems to be the pedagogy of the law, than the covenant of works; for at that time these people seemed to be carried by temporal promises into the way of obedience, and deterred by temporal threatenings from the ways of disobedience, God dealing with them as in their infancy and under age, and so leads them on, and allures them, and fears them, by such respects as these, because they had but a small measure of the Spirit.

Nom. But, sir, was not the matter of that covenant and this all one?

Evan. Yea, indeed; the ten commandments were the matter of both covenants, only they differed in the forms.

Ant. Then, sir, it seems that the promises and threatenings contained in the Old Testament were but temporary and terrestrial, only concerning the good and evil things of this life.

Evan. This we are to know, that like as the Lord, by his prophets, gave the people in the Old Testament many exhortations to be obedient to his commandments, and many dehortations from disobedience thereunto; even so did he back them with many promises and threatenings, concerning things temporal, as these and the like Scriptures do witness: ([Isa 1:10](#)), "Hear the word of the Lord, ye rulers of Sodom; give ear unto the law of our God, ye people of Gomorrah": (verse 19,20), "If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good things of the land; but if ye refuse and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword, for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it." And ([Jer 7:3,9,20](#)), "Amend your ways and your doings, and I will cause you to dwell in this place. Will ye steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely by my name? Therefore, thus saith the Lord God, behold mine anger and my fury shall be poured out upon this place." And surely there be two reasons why the Lord did so: first, because, as all men are born under the covenant of works, they are naturally prone to conceive that the favour of God, and all good things, do depend and follow upon their obedience to the law, 30 and that the wrath of God, and all evil things, do depend upon and follow their disobedience to it, 31 and that man's chief happiness is to be had and found in terrestrial paradise, even in the good things of this life. So the people of the Old Testament being nearest to Adam's covenant and paradise, were most prone to such conceits. And secondly, because the covenant of grace and celestial paradise were but little mentioned in the Old Testament, they, for the most part, 32 had but a glimmering knowledge of them, and so could not yield obedience freely as sons. 33 Therefore the Lord saw it meet to move

131 The author does not make the covenant at Horeb distinct from that at Sinai; for he takes Horeb and Sinai for one and the same mountain, according to the holy Scriptures, (Exodus 19:20, compared with Deuteronomy 5:2), and therefore, because the text speaks of this covenant in the land of Moab as another

them to yield obedience to his laws by their own motives, 34 and as servants or children under age. 35

Ant. And were both believers and unbelievers, that is, such as were under the covenant of grace, and such as were under the covenant of works, equally and alike subject, as well to have the calamities of this life inflicted upon them for their disobedience, as the blessings of this life conferred upon them for their obedience?

Evan. Surely the words of the preacher do take place here, when he says, ([Eccl 9:2](#)), "All things come alike to all; there is one event to the righteous and to the wicked." Were not Moses and Aaron, for their disobedience, hindered from entering into the land of Canaan, as well as others? ([Num 20:12](#)). And was not Josiah, of his disobedience to God's command, slain in the valley of Megiddo? ([2 Chron 35:21,22](#)). Therefore assure yourself, that when believers in the Old Testament did transgress God's commandments, God's temporal wrath 36 went out against them, and was manifest in temporal calamities that befell them as well as others, ([Num 16:46](#)). Only here was the difference, the believers' temporal calamities had no eternal calamities included in them, nor following of them; 37 and the unbelievers' temporal blessings had no eternal blessings included in them, and their temporal calamities had eternal calamities included in them, and following of them. 38

Ant. Then, sir, it seems that all obedience that any of the Jews did yield to God's commandments, was for fear of temporal punishment, and in hope of temporal reward?

Evan. Surely the Scriptures seem to hold forth, that there were three several sorts of people amongst the Jews, who endeavoured to keep the law of God, and they did all of them differ in their ends.

The first of them were true believers, who, according to the measures of their faith, did believe the resurrection of their bodies after death, and eternal life in glory, and that it was to be obtained, not by the works of the law, but by faith in the Messiah or promised seed; and answerably as they believed this, answerably they yielded obedience to the law freely, without fear of punishment or hope of reward: but, alas! the spirit of faith was very weak in most of them, and the spirit of bondage very strong, and, therefore, they stood in need to be induced and constrained to obedience, by fear of punishment and hope of reward. 39

The second sort of them were the Sadducees and their sect, and these did not believe that there was any resurrection, ([Matt 22:23](#)), nor any life but the life of this world; and yet they endeavoured to keep the law, that God might bless them here, and that it might go well with them in this present life.

The third sort, and indeed the greatest number of them in the future ages after Moses, were the Scribes and Pharisees, and their sects; and they held and maintained, that there was a resurrection to be looked for, and an eternal life after death, and, therefore, they endeavoured to keep the law, not only to obtain temporal happiness, but eternal also. For though it had pleased the Lord to make known unto his people, by the ministry of Moses,

that the law was given, not to retain men in the confidence of their own works, but to drive them out of themselves, and to lead them to Christ the promised seed; yet after that time, the priests and the Levites, who were the expounders of the law, and to whom the Scribes and Pharisees succeeded, did so conceive and teach of God's intention in giving the law, as though it had been, that they, by their obedience to it, should obtain righteousness and eternal life; and this opinion was so confidently maintained, and so generally embraced amongst them, that in their book *Mechilta*, they say and affirm, that there is no other covenant than the law; and so, in very deed, they conceived that there was no other way to eternal life than the covenant of works.

Ant. Surely, then, it seems they did not understand and consider that the law, as it is the covenant of works, does not only bind the outward man, but also the inward man, even the soul and spirit; and requires all holy thoughts, motions, and dispositions of the heart and soul?

Evan. O, no; they neither taught it nor understood it so spiritually; neither could they be persuaded that the law requires so much at man's hands. For they first laid this down for a certain truth, that God gave the law for man to be justified and saved by his obedience to it; and that, therefore, there must needs be a power in man to do all that it requires, or else God would never have required it; and, therefore, whereas they should have first considered what a straight rule the law of God is, and then have brought man's heart, and have laid it to it, they, contrariwise, first considered what a crooked rule man's heart is, and then sought to make the law like it: and so indeed they expounded the law literally, teaching and holding, that the righteousness which the law required was but an external righteousness, consisting in the outward observation of the law, as you may see by the testimony of our Saviour, ([Matt 5](#)); so that, according to their exposition, it was possible for a man to fulfil the law perfectly, and so to be justified and saved by his obedience to it.

Ant. But, sir, do you think the Scribes and Pharisees, and their sect, did yield perfect obedience to the law, according to their own exposition?

Evan. No, indeed; I think very few of them, if any at all.

Ant. Why, what hopes could they then have to be justified and saved, when they transgressed any of the commandments?

Evan. Peter Martyr tells us, that when they chanced to transgress any of the ten commandments, ⁴⁰ they had their sacrifices to make satisfaction [as they conceived]; for they looked upon their sacrifices without their significations, and so had a false faith in them, thinking that the bare work was a sacrifice acceptable unto God; in a word, they conceived that the blood of bulls and goats would take away sin, and so what they wanted of fulfilling the moral law, they thought to make up in the ceremonial law. And thus they separated Christ from their sacrifices, thinking they had discharged their duty very well, when they had sacrificed and offered their offerings; not considering that the imperfection of the typ-

ical law, which, as the apostle says, made nothing perfect, should have led them to find perfection in Christ, ([Heb 7:19](#)); but they generally rested in the work done in the ceremonial law, even as they had done in the moral law, though they themselves were unable to do the one, 41 and the other was as insufficient to help them. And thus "Israel, which followed the law of righteousness, did not attain to the law of righteousness, because they sought it not by faith," but, as it were, by the works of the law. For they being ignorant of the righteousness of God, and going about to establish their own righteousness, did not submit themselves to the righteousness of God, ([Rom 9:31](#), [10:3](#)).

Ant. Then, sir, it seems there were but very few of them 42 that had a clear sight and knowledge of Christ?

Evan. It is very true indeed; for generally there was such a veil of ignorance over their hearts, or such a veil of blindness over their minds, that it made their spiritual eye-sight so weak and dim, that they were no more able to see Christ, the Sun of righteousness, to the end of the law, 43 ([Mal 4:2](#)), than the weak eye of man is able to behold the bright sun when it shineth in its full strength. And therefore we read, ([Exo 34:30](#)), that when Moses's face did shine, by reason of the Lord's talking with him, and telling him of the glorious riches of his free grace in Jesus Christ, and giving unto him the ten commandments, written in tables of stone, as the covenant of works; 44 to drive the people out of confidence in themselves, and their own legal righteousness, unto Jesus Christ and his righteousness, the people were not able to behold his face; that is to say, 45 by reason of the weakness and dimness of their spiritual eye-sight, they were not able to see and understand the spiritual sense of the law: namely, that the Lord's end or intent in giving them the law as a covenant of works, and as the apostle calls it, "the ministration of condemnation and death," ([2 Cor 3:7,9](#)), was to drive them out of themselves to Christ, and that then 46 it was to be abolished to them, as it was the covenant of works, (verse 13), and therefore Moses put the cloudy veil of shadowing ceremonies over his face, ([Exo 34:35](#)), that they might be the better able to behold it: that is to say, that they might be the better able to see through them, and understand, that "Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth," ([Rom 9:4](#)). For Moses' face, says godly Tindal, is the law rightly understood. And yet, alas! by reason that the priests and Levites in former times, and the Scribes and Pharisees in after times, "were the blind leaders of the blind," ([Matt 15:14](#)), the generality of them were so addicted to the letter of the law, [and that both moral 47 and ceremonial,] that they used it not as a pedagogy to Christ, but terminated their eye in the letter and shadow, and did not see through them to the spiritual substance, which is Jesus Christ, ([2 Cor 3:13](#)), especially in the future ages after Moses: for at the time of Christ's coming in the flesh, I remember but two, namely, Simeon and Anna, that desired him, or looked for him as a spiritual Saviour to save them from sin and wrath. For though all of them had in their mouths the Messiah, says Calvin, and the blessed state of the kingdom of David; yet they dreamed that this Messiah should be some

great monarch that should come in outward pomp and power, and save and deliver them from that bondage which they were in under the Romans, of which bondage they were sensible and weary; but as for their spiritual bondage under the law, sin, and wrath, they were not at all sensible; and all because their blind guides had turned the whole law into a covenant of works, to be done for justification and salvation: 48 yea, and such a covenant as they were able to keep and fulfil, if not by the doing of the moral law, yet by their offering sacrifices in the ceremonial law. And for this cause, our Saviour, in his sermon upon the mount, took occasion to expound the moral law truly and spiritually, removing that false literal gloss which the Scribes and Pharisees had put upon it, that men might see how impossible it is for any mere man to fulfil it, and so consequently to have justification and salvation by it. And at the death of Christ, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom, to show, says Tindal, "that the shadows of Moses' law should now vanish away at the flourishing light of the gospel," ([Matt 27:51](#)). And after the death of Christ, his apostles did, both by their preaching and writing, labour to make men understand, that all the sacrifices and ceremonies were but types of Christ; and therefore he being now come, they were of no further use: witness that divine and spiritual epistle written to the Hebrews. Yet, notwithstanding, we may say of the Jews at this day, as the apostle did in his time, "even until this day remaineth the same veil untaken away in the reading of Moses." The Lord in mercy remove it in his due time. 49

Chapter II, Section II, 6

The natural bias towards the covenant of works.

Ant. Well, sir, I had thought that God's covenant with the Jews had been a mixed covenant, and that they had been partly under the covenant of works; but now I perceive there was little difference betwixt their covenant of grace and ours.

Evan. Truly the opposition between the Jews' covenant of grace and ours was chiefly of their own making. They should have been drive to Christ by the law: but they expected life in obedience to it, and this was their great error and mistake.

Ant. And surely, sir, it is no great marvel, though they in this point did so much err and mistake, who had the covenant of grace made known to them so darkly; when many amongst us, who have it more clearly manifested, do the like.

Evan. And, truly, it is no marvel, though all men naturally do so: for man naturally doth apprehend God to be the great Master of heaven, and himself to be his servant; and that therefore he must do his work before he can have his wages; and the more work he doth, the better wages he shall have. And hence it was, that when Aristotle came to speak of blessedness, and to pitch upon the next means to that end, he said, "It was operation and working"; with whom also agrees Pythagoras, when he says, "It is man's felicity to be like

unto God, [as how?] by becoming righteous and holy." And let us not marvel that these men did so err, who never heard of Christ, nor of the covenant of grace, when those to whom it was made known by the apostles of Christ did the like; witness those to whom the apostle Paul wrote his epistles, and especially the Galatians: for although he had by his preaching, when he was present with them, made known unto them the covenant of grace; yet after his departure, through the seducement of false teaches, they were soon turned to the covenant of works, and sought to be justified, either in whole or in part by it; as you may see if you seriously consider that epistle. Nay, what says Luther? It is, says he, the general opinion of men's reason throughout the whole world, that righteousness is gotten by the works of the law; and the reason is, because the covenant was engendered in the minds of men in the very creation,¹³² so that man naturally can judge no otherwise of the law than as of a covenant of works, which was given to make righteous, and to give life and salvation. This pernicious opinion of the law, that it justifieth and maketh righteous before God, says Luther again, "is so deeply rooted in man's reason, and all mankind so wrapped in it, that they can hardly get out; yea, I myself, says he, have now preached the gospel nearly twenty years, and have been exercised in the same daily, by reading and writing, so that I may well seem to be rid of this wicked opinion; yet, notwithstanding, I now and then feel this old filth cleave to my heart, whereby it cometh to pass that I would willingly have so to do with God, that I would bring something with myself, because of which he should give me his grace." Nay it is to be feared, that, as you said, many amongst us [who have more means of light ordinarily, than ever Luther, or any before him had,¹³³ yet notwithstanding] do either wholly, or in part, expect justification and acceptation by the works of the law.

Ant. Sir, I am verily persuaded, that there be very many in the city of London that are carried with a blind preposterous zeal after their own good works and well-doings, secretly seeking to become holy, just, and righteous, before God, by their diligent keeping, and careful walking in all God's commandments;¹³⁴ and yet no man can persuade them that

132 This is not to be understood strictly of the very moment of man's creation, in which the natural law was impressed on his heart, but with some latitude, the covenant of works being made with man newly created; and so divines call it the covenant of nature. See Dickson's Therap. Sacr., book 1, chap. 5, p. 116.

133 This is not to insinuate, that Luther had arrived but to a small measure of the knowledge of the doctrine of justification and acceptation of a sinner before God, in comparison with those of later times; I make no question but he understood that doctrine as well as any man has done since; and doubt not but our author was of the same mind anent him: but it is to show, that that great man of God, and others who went before him, found their way out of the midnight darkness of Popery in that point, with less means of light by far than men now have, who notwithstanding cannot hold off from it.

134 By which means they put their own works in the room of Christ, "who of God is made unto us—righteousness and sanctification," (1 Cor 1:30). According to the Scripture plan of justification and sanctification, a sinner

they do so: and truly, sir, I am verily persuaded that this our neighbour and friend, Nomista, is one of them.

Evan. Alas! there are thousands in the world that make a Christ of their works; and here is their undoing, &c. They look for righteousness and acceptation more in the precept than in the promise, in the law than in the gospel, in working than in believing; and so miscarry. Many poor ignorant souls amongst us, when we bid them obey and do duties, they can think of nothing but working themselves to life; when they are troubled, they must lick themselves whole, when wounded, they must run to the salve of duties, and stream of performances, and neglect Christ. Nay, it is to be feared that there be divers who in words are able to distinguish between the law and gospel, and in their judgments hold and maintain, that man is justified by faith without the works of the law; and yet in effect and practice, that is to say, in heart and conscience, do otherwise.¹³⁵ And there is some touch of this in us all; otherwise we should not be so up and down in our comforts and believing as we are still, and cast down with every weakness as we are.¹³⁶ But what say you, neighbour Nomista, are you guilty of these things, think you?

Nom. Truly, sir, I must needs confess, I begin to be somewhat jealous of myself that I am so; and because I desire your judgment touching my condition, I would entreat you to give me leave to relate it unto you.

Evan. With great good will.

Nom. Sir, I having been born and brought up in a country where there was very little preaching, the Lord knoweth I lived a great while in ignorance and blindness; and yet, because I did often repeat the Lord's prayer, the apostles' creed, and the ten commandments, and in that I came sometimes to divine service, as they call it, and at Easter received the communion, I thought my condition to be good. But at last, by means of hearing a zealous and godly minister in this city, not long after my coming hither, I was convinced that my present condition was not good, and therefore I went to the same minister, and told him what I thought of myself; so he told me that I must frequent the hearing of sermons, and keep the Sabbath very strictly, and leave off swearing by my faith and troth, and such like oaths, and beware of lying, and all idle words and communication; yea, and said he, you must get good

is justified by his blood, (Rom 5:9), sanctified in Christ Jesus, (1 Cor 1:2), through sanctification of the Spirit, (2 Thess 2:13), sanctified by faith, (Acts 26:18).

135 It is indeed the practice of every unregenerate man, whatever be his knowledge or professed principles; for the contrary practice is the practice of the saints, and of them only, (Matt 5:3), "Blessed are the poor in spirit."—(Phil 3:3), "We are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh."

136 For these flow from our building so much on something in ourselves, which is always very variable; and so little on the "grace that is in Christ Jesus," (2 Tim 2:1), which is an immovable foundation.

books to read on, as Mr. Dodd on the Commandments, Mr. Bolton's Directions for Comfortable Walking with God, Mr. Brinsley's True Watch, and such like; and many similar exhortations and directions he gave me, the which I liked very well, and therefore endeavoured myself to follow them. So I fell to the hearing of the most godly, zealous, and powerful preachers that were in the city, and wrote their sermons after them; and when God gave me a family, I prayed with them, and instructed them, and repeated sermons to them, and spent the Lord's day in public and private exercises, and left off my swearing, and lying, and idle talking; and, according to exhortation, in few words, I did so reform myself and my life, that whereas before I had been only careful to perform the duties of the second table of the law, and that to the end I might gain favour and respect from civil, honest men, and to avoid the penalties of man's law, or temporal punishment, now I was also careful to perform the duties required in the first table of the law, and that to gain favour and respect from religious, honest men, and to avoid the penalty of God's law, even eternal torments in hell. Now, when professors of religion observed this change in me, they came to my house, and gave unto me the right hand of fellowship, and counted me one of that number: and then I invited godly ministers to my table, and made much of them; and then, with that same Micah mentioned in the book of Judges, I was persuaded the Lord would be merciful unto me, because I had gotten a Levite to be my priest, ([Judg 17:13](#)). In a word, I did now yield such an outward obedience and conformity to both tables of the law, that all godly ministers and religious, honest men who knew me, did think very well of me, counting me to be a very honest man, and a good Christian; and indeed I thought so of myself, especially because I had their approbation. And thus I went on bravely a great while, even until I read in Mr. Bolton's works, that the outward righteousness of the Scribes and Pharisees was famous in those times; for, besides their forbearing and protesting against gross sins, as murder, theft, adultery, idolatry, and the like, they were frequent and constant in prayer, fasting, and alms-deed, so that, without question, many of them were persuaded that their doing would purchase heaven and happiness. Whereupon I concluded, that I had as yet done no more than they; and withal I considered, that our Saviour says, "Except your righteousness exceed the righteousness of the Scribes and Pharisees, ye cannot enter into the kingdom of God," ([Matt 5:20](#)); yea, and I also considered that the apostle says, "He is not a Jew that is one outwardly; but he that is one inwardly, whose praise is not of men, but of God," ([Rom 2:28,29](#)). Then did I conclude that I was not yet a true Christian; for, said I in my heart, I have contented myself with the praise of men, and so have lost all my labour and pains in performing duties; for they have been no better than outside performances, and, therefore, they must all fall down in a moment. I have not served God with all my heart; and, therefore, I see I must either go further, or else I shall never be happy. Whereupon I set about the keeping of the law in good earnest, and laboured to perform duties, not only outwardly, but also inwardly from my heart; I heard, and read, and prayed, and laboured, to bring my heart, and forced

my soul to every duty; I called upon the Lord in good earnest, and told him, that whatsoever he would have me to do, I would do it with all my heart, if he would but save my soul. And then I also took notice of the inward corruptions of my heart, the which I had not formerly done, and was careful to govern my thoughts, to moderate my passions, and to suppress the motions and risings of lust, to banish pride and speculative wantonness, and all vain and sinful desires of my heart; and then I thought myself not only an outside Christian, but also an inside Christian, and therefore a true Christian indeed. And so I went on comfortably a good while, till I considered that the law of God requires passive obedience as well as active: and therefore I must be a sufferer as well as a doer, or else I could not be a Christian indeed; whereupon I began to be troubled at my impatience under God's correcting hand, and at those inward murmurings and discontents which I found in my spirit in time of any outward calamity that befell me; and then I laboured to bridle my passions, and to submit myself quietly to the will of God in every condition; and then did I also, as it were, begin to take penance upon myself, by abstinence, fasting, and afflicting my soul; and made pitiful lamentations in my prayers, which were sometimes also accompanied with tears, the which I was persuaded the Lord did take notice of, and would reward me for it; and then I was persuaded that I did keep the law, in yielding obedience both actively and passively. And then was I confident I was a true Christian, until I considered, that those Jews, of whom the Lord complains, ([Isa 58](#)), did as much as I; and that caused me to fear that all was not right with me as yet. Whereupon I went to another minister, and told him that though I had done thus and thus, and suffered thus and thus; yet was I persuaded that I was in no better condition than those Jews. O yes! said he; you are in a better condition than they: for they were hypocrites, and served not God with all their hearts as you do. Then I went home contentedly, and so went on in my wonted course of doing and suffering, and thought all was well with me, until I bethought myself, that before the time of my conversion, I had been a transgressor from the womb; yea, in the womb, in that I was guilty of Adam's transgression: so that I considered that although I kept even with God for the time present and to come, yet that would not free me from the guiltiness of that which was done before; whereupon I was much troubled and disquieted in my mind. Then I went to a third minister of God's holy word, and told how the case stood with me, and what I thought of my state and condition. He cheered me up, bidding me be of good comfort: for however my obedience since my conversion would not satisfy for my former sins; yet, inasmuch as, at my conversion, I had confessed, lamented, deplored, bewailed, and forsaken them, God, according to his rich mercy and gracious promise, had mercifully pardoned and forgiven them. Then I returned home to my house again, and went to God by earnest prayer and supplication, and besought him to give me assurance of the pardon and forgiveness of my guiltiness of Adam's sin, and all my actual transgressions before my conversion; and as I had endeavoured myself to be a good servant before, so I would still continue in doing my duty most exactly; and so, being assured

that the Lord had granted this my request, I fell to my business according to my promise; I heard, I read, I prayed, I fasted, I mourned, I sighed, and groaned; and watched over my heart, my tongue, and ways, in all my doings, actions, and dealings, both with God and man. But after a while, I growing better acquainted with the spiritualness of the law, and the inward corruptions of my own heart, I perceived that I had deceived myself, in thinking that I had kept the law perfectly; for, do what I could, I found many imperfections in my obedience; for I had been, and was still subject to sleepiness, drowsiness, and heaviness, in prayers and hearing, and so in other duties; I failed in the manner of performance of them, and in the end why I performed them, seeking myself in everything I did: and my conscience told me I failed in my duty to God in this, in my duty to my neighbour in that. And then I was much troubled again: for I considered that the law of God requires, and is not satisfied without, an exact and perfect obedience. And then I went to the same minister again, and told him how I had purposed, promised, striven, and endeavoured, as much as possibly I could, to keep the law of God perfectly; and yet by woeful experience I had found, that I had, and did still transgress in many ways; and therefore I feared hell and damnation. "Oh! but," said he, "do not fear; for the best of Christians have their failings, and no man keepeth the law of God perfectly; and therefore go on, and do as you have done, in striving to keep the law perfectly; and in what you cannot do, God will accept the will for the deed; and wherein you come short, Christ will help you out." And this satisfied and contented me very much. So I returned home again, and fell to prayer, and told the Lord that now I saw I could not yield perfect obedience to his law, and yet I would not despair, because I did believe that what I could not do Christ had done for me: and then I did certainly conclude, that I was now a Christian indeed, though I was not so before: and so have I been persuaded ever since. And thus, sir, you see I have declared unto you, both how it hath been with me formerly, and how it is with me for the present; wherefore I would entreat you to tell me plainly and truly what you think of my condition.¹³⁷

137 It is not necessary, for saving this account of Nomista's case from the odious charge of forgery, that the particulars therein mentioned should have been real facts; more than [not to speak of Scripture parables] it is necessary to save the whole book from the same imputation, that the speeches therein contained should have passed, at a certain time, in a real conference of four men, called Evangelista, Nomista, Antinomista, and Neophytus; yet I make no question but it is grounded on matters of fact, falling out by some casuist's inadvertency, excess of charity to, or shifting converse with, the afflicted, as to their soul exercise, or by means of corrupt principles. And as the former are incident to good men of sound principles at any time, which calls ministers on such occasions to take heed to the frame of their own spirits, and to be much in the exercise of dependence on the Lord, lest they do hurt to souls instead of doing them good; so the latter is at no time to be thought strange, since there were found, even in the primitive apostolical churches, some who were reputed godly, zealous gospel ministers, especially by such as had little savour of Christ on their own souls, who nevertheless, in their zeal for the law, perverted the gospel of Christ, (Gal 1:6,7, 4:17). Whether Nomista was of opinion that the covenant of

Evan. Why, truly I must tell you, it appears to me by this relation, that you have gone as far in the way of the covenant of works as the apostle Paul did before his conversion; but yet, for aught I see, you have not gone the right way to the truth of the gospel; and therefore I question whether you be as yet truly come to Christ.

Neoph. Good sir, give me leave to speak a few words. By the hearing of your discourse concerning the covenant of works, and the covenant of grace, I was moved to fear that I was out of the right way; but now having heard my neighbour Nomista make such an excellent relation, and yet you to question whether he truly be come to Christ or no, makes me conclude absolutely, that I am far from Christ. Surely, if he, upon whom the Lord hath bestowed such excellent gifts and graces, and who hath lived such a godly life as I am sure he hath done, be not right, then woe be unto me!

Evan. Truly, for aught I know, you may be in Christ before him.

Nom. But, I pray you, sir, consider, that though I am now thoroughly convinced, that till of late I went on in the way of the covenant of works; yet seeing that I at last came to see my need of Christ, and have verily believed that in what I come short of fulfilling the law he will help me out, methinks I should be truly come to Christ.

Evan. Verily, I do conceive that this gives you no surer evidence of your being truly come to Christ, than some of your strict Papists have. For it is the doctrine of the Church of Rome, that if a man exercise all his power, and do his best to fulfil the law, then God, for Christ's sake, will pardon all his infirmities, and save his soul. And therefore you shall see many of your Papists very strict and zealous in the performance of duties, morning and evening, so many Ave Marias and so many Pater Nosters; yea, and many of them do great deeds of charity, and great works of hospitality; and all upon such grounds, and to such ends as these. The Papists, says Calvin, cannot abide this saying, "By faith alone"; for they think that their own works are in part a cause of their salvation; and so they make a hotch-potch and mingle-mangle, that is neither fish nor flesh, as men say.

Nom. But stay, sir, I pray; you are mistaken in me; for though I hold that God doth accept of my doing my best to fulfil the law, yet I do not hold with the Papists, that my doings are meritorious; for I believe that God accepts not what I do, either for the work or worker's sake, but only for Christ's sake.

works was still in force or not, our Lord Jesus Christ taught that it was, (Luke 10:25-28); and so does the apostle, (Gal 3:10); and unbelievers will find it so to their everlasting ruin. For, "our Lord Jesus, who now offers to be Mediator for them who believe on him, shall, at the last day, come armed with flaming fire, to judge, condemn, and destroy all them who have not believed God, have not received the offer of grace made in the gospel, nor obeyed the doctrine thereof, but remain in their natural state, under the law or covenant of works."—Practical Use of Saving Knowledge, tit. For convincing a man of Judgment by the Law, part 2.

Evan. Yet do you but still go hand in hand with the Papists; for though they do hold that their works are meritorious, yet they say it is by the merit of Christ that they become meritorious; or, as some of the moderate sort of them say, "Our works, sprinkled with the blood of Christ, become meritorious." But this you are to know, that as the justice of God requires a perfect obedience, so does it require that this perfect obedience be a personal one, viz: it must be the obedience of one person only; the obedience of two must not be put together, to make up a perfect obedience;¹³⁸ so that, if you desire to be justified before God, you must either bring to him a perfect righteousness of your own, and wholly renounce Christ; or else you must bring the perfect righteousness of Christ, and wholly renounce your own.

Ant. But believe me, sir, I would advise him to bring Christ's and wholly renounce his own, as, I thank the Lord, I have done.

Evan. You say very well; for, indeed, the covenant of grace terminates itself only on Christ and his righteousness; God will have none to have a hand in the justification and salvation of a sinner, but Christ only. And to say as the thing is, neighbour Nomista, Christ Jesus will either be a whole Saviour, or no Saviour; he will either save you alone, or not save you at all. ([Acts 4:12](#)), "For among men there is given no other name under heaven, whereby we must be saved," says the apostle Peter; and Jesus Christ himself says, ([John 14:6](#)), "I am the way, the truth, and the life; and no man cometh to the Father but by me." So that, as Luther truly says, "besides this way Christ, there is no way but wandering, no verity but hypocrisy, no life but eternal death." And verily, says, another godly writer, "we can neither come to God the Father, be reconciled unto him, nor have anything to do with him, by any other way or means, but only by Jesus Christ; for we shall not anywhere find the favour of God, true innocency, righteousness, satisfaction for sin, help, comfort, life, or salvation, anywhere but only in Jesus Christ; he is the sum and centre of all divine and evangelical truths: and therefore as there is no knowledge or wisdom so excellent, necessary, or heavenly, as the knowledge of Christ, as the apostle plainly gives us to understand, ([1 Cor 2:2](#)), that he 'determined to know nothing amongst them, but only Jesus Christ and him crucified'; so there is nothing to be preached unto men, as an object of their faith, or necessary element of their salvation, which doth not in some way or other, either meet in Christ, or refer unto him."¹³⁹

138 For in that case the obedience both of the one and of the other is imperfect, and so is not conform to the law; therefore it can in no wise be accepted for righteousness; but according to justice proceeding upon it, the soul that hath it must die, because a sinful soul, ([Eze 18:4](#)).

139 ([Eph 4:20,21](#)), "But ye have not so learned Christ; if so be that ye have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus."

Chapter II, Section II, 7

The Antinomian faith rejected.

Ant. O, sir, you please me wondrous well in thus attributing all to Christ: and surely, though of late you have not been so evangelical in your teaching as some others in this city, which has caused me to leave off hearing you to hear them, yet I have formerly perceived, and now also perceive, that you have more knowledge of the doctrine of free grace than many other ministers in this city have; and to tell you the truth, sir, it was by your means that I was first brought to renounce mine own righteousness, and cleave only to the righteousness of Jesus Christ.¹⁴⁰ And thus it was: after that I had been a good while a legal professor, just like my friend Nomista, and heard none but your legal preachers, who built me up in works and doings, as they did him, and as their manner is; at last, a familiar acquaintance of mine, who had some knowledge of the doctrine of free grace, did commend you for an excellent preacher; and at last prevailed with me to go with him and hear you; and your text that day, I well remember, was [Titus 3:5](#), "Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us"; whence you observed, and plainly proved, that man's own righteousness had no hand in his justification and salvation; whereupon you dehorted us from putting any confidence in our own works and doings, and exhorted us by faith to lay hold upon the righteousness of Jesus Christ only; at the hearing whereof it pleased the Lord so to work upon me, that I plainly perceived that there was no need at all of my works and doings, nor anything else, but only to believe in Jesus Christ.¹⁴¹ And

140 What this is, in the sense of the speaker, he himself immediately explains at large. In a word, in his sense, it is to be an Antinomian indeed. The sum of his compliment made to Evangelista, or the author, which you please, lies here; namely, that he had left off hearing him, because he did not preach the gospel, so purely as some others in the place; yet in his opinion, he understood it better than many others; and [to carry the compliment to the highest pitch] it was by his means he turned downright Antinomian. One would think, that whatever was the measure of the author's pride or humility, self-denial or self-seeking, he had as much common sense as would render this address not very taking with him, or at least would teach him, that the publishing of it was none of the most proper means for commending of himself. So that the publishing of it may rather be imputed to the author's self-denial than to the want thereof; though I presume the considering reader will neither impute it to the one nor to the other.

141 The preacher taught, according to his text, That man's own righteousness had no hand in his justification and salvation; he dehorted, from putting confidence in good works; and exhorted, by faith to lay hold on Christ's righteousness only. And this hearer thence inferred, that there was no need at all of good works; as if one should conclude, that because it is the eye only that seeth, therefore there is no need at all of hand or foot. So the apostle Paul's doctrine was misconstrued; (Rom 3:8), "Some affirm that we say, Let us do evil that good may come." Yea, in the apostles' days, the doctrine of free grace was actually thus abused to Antinomianism, by some "turning the grace of God into lasciviousness," (Jude 4). The apostle was aware of the danger on that side, through the

indeed my heart assented to it immediately, so that I went home with abundance of peace and joy in believing, and gave thanks to the Lord for that he had set my soul at liberty from such a sore bondage as I had been under. And I told all my acquaintance what a slavish life I had lived in, being under the law; for if I did commit any sin, I was presently troubled and disquieted in my conscience, and could have no peace till I had made humble confession thereof unto God, craved pardon and forgiveness, and promised amendment. But now I told them, that whatsoever sins I committed, I was no whit troubled at them, nor indeed am I at this day; for I do verily believe that God, for Christ's sake, has freely and fully pardoned all my sins, both past, present, and to come; so that I am confident, that whatsoever sin or sins I commit, they shall never be laid to my charge, being very well assured, that I am so perfectly clothed with the robe of Christ's righteousness, that God can see no sin in me at all. And therefore now I can rejoice evermore in Christ, as the apostle exhorts me, and live merrily, though I be never so vile or sinful a creature; and indeed I pity them that are in the same slavish condition I was in; and would have them to believe as I have done, that so they may rejoice with me in Christ.¹⁴² And thus, sir, you see I have declared unto you my condition; and therefore I entreat you to tell me what you think of me.

Evan. There is in this city, at this day, much talk about Antinomians; and though I hope there be but few that do justly deserve that title, yet, I pray, give me leave to tell you, that I fear I may say unto you in this case, as it was once said unto Peter in another case, "surely thou art one of them, for thy speech betrayeth thee," ([Matt 26:73](#)). And therefore, to tell you truly, I make some question whether you have truly believed in Christ, for all your confidence; and indeed, I am the rather moved to question it, by calling to mind, that, as I have heard, "your conversation is not such as becometh the gospel of Christ," ([Phil 1:27](#)).

corruption of the hearts of men; ([Gal 5:13](#)), "Brethren, ye have been called unto liberty; only use not liberty for an occasion to the flesh." And ministers of Christ, [who himself was accounted "a friend to publicans and sinners," &c., ([Matt 11:19](#)),] followers of Paul's doctrine, which, in the eyes of carnal men, had a show and semblance of favouring sinful liberty, ought to set the apostles' example in this matter before them in a special manner; with fear and trembling, keeping a jealous eye on the danger from that part; especially in this day, wherein the Lord's indignation is visibly going out in spiritual strokes, for a despised gospel; knowing that the gospel of Christ is to some "the savour of death unto death," ([2 Cor 2:16](#)), and that "there are who wrest the Scriptures [themselves] unto their own destruction," ([2 Peter 2:17](#)).

142 How easy is the passage from legalism to Antinomianism! Had this poor man, under his trouble and disquiet of conscience, fled to Jesus Christ for the purging of his conscience from guilt by his blood, and the sanctifying of his nature by his Spirit; and not put his own confessions of sins, prayers for pardon, and promises of amendment, in the room of Christ's atoning blood; and his blind and faithless resolutions to amend, in the room of the sanctifying spirit of Christ; he had escaped this snare of the devil ([Heb 9:14](#), [Rom 7:4-6](#)).

Ant. Why, sir, do you think it is possible for a man to have such peace and joy in Christ as I have had, and I thank the Lord have still, and not to have truly believed in Christ?

Evan. Yes, indeed, I think it is possible; for does not our Saviour tell us, that those hearers, to whom he resembles the "stony ground,—immediately received the word with joy, and yet had no root in themselves," ([Mark 4:16,17](#)), and so indeed were not true believers? and does not the apostle give us to understand, that as there is a form of godliness without the power of godliness, ([2 Tim 3:5](#)), so there is a form of faith, without the power of faith? and therefore he prays that God would grant unto the Thessalonians "the work of faith with power," ([2 Thess 1:11](#)). And as the same apostle gives us to understand, "there is a faith that is not feigned," ([1 Tim 1:5](#)), so, doubtless, there is a faith that is feigned. And surely when our Saviour says, ([Mark 4:26-28](#)), "the kingdom of God is as if a man should cast seed into the ground, and should sleep, and rise night and day, and the seed should spring up and grow, he knoweth not how, first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear"; he giveth us to understand, that true faith is produced by the secret power of God, by little and little; so that sometimes a true believer himself neither knows the time when, nor the manner how, it was wrought. So that we may perceive, that true faith is not ordinarily begun, increased, and finished, all in a moment, as it seems yours was, but grows by degrees, according to that of the apostle, ([Rom 1:17](#)), "The righteousness of God is revealed from faith to faith," that is, from one degree of faith to another; from a weak faith to a strong faith, and from faith beginning to faith increasing towards perfection; or from faith of adherence to faith of evidence; but so was not yours. And again, true faith, according to the measure of it, produces holiness of life; but it seems yours does not so; and therefore, though you have had, and have still much peace and joy, yet that is no infallible sign that your faith is true; for a man may have great raptures, yea, he may have great joy, as if he were lifted up into the third heaven, and have a great and strong persuasion that his state is good, and yet be but a hypocrite for all that. And therefore, I beseech you, in the words of the apostle, "examine yourself, whether you be in the faith, prove your own self: know you not your own self, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except you be a reprobate?" ([2 Cor 13:5](#)).—"And if Christ is in you, the body is dead because of sin, but the spirit is life because of righteousness,"¹⁴³ ([Rom 8:10](#)).

Ant. But, sir, if my friend Nomista went wrong in seeking to be justified by the works of the law, then, methinks I should have gone right in seeking to be justified by faith; and yet you speak as if we had both gone wrong.

Evan. I remember Luther says, that in his time, if they taught in a sermon, that salvation consisted not in our works or life, but in the gift of God, some men took occasion thence to be slow to good works, and to live a dishonest life. And if they preached of a godly and

143 This doctrine of our author is far from cherishing of presumption, or opening of a gap to licentiousness.

honest life, others did by and by attempt to build ladders to heaven.¹⁴⁴ And moreover, he says, that in the year 1525, there were some fantastical spirits that stirred up the rustical people to sedition, saying, That the freedom of the gospel giveth liberty to all men from all manner of laws; and there were others that did attribute the force of justification to the law. Now, says he, both these sorts offend against the law; the one on the right hand, who would be justified by the law, and the other on the left hand, who would be clean delivered from the law. Now, I suppose, this saying of Luther's may be fitly applied to you two; for it appears to me, friend Antinomista, that you have offended on the left hand, in not walking according to the matter of the law; and it is evident to me, neighbour Nomista, that you have offended on the right hand, in seeking to be justified by your obedience to it.¹⁴⁵

Chapter II, Section II, 8

The evil of legalism.

Nom. But, sir, if seeking justification by the works of the law be an error, yet it seems, that, by Luther's own confession, it is but an error on the right hand.

Evan. But yet I tell you, it is such an error, that, by the apostle Paul's own confession, so far forth as any man is guilty of it, he makes his services his saviours, and rejects the grace of God, and makes the death of Christ of none effect, and perverts the Lord's intention, both in giving the law and in giving the gospel; and keeps himself under the curse of the law, and makes himself the son of a bond-woman, a servant, yea, and a slave, and hinders himself in the course of well-doing, ([Gal 5:4](#), [3:19](#), [1:7](#), [3:10](#), [4:25](#), [5:7](#), [2:11](#)); and in short, he goes about an impossible thing, and so loses all his labour.

Nom. Why then, sir, it would seem that all my seeking to please God by my good works, all my strict walking according to the law, and all my honest course of life, has rather done me hurt than good?

144 That is, to scale and get into it by their own good works.

145 The offences of these men here taxed, were both against the law [or covenant] of works; for they must needs have been against that law which they were under, and not another; and both of them were as yet under the law, or covenant of works, as being both unbelievers, the which was told to Antinomista, as it was to Nomista; wherefore it is manifest, that by the matter of the law here, is not meant the law of Christ, but the matter of the law of works, that is, the ten commandments, as they stand in the covenant of works, which Antinomista had no regard to in his conversation, though they had all the authority and binding force upon him found in the covenant. And as he offended against the matter of it, so did Nomista against the form, in seeking to be justified by his obedience; for the covenant of works never bound a sinner to seek to be justified by his obedience to it; but, on the contrary, always condemned that as presumption, staking down the guilty under the curse, without remedy, till satisfaction be made by another hand.

Evan. The apostle says, that "without faith it is impossible to please God," ([Heb 11:6](#)); that is, says Calvin, [Institut. p. 370,] "Whatsoever a man thinketh, purposeth, or doeth, before he be reconciled to God by faith in Christ, it is accursed, and not only of no value to righteousness, but of certain deserving to damnation." So that, says Luther, on Galatians, p. 63. "Whosoever goeth about to please God with works going before faith, goeth about to please God with sin; which is nothing else but to heap sin upon sin, to mock God, and to provoke him to wrath. Nay, [says the same Luther, on the Galatians, p. 23,] if thou be without Christ, thy wisdom is double foolishness, thy righteousness is double sin and iniquity." And, therefore, though you have walked very strictly according to the law, and led an honest life, yet if you have rested and put confidence therein, and so come short of Christ, then hath it indeed rather done you hurt than good. For, says a godly writer, a virtuous life, according to the light of nature, turneth a man further off from God, if he add not thereto the effectual working of his Spirit. And, says Luther, "they which have respect only to an honest life, it were better for them to be adulterers and adulteresses, and to wallow in the mire."¹⁴⁶ And surely for this cause it is that our Saviour tells the strict Scribes and Pharisees, who sought justification by works, and rejected Christ, that "publicans and harlots should enter into the kingdom of God before them," ([Matt 21:31](#)). And for this cause it was that I said, For aught I know, my neighbour Neophytus might be in Christ before you.

Nom. But how can that be, when, as you know, he hath confessed that he is ignorant and full of corruption, and comes far short of me in gifts and graces?

Evan. Because, as the Pharisee had more to do before he could come at Christ than the publican had, so I conceive you have more to do than he hath.

Nom. Why, sir, I pray you, what have I to do, or what would you advise me to do? for truly I would be contented to be ruled by you.

Evan. Why, that which you have to do, before you can come to Christ, is to undo all that ever you have done already; that is to say, whereas you have endeavoured to travel toward heaven by the way of the covenant of works, and so have gone a wrong way; you must go quite back again all the way you have gone, before you can tread one step in the right way. And whereas you have attempted to build up the ruins of old Adam, and that upon yourself, and so, like a foolish builder, to build a tottering house upon the sands,—you must throw down and utterly demolish all that building, and not leave a stone upon a stone, before you can begin to build anew. And whereas you have conceived that there is some sufficiency in yourself, to help to justify and save yourself, you must conclude, that in that case there is

¹⁴⁶ This comparison is not stated betwixt these two, considered, simply, as to their different manner of life; but in point of pliability to receive conviction, wherein the latter hath the advantage of the former; which the Scripture oftener than once takes notice of, ([Matt 21:31](#)), quoted in the following sentence, "I would thou wert cold or hot," ([Rev 3:15](#)). The passage is to be found in his Sermon upon the Hymn of Zacharias, page 50.

not only in you an insufficiency, but also a non-sufficiency:¹⁴⁷ yea and that sufficiency that seemed to be in you, to be your loss. In plain terms, you must deny yourself, as our Saviour says, ([Matt 16:24](#)), that is, "you must utterly renounce all that ever you are, and all that ever you have done"; all your knowledge and gifts; all your hearing, reading, praying, fasting, weeping, and mourning; all your wandering in the way of works, and strict walking, must fall to the ground in a moment: briefly, whatsoever you have counted gain to you in the case of justification, you must now, with the apostle Paul, ([Phil 3:7-9](#)), "count loss for Christ," and judge it to be "dung, that you may win Christ, and be found in him, not having your own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith."

Chapter II, Section III

OF THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PROMISE.

Neo. But, sir, what would you advise me to do?

Evan. Why, man, what aileth you?

Neo. Why, sir, as you have been pleased to hear those two declare their condition unto you, so I beseech you to give me leave to do the same; and then you will perceive how it is with me. Sir, not long since, it pleased the Lord to visit me with a great fit of sickness; so, that, indeed, both in mine own judgment, and in the judgment of all that came to visit me, I was sick unto death. Whereupon I began to consider whither my soul was to go after its departure out of my body; and I thought with myself, that there were but two places, heaven and hell; and therefore it must needs go to one of them. Then my wicked and sinful life, which, indeed, I had lived, came into my mind, which caused me to conclude, that hell was the place provided for it; the which caused me to be very fearful, and to be very sorry that I had so lived; and I desired of the Lord to let me live a little longer, and I would not fail to reform my life, and amend my ways; and the Lord was pleased to grant me my desire. Since which time, though, indeed, it is true I have not lived so wickedly as formerly I had done, yet alas! I have come far short of that godly and religious life which I see other men live, and especially my neighbour Nomista; and yet you seem to conceive that he is not in a good condition, and therefore surely I must needs be in a miserable condition. Alas! sir, what do you think will become of me?

Section I,

Christ's fulfilling of the law in the room of the elect.

Evan. I do now perceive that it is time for me to show how God, in the fullness of time, performed that which he purposed before all time, and promised in time, concerning the

¹⁴⁷ That is, you are not only unable to do enough, but also, that you are not able to do anything. "Not that we are sufficient of ourselves to think anything as of ourselves," ([2 Cor 3:5](#)).

help and delivering of fallen mankind. And touching this point, The Scripture testifies, that God "did, in the fullness of time, send forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law," &c., ([Gal. 4:4](#)). That is to say, look how mankind by nature are under the law, as it is the covenant of works; so was Christ, as man's surety, contented to be; so that now, according to that eternal and mutual agreement that was betwixt God the Father and him, he put himself in the room and place of all the faithful,¹⁴⁸ ([Isa 53:6](#)), "And the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all."

148 That is, all those who have, or shall believe, or all the elect, which is one and the same in reality, and in the judgment of our author, expressly declared in the first sentence of his preface.

Then came the law as it is the covenant of works, and said; "I find him a sinner,¹⁴⁹ yea, such an one as hath taken upon him the sins of all men,¹⁵⁰ therefore let him die upon the

149 By imputation and law-reckoning; no otherwise, as a sinner believing in him is righteous before God. [Thus Isaac Ambrose, speaking of justification, says, "This righteousness makes a sinner sinless"; i.e., as to guilt.] This must be owned to be the meaning of this expression, unless one will shut one's eyes to the immediately foregoing and following words,—I find him a sinner, said the law; such an one as hath taken sin upon him. They are the words of Luther, and he was not the first who spoke so. "He made him who was righteous to be made a sinner, that he might make sinners righteous," says Chrysostom, on 2 Cor. 5. Hom. 11. cit. Owen on Justification, p. 39. Famous Protestant divines have also used the expression after him. "When our divines," says Rutherford, "say, Christ took our place, and we have his condition,—Christ was made us, and made the sinner; it is true, only in a legal sense. He [Christ] was debitor factus,—a sinner; a debtor by imputation, a debtor by law, by place, by office." *Trial and Triumph of Faith*, p. 245, 257. Charnock argues the point thus: "How could he die, if he were not a reputed sinner? Had he not first had a relation to our sin, he could not in justice have undergone our punishment. He must, in the order of justice, be supposed a sinner really, or by imputation. Really, he was not; by imputation then he was," vol. 2. p. 547. Sermon on 1 Cor. 5:7. "Though personally he was no sinner, yet by imputation he was," says the *Contin. of Poole's Annot. on 2 Cor. 5:21*. "What Illyricus wrote," says Rivet, "that Christ might most truly be called a sinner, Bellarmine calls blasphemy and cursed impudence. Now Bellarmine himself contends, that Christ might attribute our sins to himself, therefore he might also truly call himself a sinner, while in himself innocent, he did represent our person. What blasphemy, what impiety is here?" *Comment. on Psalm 21:1*. The Scripture phrase to this purpose is more forcible; (2 Cor 5:21), "For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin, that we might be made the righteousness of God in him." For as it is more to say we are made righteousness, than to say we are made righteous, since the former plainly imports a perfection of righteousness, if I may be allowed the phrase, righteousness not being properly capable of degrees; so it is more to say, Christ was made sin for the elect world, than to say he was made a sinner, since the first of these doth accordingly point at the universality and complete tale of the elect's sins, from the first to the last of them laid on our spotless Redeemer. Compare Leviticus 16:21,22, "And Aaron shall confess over him [viz: the scape-goat, which the apostle hath an eye to here] all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their transgressions, and all their sins, putting them upon the head of the goat. And the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities," (Isa 53:6). "And the Lord [marg.] hath made the iniquity of us all to meet on [Heb. in] him." These two texts give the just notion of the true import of that phrase, "He was made sin for us."

150 Our Lord Jesus Christ died not for, nor took upon him the sins of, all and every individual man, but he died for, and took upon him the sins of, all the elect, (John 10:15, 15:13, Acts 20:28, Eph 5:25, Titus 2:14), and no other doctrine is here taught by our author touching the extent of the death of Christ. In the preceding paragraph, where was the proper place for giving his judgment on that head, he purposely declares it. He had before taught, that Jesus Christ did from eternity become man's surety in the covenant that passed betwixt him and the Father. A surety puts himself in the place of those for whom he becomes a surety, to pay their debt, (Gen 44:32,33, Prov 22:26,27). And our author tells us, that now, when the prefixed time of Christ's fulfilling the eternal covenant, paying the debt he had taken on him, and purchasing man's redemption by his sufferings, was

come, he did, according to the tenor of that covenant, which stated the extent of his suretyship, put himself in the room and place—he says not, of all men, but—of all the faithful, or elect of God; Jesus Christ thus standing in their room and place, actually to take on the burden. "The Lord laid on him the iniquities of us all"; the which Scripture text can bear no other sense in the connection of it here, that what is the genuine sense of it, as it stands in the holy Scripture, namely, that the Father laid on Christ the iniquities of all the spiritual Israel of God, of all nations, ranks, and conditions; for no iniquities could be laid on him but theirs in whose room and place he put himself to receive the burden, according to the eternal and mutual agreement. These iniquities being thus laid on the Mediator, the law came and said, I find him such an one as hath taken on him the sins of all men. This is but an incident expression on the head of the extent of Christ's death, and it is a scriptural one too. (1 Tim 2:6), "Who gave himself a ransom for all," i.e., for all sorts of men, not for all of every sort. (Heb 2:9), "That he, by the grace of God, should taste death for every man," i.e., for every man of those whom the apostle is there treating of, namely, sons brought or to be brought unto glory, (verse 10); those who are sanctified, Christ's brethren, (verse 11); given to him, (verse 13); and the sense of the phrase, as used here by the author, can be no other; for the sins, which the law found that he had taken on him, could be no other but the sins that the Lord had laid on him; and the sins the Lord had laid on him were the sins of all the faithful or elect, according to the author; wherefore, in the author's sense, the sins of all men which the law found in Christ were the sins of all the elect, according to the genuine sense of the Scripture phraseology on that head. And an incident expression, in words which the Holy Ghost teacheth, and determined in its connection to the orthodox scriptural meaning, can never import any prejudice to his sentiment upon that point purposely declared before in its proper place. It is true, the author, when speaking of those in whose room Christ put himself, useth not the word alone; and in the holy Scripture it is not used neither on that subject. And it may be observed, that the Spirit of God in the word, doth not open the doctrine of election and reprobation, but upon man's rejecting or embracing the gospel offer; the which different events are then seasonably accounted for, from the depths of the eternal counsel of God. See Luke 10:17-22, Matthew 22:1-14, Romans 9 throughout; Ephesians 1:3-5. To every thing there is a season. The author hitherto hath been dealing with the parties, to bring them to Christ; and particularly here, he is speaking for the instruction and direction of a convinced trembling sinner, namely, Neophytus; and, therefore, like a wise and tender man in such a case, he useth a manner of speaking, which being warranted by the word, was fitted to excite the awakening of the ordinary scruples in that case, namely, "It may be I am not elected,—it may be Christ died not for me"; and which pointed at the duty of all, and the encouragement that all have to come to Christ. And all this, after he had in his very first words to the reader, sufficiently provided for his using such a manner of expression, without prejudice to the truth. further, the law adds, "Therefore let him die upon the cross." Wherefore? For their sins, of the laying of which upon him there is no mention made? or for the sins of those in whose room he is expressly said to have put himself, according to the eternal agreement betwixt the Father and him? Then said Christ, "Lo! I com"; viz: actually to pay the debt for which I have become surety in the eternal compact; the which, whose it was, according to our author, is already sufficiently declared. The law then set upon him, and killed him; for whom, according to our author? For these, surely, in whose room and place he put himself, and so stood. If one considers his account of the effect of all this, one does not find it to be, as Arminians say, "tath Christ, by the merit of his death, hath so far forth reconciled God the Father to all mankind, that the Father, by reason of the Son's merit, both could and would, and did enter and establish a new

cross." Then said Christ, "Sacrifice and offering thou wouldst not, but a body hast thou prepared me; in burnt-offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast no pleasure. Then said I, Lo, I come to do thy will, O Lord!" ([Heb 10:5-7](#)). And so the law proceeding in full scope against him, set upon him, and killed him; and, by this means, was the justice of God fully satisfied, his wrath appeased, and all true believers acquitted from all their sins, both past,

and gracious covenant with sinful man, liable to condmenation." [Examination of Tilenus, p. 164, art. 2, sect 2.] "and obtained for all and every man a restoration into a sttate of grace and salvation; so that none will be condemned, nor are liable to condmenation for original sin, but all are free from the guilt of that sin." [Teste Turret. loc. 14. ques. 14. th. 5.] Neither does he tell us, that Christ died to "render sin remissible to all persons, and them savalbe," as the Continuator of Poole's Annotations on Hebrews, chapter 2:9, says, with other Universalists. By this means, says our author, "was the justice of God fully satisfied, his wrath appeased, and all true believers acquitted." Compare Westm. Confess. chap. 8. art. 4, 5. "This office [viz: of a surety] the Lord Jesus did most willingly undertake, which that he might discharge, he was made under the law, and did perfectly fulfil it, endured most grievous torments, &c. The Lord Jesus, by his perfect obedience, and sactifice of himself—hath fully satisfied the justice of his Father; and purchased, not only reconciliation, but an everlasting inheritance in the kingdom of heaven, for all those whom the Father hath given unto him. Christ, by his obedience and deth, did fully discharge the debt of all those that are thus justified," Chap. 11, art. 3. Wherefore the author does not here teach an universal redemption or atonement. Of this more afterward.

present, and to come.¹⁵¹ So that the law, as it is the covenant of works, hath not anything to say to any true believer,¹⁵² for indeed they are dead to it, and it is dead to them.

151 Pardon is the removing of the guilt of sin. Guilt is twofold: 1. The guilt of eternal wrath, by which the sinner is bound over to the eternal revenging wrath of God; and this, by orthodox divines, is called the guilt of sin by way of eminency. 2. The guilt of fatherly anger, whereby the sinner is bound over to God's fatherly anger and chastisements for sin. Accordingly, there is a two-fold pardon: the one is the removal of the guilt of eternal wrath, and is called legal pardon; the other the removal of the guilt of fatherly anger, and is called gospel pardon. As to the latter, the believer is daily to sue out his pardon, since he is daily contracting new guilt of that kind; and this the author plainly teaches afterwards in its proper place. As to the former, of which only he speaks here, all the sins of a believer, past, present, and to come, are pardoned together, and at once, in the first instance of his believing; that is to say, the guilt of eternal wrath for sin then past and present is actually and formally done away; the obligation to that wrath which he was lying under for these sins is dissolved, and the guilt of eternal wrath for sins then to come is effectually prevented from that moment for ever, so that he can never come under that kind of guilt any more; and this pardon, as it relates to these sins, is but a pardon improperly so called, being rather a not imputing of them, than a formal remission, forasmuch as a formal remission being a dissolution of guilt actually contracted, agrees only to sins already committed. Therefore our author here uses the word acquitted, which is of a more extensive signification. All pardon of sin is an acquittance, but all acquittance of sin is not a formal pardon of it: "For at the resurrection, believers being raised up in glory, shall be openly acknowledged and acquitted in the day of judgment." Short. Cat. But they will not then be formally pardoned. Now, this is the doctrine of the holy Scriptures, (Rom 4:48), "Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works, saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man to whom the Lord WILL NOT IMPUTE sin."—(7:1), "There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus." That is, not only they shall never be actually damned, i.e., sent to hell, as that phrase is ordinarily taken, for that is the privilege of all the elect, even before they believe, while yet they are under condemnation according to the Scripture; but there is no binding over of them that are in Christ to eternal wrath, no guilt to that kind to them. Compare John 3:18, "He that believeth on him is not condemned; but he that believeth not is condemned already."—"The one [viz: justification] doth equally free all believers from the revenging wrath of God, and that perfectly in this life, that they never fall into condemnation." Larg. Cat. quest. 77. "Albeit sin remain, and continually abide in these our mortal bodies, yet it is not imputed unto us, but is remitted and covered with Christ's justice," [i.e., righteousness]. Old Confess. art. 25. Q. "What then is our only joy in life and death? A. That all our sins, by past, present, and to come, are buried; and Christ only is made our wisdom, justification, sanctification, and redemption." (1 Cor 1:30) Craig's Cat. quest. 43. "The liberty which Christ hath purchased for believers, under the gospel consists in their freedom from the guilt of sin, the condemning wrath of God, the curse of the moral law." Westm. Confess. chap. 20, art. 1. See 11, art. 5; chap. 17, art 3. "They [the Arminians] do utterly deny, that no sins of the faithful, how great and grievous soever they be, are imputed unto them, or that all their sins present and future are forgiven them." Exam. of Tilen. p. 226, art. 5. sect. 5.

152 "What things soever it saith, it saith to them who are under it," (Rom 3:19). But believers are not under it, nor under the law of the covenant of works, (6:14), therefore it saith nothing to them. As such, it said all to Christ in their room and place; and, without the Mediator's dishonour, it cannot repeat its demands on them which it made upon him as their surety. Meanwhile the law, as a rule of life to believers, saith to them all, in the

Nom. But, sir, how could the sufferings of Christ, which in respect of time were but finite, make full satisfaction to the justice of God, which is infinite?

Evan. Though the sufferings of Christ, in respect of time, were but finite, yet in respect of the person that suffered, his sufferings came to be of infinite value; for Christ was God and man in one person, and therefore his sufferings were a sufficient and full ransom for man's soul, being of more value than the death and destruction of all creatures.

Nom. But, sir, you know that the covenant of works requires man's own obedience or punishment, when it says, "He that doeth these things shall live in them"; and "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them": how then, could believers be acquitted from their sins by the death of Christ?

Evan. For answer, I pray you consider, that though the covenant of works requires man's own obedience or punishment, yet it nowhere disallows or excludes that which is done or suffered by another in his behalf; neither is it repugnant to the justice of God: for so there be a satisfaction performed by man, through a sufficient punishment for the disobedience of man, the law is satisfied, and the justice of God permitteth that the offending party be received into favour; and God acknowledges him, after such satisfaction made, as a just man, and no transgressor of the law; and though the satisfaction be made by a surety, yet when it is done, the principal is, by the law, acquitted. But yet, for the further proof and confirmation of this point, we are to consider, that as Jesus Christ, the second Adam, entered into the same covenant that the first Adam did, so by him was done whatsoever the first Adam had undone. So the case stands thus,—that as whatsoever the first Adam did, or befell him, was reckoned as done by all mankind, and to have befallen them, even so, whatsoever Christ did, or befell him, is to be reckoned as to have been done by all believers, and to have befallen them. So that as sin cometh from Adam alone to all mankind, as he in whom all have sinned; so from Jesus Christ alone cometh righteousness unto all that are in him, as he in whom they all have satisfied the justice of God; for as being in Adam, and one with him, all did, in him and with him, transgress the commandment of God; even so, in respect of faith, whereby believers are ingrafted into Christ, and spiritually made one with him, they did all, in him and with him, satisfy the justice of God in his death and sufferings.¹⁵³ And

name and authority of God, the Creator and Redeemer, (Matt 5:48), "Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect." Howbeit, they are under a covenant, under which, though no less is required, yet less is accepted, for the sake of Christ their covenant head.

153 Namely, in the sense of the law; for in the law-reckoning, as to the payment of a debt, and fulfilling of a covenant, or any the like purposes, the surety and the original debtor, the federal head or the representative, and the represented, are but one person. And thus the Scripture determining Adam to be the figure [or type] of Christ, (Rom 5:14), teaches upon the one hand, that all mankind sinned in Adam, (verse 12), and died in him, (1 Cor 15:22); and on the other hand, that believers were crucified with Christ, (Gal 2:20), and raised up in him. (Eph 2:6) "The covenant [of works] being made with Adam as a public person—all mankind—sinned in him."

whosoever reckons thus reckons according to Scripture; for in [Romans 5:12](#), all are said to have sinned in Adam's sin; in whom all have sinned, says the text, namely, in Adam, as in a public person: all men's acts were included in his, because their persons were included in his. So likewise in the same chapter it is said, "that death passed upon all men"; namely for this, that Adam's sin was reckoned for theirs. Even so, ([Rom 6:10](#)), the apostle, speaking of Christ, says, "In that he died, he died unto sin; but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God": so likewise, says he in the next verse, "Reckon ye yourselves to be dead unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord." And so, as touching the resurrection of Christ, the apostle argues, ([1 Cor 15:20](#)), that all believers must and shall arise, because "Christ is risen, and is become the first fruits of them that sleep." Christ, as the first fruits, arises, and that in the name and stead of all believers; and so they rise in him and with him; for Christ did not rise as a private person, but he arose as a public head of the church; so that in his arising

Lar. Cat. Quest. 22. "The covenant of grace was made with Christ as the second Adam," Quest. 31. "He satisfied divine justice, the which he did as a public person, the head of his Church," Quest. 52. "that the righteousness of the law," says the apostle, "might be fulfilled in us," ([Rom 8:4](#)); so believers satisfied in him, as they sinned in Adam. "The threatening of death, ([Gen 2:17](#)), is fulfilled in the elect so that they die, and yet their lives are spared: they die, and yet they live, for they are reckoned in law to have died when Christ their surety died for them." Ferguson on Galatians 2:20. "Although thou," says Beza, "hast satisfied for the pain of thy sins in the person of Jesus Christ," Beza's Confess. point 4, art. 12. "What challenges Satan or conscience can make against the believer—hear an answer; I was condemned, I was judged, I was crucified for sin, when my surety Christ was condemned, judged, and crucified for my sins.—I have paid all, because my surety has paid all," Rutherford's Trial and Triumph of Faith, serm. 19, p. 258. "As in Christ, we satisfied, so likewise in Adam we sinned," Flint. Exam. p. 144. This doctrine, and the doctrine of the formal imputation of Christ's righteousness to believers stand and fall together. For if believers be reckoned in law to have satisfied in Christ, then his righteousness, which is the result of his satisfaction, must needs be accounted theirs, but if there be no such law-reckoning, Christ's righteousness cannot be imputed to them otherwise than as to the effects of it, for the judgment of God is always according to truth, ([Rom 2:2](#)). This the Neonomians are aware of, and deny both, reckoning them Antinomian principles as they do many other Protestant doctrines. Hear Mr. Gibbons: "They [viz: the Antinomians] are dangerously mistaken in thinking that a believer is righteous in the sight of God, with the self-same active and passive righteousness wherewith Christ was righteous, as though believers suffered in Christ, and obeyed in Christ." Morn. Exer. Method. sec. 19, p. 423. On the other hand, the Westminster divines teach both as sound and orthodox principles, affirming Christ's righteousness, obedience, and satisfaction, themselves to be imputed to believers, or reckoned their righteousness, obedience, and satisfaction. "Justification is an act of God's free grace, wherein he pardoneth all our sins, and accepteth us as righteous in his sight, only for the righteousness of Christ imputed to us." Short. Cat.—"Only for the perfect obedience and full satisfaction of Christ by God imputed to them," Large. Cat. quest. 70.—"By imputing the obedience and satisfaction of Christ unto them," Westm. Confess. chap. 11, art 1.

all believers did virtually arise. And as Christ at his resurrection was justified, and acquitted from all the sins of all believers, by God his Father, as having now fully satisfied for them, even so were they.¹⁵⁴ And thus you see the obedience of Christ being imputed unto believers by God for their righteousness, it puts them into the same estate and case, touching righteousness unto life before God,¹⁵⁵ wherein they should have been, if they had perfectly performed the perfect obedience of the covenant of works, "Do this and thou shalt live."¹⁵⁶

Chapter II, Section III, 2

154 Virtually justified, not actually, in his justification, even as in his resurrection they did virtually arise. That this is the author's meaning is evident from his own words, when speaking of Neophytus, he says expressly, "He was justified meritoriously in the death and resurrection of Christ, but yet he was not justified actually, till he did actually believe in Christ."

155 So called to distinguish it from inherent righteousness, which is righteousness from life.

156 This is a weighty point, the plain and native result of what is said, namely, that since Jesus Christ hath fully accomplished what was to have been done by man himself for life according to the covenant of works, and that the same is imputed to believers; therefore, believers are in the same state, as to righteousness unto life, that they would have been in if man himself had stood the whole time appointed for his trial. And here is the true ground in the law of the infallible perseverance of the saints; their time of trial for life is over in their Head the second Adam—the prize is won! Hence the just by faith are entitled to the same benefit which Adam by his perfect obedience would have been entitled to. Compare Romans 10:5, "The man which doeth these things shall live," with Habakkuk 2:4, "The just by his faith shall live"; the which is the true reading according to the original. And here, for clearing of the following purpose of the believer's freedom from the law, as it is the covenant of works, let it be considered, that if Adam had stood till the time of his trial had been expired, the covenant of works would indeed from that time have remained his everlasting security for eternal life, like a contract held fulfilled by the one party; but, as in the same case, it could have no longer remained to be the rule of his obedience, namely, in the state of confirmation. The reason is obvious, viz: that the subjecting of him still to the covenant of works, as the rule of his obedience, would have been a reducing him to the state of trial he was in before, and the setting him anew to work for what was already his own, in virtue of his [supposed] fulfilling of that covenant. Nevertheless it is absolutely impossible but the creature, in any state whatsoever, must be bound to and owe obedience unto the Creator; and being still bound to obedience, of necessity he behoved to have had a rule of that obedience; as to which rule, since the covenant of works could not be it, what remains but that the rule of obedience in the state of confirmation, would have been the law of nature, suited to man's state of immutability, improperly so called, and so divested of the form of the covenant of works, namely, its promise of eternal life, and threatening of eternal death, as it is, and will be in heaven, for ever? The application is easy, making always, as to the rule of believers' obedience, suitable reserves for the imperfection of their state, in respect of inherent righteousness; the which imperfection, as it leaves room for promises of fatherly smiles, and threatenings of fatherly chastisements, so it makes them necessary; but these also shall be done away in heaven when their real estate shall be perfect, as their relative state is now.

Believers dead to the law as the covenant of works.

Nom. But, sir, are all believers dead to the law, and the law dead to them, say you?

Evan. Believe it, as the law is the covenant of works, all true believers are dead unto it, and it is dead unto them;¹⁵⁷ for, they being incorporated into Christ, what the law or covenant of works did to him, it did the same to them; so that when Christ hanged on the cross, all believers, after a sort, hanged there with him. And therefore the apostle Paul having said, (Gal 2:19), "I through the law am dead to the law," adds in the next verse, "I am crucified with Christ"; which words the apostle brings as an argument to prove that he was dead to the law, for the law had crucified him with Christ. Upon which text, Luther on the Galatians, [p. 81,] says, "I likewise am crucified and dead to the law, forasmuch as I am crucified and dead with Christ." And again, "I believing in Christ, am also crucified with Christ." In like manner, the apostle says to the believing Romans, "So ye, my brethren, are dead also to the law by the body of Christ," (Rom 7:4). Now, by the body of Christ, is meant the passion of Christ upon the cross, or, which is all one, the sufferings of Christ in his human nature. And, therefore, certainly we may conclude with godly Tindal on the text, that all such are dead concerning the law, as are by faith crucified with Christ.

Nom. But, I pray you, sir, how do you prove that the law is dead to a believer?

Evan. Why, as I conceive, the apostle affirms it, (Rom 7:1-6).

Nom. Surely sir, you do mistake; for I remember the words of the first verse are, "how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth"; and the words of the sixth verse are, "but now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held," &c.

Evan. I know right well, that in our last translation the words are so rendered; but the learned Tindal renders it thus: "Remember ye not, brethren, that the law hath dominion over a man as long as it endureth?" And Bishop Hall paraphrases upon it thus, "Know ye not, brethren, that the Mosaical law hath dominion over a man that is subject unto it, so long as the said law is in force?" So likewise Origen, Ambrose, and Erasmus, do all agree, that, by these words, while "he" or "it" liveth, we are to understand, as long as the law remaineth. And Peter Martyr is of opinion, that these words, while "he" or "it" liveth, are differently referred, either to the law, or to the man; for, says he, "the man is said to be dead," (verse 4), "and the law is said to be dead," (verse 6). Even so because the word "he" or "it" mentioned verse 1, signified both sexes in the Greek, Chrysostom thinks, that the death both of the law and the man is insinuated. And Theophylact, Erasmus, Bucer, and Calvin, do all understand the sixth verse, of the law being dead. And as the death of a believer to the law was accomplished by the death of Christ, even so also was the law's death to him;

157 (Rom 7:4), "Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law."—(Gal 2:19), "I through the law am dead to the law." And this, according to the nature of correlates, concludes the law, as it is that covenant of works, to be dead also to believers. (Col 2:14), "Nailing it to his cross."

as Mr. Fox, in his sermon of Christ crucified, testifies, saying, "Here have we upon one cross two crucifixes, two of the most excellent potentates that ever were, the Son of God and the law of God, wrestling together about man's salvation—both cast down and both slain upon one cross; howbeit, not after a like sort. First, the Son of God was cast down, and took the fall, not for any weakness in himself, but was content to take it for our victory. By this fall, the law of God, in casting him down was caught in his own trap, and so was fast nailed hand and foot to the cross, according as we read in Paul's words," (Col 2:14). And so Luther on the Galatians, [p. 184,] speaking to the same point, says, "This was a wonderful combat, where the law, being a creature, giveth such an assault to his Creator, in practising his whole tyranny upon the Son of God. Now, therefore, because the law did so horribly and cursedly sin against his God, it is accused and arraigned, and, as a thief and cursed murderer of the Son of God, loses all its right, and deserves to be condemned. The law, therefore, is bound, dead, and crucified to me. It is not only overcome, condemned, and slain unto Christ, but also to me, believing in him unto whom he hath freely given his victory."¹⁵⁸ Now then, al-

158 This is cited from Luther on the Epistle to the Galatians, according to the English translation, and is to be found there, fol. 184, p. 1, 2, fol. 185. p. 1, fol. 82, p. 1. His own words from the Latin original, after he had lectured that epistle a second time, as I find them in my copy, printed at Frankfort, 1563, are here subjoined. "Hoc profecto mirabile duellum est, ubi, lex, creatura cum Creatore sic concreditur, et prater omne jus, omnem tyrannidem suam in Filio Dei exercet. quam in nobis filiis irae exercuit," Luth. Comment. in Galatians 4:5, p. 598. "Ideo lex, tanquam latro et sacrilegus homicida Filii Dei, amittit jus, et meretur damnari," Ibid. p. 600. "Ergo lex est mihi surda, ligata, mortua et crucifixa," Ibid. cap. 2:20, p. 280. "Conscientia apprehendens hoc apostoli verbum, Christus a lege nos redemit—sancta quadam superbia insultat legi, dicens—nunc in posterum non solum Christo victa et strangulata es, sed etiam mihi credenti in eum, cui donavit hanc victoriam," page 600. That great man of God, a third Elias, and a second Paul, [if I may venture the expression,] though he was no inspired teacher, was endued with a great measure of the spirit of them both, being raised up of God for the extraordinary work of the Reformation of religion from Popery, while all the world wondered after the Beast. The lively savour he had of the truths of the gospel in his own soul, and the fervour of his spirit in delivering them, did indeed carry him as far from the modern politeness of expression, as the admiration and affectation of this last are likely to carry us off from the former. What he designed by all this triumph of faith is summed up in a few words, immediately following these last cited: "This, the law, [viz: as it is the covenant of works,] is gone for ever as to us, providing we abide in Christ." This he chose to express in such figurative terms, that that great gospel truth might be the more impressed on his own heart, and the hearts of his scholars, being prompted thereto by his experience of the necessity, and withal of the difficulty of applying it by faith to his own case, in his frequent deep soul exercises and conflicts of conscience. "Therefore," says he, "feeling thy terrors and threatenings, O law! I dip my conscience over head and ears, into the wounds, blood, death, resurrection, and victory of Christ; besides him I will see and hear nothing at all. This faith is our victory, whereby we overcome the terrors of the law, sin, death, and all evils, but not without a great conflict," Ibid. p. 597. And speaking on the same subject elsewhere, he has these remarkable words, "It is easy to speak these things, but happy he that

though according to the apostle's intimation, ([Rom 7](#) at the beginning,) the covenant of

could know them aright in the conflict of conscience." Comment. on Galatians 2:19, p. 259. Now, to turn outward the wrong side of the picture of his discourse, to make it false, horrid, profane, and blasphemous, is hard. At this rate, many Scripture texts must suffer, not to speak of approved human writers. I instance only that of Elias, (1 Kings 18:27), "He [Baal] is a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is on a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked." Yet I compare not Luther's commentary to the inspired writing; only where the holy Scripture goes before, one would think he might be allowed to follow. Here is an irony, a rhetorical figure, and there is a prosopopeia, or feigning of a person, another rhetorical figure; and the learned and holy man tells us withal, that Paul used it before him on the same subject, representing the law "as a most potent personage, who condemned and killed Christ, whom he [having overcome death] did in the like manner conquer, condemn, and kill"; for which he cites Ephesians 2 and 4, epistles to the Romans, Corinthians, Colossians, p. 599. Now, albeit the law, as it is the covenant of works, not being a person indeed, but a most holy law of God, was incapable of real arraignment, sin, theft, or murder: yet one being allowed to speak figuratively of it, as such a person before mentioned; and finding the Spirit of God to teach that it was crucified, Jesus Christ "nailing it to his cross," (Col 2:14); what impiety—what blasphemy is there in assigning crimes to it for which it was crucified—crimes of the same nature with its crucifixion, that is, not really and literally so, but figuratively only? And the crucifying of a person, as it presupposeth his arraignment, accusation, and condemnation, so it implies his binding and death; all which the decency of the parable requires. And the same decency requiring the rhetorical feigning of crimes as the causes of that crucifixion, they could be no other but these that are assigned; forasmuch as Jesus Christ is here considered, not as a sinner by imputation, but as absolutely without guilt, though in the meantime the sins of all the elect were really imputed to him, the which in reality justified the holy law's procedure against him. Moreover, upon the crucifixion, it may be remembered how the apostle proves Christ to have been "made a curse for us"; for, says he, it is written, "Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree," (Gal 3:13); the which if any should apply to the law, as the covenant of works, in a figurative manner, as its crucifixion must be understood, it could import no more by reason of the nature of the thing, than an utter abolition of it with respect to believers, which is a great gospel truth. And here one may call to mind the Scripture phrases, (Rom 7:5), "The motions of sins which were by the law";—(8:2), "The law of sin and death":—"The covenant of works, called the law of sin and death," Confess. p. 382, fig. 3; "The strength of sin is the law," (1 Cor 15:56). After all, for my part, I would neither use some of these expressions of Luther's, nor dare I so much as in my heart condemn them in him: the reason is one; because of the want of that measure of the influences of grace which I conceive he had when he uttered these words. And the same I would say of the several expressions of the great Rutherford, and of many eminent ministers, in their day signally countenanced of God in their administrations, Hear Luther himself, in his preface to that book, page [mihi] 10, "These our thoughts," says he, "on this epistle do come forth, not so much against those, [viz: the church's enemies,] as for the sake of our own, [viz: her friends,] who will either thank me for my diligence, or will pardon my weakness and rashness." It is a pity the just expectation of one, whose name will be in honour in the church of Christ, while the memory of the Reformation from Popery is kept up, should be frustrated.

works, and man by nature, be mutually engaged to each other, so long as they both live; yet if, when the wife be dead the husband be free, then much more when he is dead also.

Nom. But, sir, what are we to understand by this double death, or wherein does this freedom from the law consist?

Evan. Death is nothing else but a dissolution, or untying of a compound, or a separation between matter and form; and, therefore, when the soul and body of man are separated, we say he is dead; so that by this double death, we are to understand nothing else, but that the bargain or covenant, which was made between God and man at first, is dissolved or untied; or that the matter and form of the covenant of works is separated to a believer. So that the law of the ten commandments neither promises eternal life nor threatens eternal death to a believer, upon condition of his obedience or disobedience to it:¹⁵⁹ and so shall you obtain forgiveness for eternal life, or fear eternal death upon any such terms.¹⁶⁰ No; we may assure

159 The law of the ten commandments given to Adam, as the covenant of works, promised eternal life, upon condition of obedience, and threatened eternal death in case of disobedience; and this was it that made it the covenant of works. Now, this covenant frame of the law of the ten commandments being dissolved as to believers, it can no more promise nor threaten them at any rate. The Scripture indeed testifies, that "godliness hath the promise, not only of the life that now is, but also of that which is to come," (1 Tim 4:8), there being an infallible connection between godliness and the glorious life in heaven established by promise in the covenant of grace; but in the meantime, it is the obedience and satisfaction of Christ apprehended by faith, and not our godliness, that is the condition upon which that life is promised, and upon which a real Christian in a dying hour will venture to plead for a share in that life. It is likewise certain that not only are unbelievers, in virtue of the covenant of works which they remain under, liable to eternal death as the just reward of sin, but there is by that covenant a twofold connection established, the one betwixt a state of unbelief, unregeneracy, impenitency, and unholiness, and eternal death; the other, betwixt acts of disobedience and eternal death. The former is absolutely indissoluble, and cannot but eternally remain; so that whosoever are in that state of sin, while they are in it they must needs be in a state of death, bound over to the wrath of God by virtue of the threatening of the law; but then it is impossible that believers in Christ can be in that state of sin. So these and the like sentences, "He that believeth not shall be damned," (Mark 16:16).—"Except ye repent ye shall all likewise perish," (Luke 13:3).—"If ye live after the flesh ye shall die," (Rom 8:13); do indeed bind over unbelievers to eternal death; but they do no otherwise concern believers than as they set before them a certain connection of two events, neither of which can ever be found in their case; and yet the serious consideration of them is of great and manifold use to believers, as a serious view of every part of the covenant of works is, particularly to move them to grow up more and more into Christ, and to make their calling and election sure. As to the latter connection, viz: betwixt acts of disobedience and eternal death, it is dissoluble, and in the case of the believer, actually dissolved; so that none have warrant to say to a believer, If thou sin, thou shalt die eternally; forasmuch as the threatening of eternal death, as to the believer, being already satisfied in the satisfaction of Christ, by faith apprehended and imputed of God to him, it cannot be renewed on him, more than one debt can be twice charged, namely, for double payment.

160 But on the having, or wanting of a saving interest in Christ.

ourselves, that "whatsoever the law saith," on any such terms, it "saith to them who are under the law," (Rom 3:19); but believers "are not under the law, but under grace," (Rom 6:14), and so have escaped eternal death, and obtained eternal life, only by faith in Jesus Christ;¹⁶¹ "for by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which they could not be justified by the law of Moses," (Acts 13:39)—"For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life," (John 3:16).

And this is that covenant of grace, which, as I told you, was made with the fathers by way of promise, and so but darkly; but now the fullness of time being come, it was more fully opened and promulgated.

Ant. Well, sir, you have made it evident and plain, that Christ hath delivered all believers from the law, as it is the covenant of works; and that therefore they have nothing at all to do with it.

Evan. No, indeed; none of Christ's are to have anything to do with the covenant of works, but Christ only. For although in the making of the covenant of works at first, God was one party, and man another, yet, in making it the second time, God was on both sides:—God, simply considered in his essence, was the party opposed to man; and God, the second person, having taken upon him to be incarnate, and to work man's redemption, was

161 This is a full proof of the whole matter. For how can the law of the ten commandments promise eternal life, or threaten eternal death, upon condition of obedience or disobedience, to those who have already escaped eternal death, and obtained eternal life by faith in Christ? The words which the Holy Ghost teaches, are so far from restraining the notion of eternal life to glorification, and of eternal death to the misery of the damned in hell, that they declare the soul upon its union with Christ to be as really possessed of eternal life as the saints in heaven are; and without that state of union, to be as really under death, and the wrath of God, as the damned in hell are, though not in that measure. [The term "eternal death" is not, as far as I remember, used in Scripture.] And this agreeable to the nature of things; for as there is no medium betwixt life and death in a subject capable of either, so it is evident, the life communicated to the soul, in its union with Christ, the quickening Head, can never be extinguished for the ages of eternity, (John 14:19); and the sinner's death under the guilt and power of sin, is in its own nature eternal, and can never end but by a work of Almighty power, which raiseth the dead, and calleth things that are not, to be as if they were. (1 Thess 1:10), "Jesus which delivered us from the wrath to come."—(1 John 3:14), "We know that we have passed from death unto life."—(John 3:36), "He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life; and he that believeth not on the Son, shall not see life, but the wrath of God abideth on him."—(5:24), "He that believeth, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation, but is passed from death unto life."—(6:47), "He that believeth on me hath everlasting life."— (verse 54), "Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life."— (1 John 5:12,13), "He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God, that ye may know that ye have eternal life."—See Romans 8:1; John 3:16-18, and 17:3.

on man's side, and takes part with man, that he may reconcile him to God, by bearing man's sins, and satisfying God's justice for them. And Christ paid God¹⁶² till he said he had enough; he was fully satisfied, fully contented, ([Matt 3:17](#)), "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased." Yea, God the Father was well pleased, and fully satisfied from all eternity, by virtue of that covenant that was made betwixt them. And thereupon all Christ's people were given to him in their election. ([Eph 1:4](#)) "Thine they were,"¹⁶³ says Christ, "and thou gavest them me," ([John 17:6](#)).

And again, says he, "The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hands," ([John 3:35](#)); that is, he hath entrusted him with the economic and actual administration of that power in the Church, which originally belonged unto himself. And hence it is that Christ also says, "The Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son," ([John 5:22](#)) So that all the covenant that believers are to have regard to, for life and salvation, is the free and gracious covenant that is betwixt Christ [or God in Christ] and them.¹⁶⁴ And in this covenant there is not any condition or law to be performed on man's

162 All the demands of the covenant of works on the elect world.

163 That he, taking on their nature, might answer the demands of the covenant of works for them, ([Eph 1:4](#)), "According as he has chosen us in him." We are said to be chosen in Christ, not that Christ is the cause of election, but that electing love, flowing immediately from God to all the objects of it, the Father did, in one and the same decree of election, choose the head and the members of the happy body; yet Christ the head first, [in order of nature,] then all those who make up his body, who were thereby given to him, to be redeemed and saved, by his obedience and death; the which, being by him accepted, he, as Elect-Mediator and Head of elect-men, had full power and furniture for the work made over to him. And thus may we conceive the second covenant to have been concluded, agreeably to the Scripture account of that mystery. This, the author says, was done thereupon, not upon the Father's being well pleased and fully satisfied, by virtue of the covenant made; the which is the effect of the covenant, whereas this is one of the transactions or parts of the covenant, as all the following words brought to illustrate it do plainly carry it; but upon God the Son being on the other side in making of the second covenant, the which is the principal purpose in this paragraph, the explication whereof was interrupted by the adding of a sentence concerning the execution and effect of the glorious contrivance. In making of the second covenant, the second person of the ever blessed Trinity, considered simply as such, is one of the parties. Thereupon, in the decree of election, designing, as is said, both head and members, he is chosen Mediator and Head of the election, to be their incarnate Redeemer; the which headship accepted, he, as Mediator and Head of the election, took upon him to be incarnate, and in their nature to satisfy the demands of the covenant of works for them, ([Isa 42:1](#), [Eph 1:4](#), [Psa 40:6](#)), *Westm. Confess. Chap. 8, art. 1*; "It pleased God in his eternal purpose, to choose and ordain the Lord Jesus, his only begotten Son, to be the Mediator between God and man—the Head and Saviour of his church—unto whom he did, from all eternity, give a people to be his seed, and to be by him in time redeemed," &c. *Chap 3, art. 5*; "Those of mankind that are predestinated unto life—God hath chosen in Christ unto everlasting glory, out of his mere free grace and love."

164 That is, the covenant of grace only, not the covenant of works.

part, by himself;¹⁶⁵ no, there is no more for him to do, but only to know and believe that Christ hath done all for him.¹⁶⁶ Wherefore my dear Neophytus, to turn my speech particu-

165 Namely, for life and salvation; the same being already performed by Jesus Christ; he, having in the second covenant undertaken to satisfy all the demands of the covenant of works, did do all that was to be done or wrought for our life and salvation. And if it had not been so, life and salvation had remained eternally without our reach; for how is it possible we should perform, do, or work, until we get life and salvation? what condition or law are we fit for performing of, while we are dead, and not saved from, but lying under sin, the wrath and curse of God? See the following note.

166 Namely, all that was to be done for life and salvation. And neither repentance, nor sincere [imperfect] obedience, nay, nor yet believing itself, is of that sort: though all of these are indispensably necessary in subjects capable of them. This expression bears a kind of imitation, usual in conversation, and used by our blessed Saviour on this subject. (John 6:28,29), "Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might WORK the works of God? Jesus answered and said unto them, This is THE WORK of God, that ye believe." The design of it plainly is, to confront the humour that is naturally in all men, for doing and working for life and salvation, when once they begin to lay these things to heart; there is no more, says the author, for him to do, but only to know and believe that Christ hath DONE all for him; and therefore the expression is not to be strained besides its scope. However, this is true faith, according to the Scripture, whether all saving faith be such a knowledge and believing or not; and that knowledge and believing are capable of degrees of certainty, and may be mixed with doubting, without overturning the reality of them. (Isa 53:11), "By his knowledge shall my righteous Servant justify many."—(John 17:3), "This is eternal life, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom thou hast sent."—(Gal 2:20), "I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me."—(Rom 10:9), "If thou shalt believe in thine heart, that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved." To believe that God hath raised him from the dead is to believe that he has perfected the work, and done all that was to be done for life and salvation to sinners: but is this enough to constitute saving faith? Surely it is not; for devils may believe that: therefore, it must be believed with particular application to oneself, intimated in the phrase, "believing in thine heart"; and this is what devils and reprobates never reach unto; howbeit these last may pretend to know and believe, that Christ is raised from the dead for them, and so hath done all for them, even as they also may pretend to receive and rest on him alone for salvation. But in all this, one who truly believes may yet have ground to say with tears, "Lord, I believe! help thou mine unbelief," (Mark 9:24). Nevertheless, under this covenant there is much to do; a law to be performed and obeyed, though not for life and salvation but from life and salvation received; even the law of the ten commandments in the full extent thereof, as the author doth at large expressly teach, in its proper place, in this and the second part. This is the good old way, [according to the Scriptures, (Acts 16:30,31, Matt 11:28,29, Titus 2:11,12),] if the famous Mr. John Davidson understood the Protestant doctrine, "Q. Then the salvation of man," says he, "is so fully wrought and perfectly accomplished by Christ in his own person, that nothing is left to be done or wrought by us in our persons, to be any cause of the least part thereof? A. That is most certain." Mr. John Davidson's Catechism, Edin. edit. 1708, p. 15. "So we are perfectly saved by the works which Christ did for us in his own person, and no ways by the good works which he works in us, with and after faith. [Marg. Here is the main point and ground of our disagreement with the Papists.]

larly to you, [because I see you are in heaviness,] I beseech you to be persuaded that here you are to work nothing, here you are to do nothing, here you are to render nothing unto God, but only to receive the treasure, which is Jesus Christ, and apprehend him in your heart by faith, although you be never so great a sinner;¹⁶⁷ and so shall you obtain forgiveness of sins, righteousness, and eternal happiness; not as an agent but as a patient, not by doing, but by receiving.¹⁶⁸ Nothing here comes betwixt but faith only, apprehending Christ in the promise.¹⁶⁹ this, then, is perfect righteousness, to hear nothing, to know nothing, to do nothing of the law of works; but only to know and believe that Jesus Christ is now gone to the Father, and sitteth at his right hand, not as a judge, but is made unto you of God, wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption.¹⁷⁰ Wherefore, as Paul and Silas said to the jailer, so say I unto you, "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved"; that is, be verily persuaded in your heart that Jesus Christ is yours, and that you shall have life and salvation by him; that whatsoever Christ did for the redemption of mankind, he did it for you.¹⁷¹

Rests, then, anything for us to do after that we are perfectly justified in God's sight by faith in Christ? Disciple. Yes, very much; albeit no ways to merit salvation; but only to witness, by the effects of thankfulness, that we ARE truly SAVED." Ibid. p. 46,48,49.

167 See the two foregoing notes. And hear another passage from the same book whence this is taken, namely, the English translation of Luther's Commentary on the Epistle to the Galatians, fol. 75: "Good works ought to be done; the example of Christ is to be followed—Well, all these things will I gladly do. What then followeth? Thou shalt then be saved, and obtain everlasting life. Nay, not so. I grant, indeed, that I ought to do good works, patiently to suffer troubles and afflictions, and to shed my blood also, if need be, for Christ's cause; but yet am I not justified, neither do I OBTAIN SALVATION THEREBY."

168 This is the style of the same Luther, who useth to distinguish betwixt active and passive righteousness, i.e., the righteousness of the law, and the righteousness of faith; agreeably to Romans 4:5: "But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness."

169 The passage at more length is this: "The marriage is made up without all pomp and solemnity: that is to say, nothing at all comes between; no law nor work is here required. Here is nothing else but the Father promising, and I receiving; but these things without experience and practice, cannot be understood." Luther, ubi sup., fol. 194.

170 These words also are Luther's, in his argument on the Epistle to the Galatians, p. 24 of the Latin copy, and fol. 7 of the translation; but what our author reads, "Nothing of the law of works," is, in Luther's own words, "Nothing of the law, or of works"; the sense is the same. What concerns the assurance in the nature of faith, which these words seem to bear, we will meet with anon.

171 In this definition of saving faith, there is the general nature or kind of it, viz: a real persuasion, agreeing to all sorts of faith, divine and human,—"Be verily persuaded"; the more special nature of it, an appropriating persuasion, or special application to oneself, agreeing to a convinced sinner's faith or belief of the law's curse, (Gal 3:10), as well as to it.—"Be verily persuaded in your hearts"; thus, (Rom 10:9), "If thou shalt believe in thine

heart that God, &c. thou shalt be saved": and, finally, the most special nature of it, whereby it is distinguished from all other, namely, an appropriating persuasion of Christ being yours, &c. And as one's believing in one's heart, or appropriating persuasion of the dreadful tidings of the law, imports not only an assent to them as true, but a horror of them as evil; so believing in the heart, or an appropriating persuasion of the glad tidings of the gospel, bears not only an assent to them as true, but a relish of them as good.

The parts of this appropriating persuasion, according to our author, are, 1. "That Jesus Christ is yours," viz: by the deed of gift and grant made to mankind lost, or [which is the same thing in other words] by the authentic gospel offer, in the Lord's own word; the which offer is the foundation of faith, and the ground and warrant of the ministerial offer, without which it could avail nothing. That this is the meaning, appears from the answer to the question immediately following, touching the warrant to believe. By this offer or deed of gift and grant, Christ is ours before we believe; not that we have a saving interest in him, or are in a state of grace, but that we have a common interest in him, and the common salvation, which fallen angels have not, ([Jude 3](#)); so that it is lawful and warrantable for us, not for them, to take possession of Christ and his salvation. Even as when one presents a piece of gold to a poor man saying, "Take it, it is yours"; the offer makes the piece really his in the sense and to the effect before declared; nevertheless, while the poor man does not accept or receive it; whether apprehending the offer too great to be real, or that he has no liking of the necessary consequents of the accepting; it is not his in possession, nor hath he the benefit of it; but, on the contrary, must starve for it all, and that so much the more miserably, that he hath slighted the offer and refused the gift. So this act of faith is nothing else but to "believe God," ([1 John 5:10](#)); "to believe the Son," ([John 3:36](#)); "to believe the report" concerning Christ, ([Isa 53:1](#)); or "to believe the gospel," ([Mark 1:15](#)); not as devils believe the same, knowing Christ to be Jesus, a Saviour, but not their Saviour, but with an appropriating persuasion, or special application believing him to be our Saviour. Now what this gospel report, record, or testimony of God, to be believed by all, is, the inspired penman expressly declares, "This is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life; and this life is in his Son," ([1 John 5:11](#)). The giving here mentioned, is not giving in possession in greater or lesser measure, but giving by way of grant, whereupon one may take possession. And the party to whom, is not the election only, but mankind lost. For this record is the gospel, the foundation of faith, and warrant to all, to believe in the Son of God, and lay hold on eternal life in him; but that God hath given eternal life to the elect, can be no such foundation nor warrant: for that a gift is made to certain select men, can never be a foundation or warrant for all men to accept and take it. The great sin of unbelief lies in not believing this record or testimony, and so making God a liar: "He that believeth not God, hath made him a liar, because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. And this is the record," &c. ([1 John 5:10,11](#)). On the other hand, "He that hath received his testimony, hath set to his seal that God is true," ([John 3:33](#)). But the great sin of unbelief lies, not in not believing that God hath given eternal life to the elect; for the most desperate unbelievers, such as Judas and Spira, believe that, and the belief of it adds to their anguish and torment of spirit; yet they do not set to their seal that God is true; but, on the contrary, they make God a liar, in not believing that to lost mankind, and to themselves in particular, God hath given eternal life in the way of grant, so as they, as well as others, are warranted and welcome to take possession of it, so fleeing in the face of God's record and testimony in the gospel, ([Isa 9:6](#), [John 3:16](#), [Acts 4:12](#), [Prov 8:4](#), [Rev 22:17](#)). In believing of this, not in believing of the former, lies the difficulty, in the agonies of conscience; the which, nevertheless, till one do in greater or lesser measure surmount, one can never believe on

Christ, receive and rest upon him for salvation. The truth is, the receiving of Christ doth necessarily presuppose this giving of him. There may, indeed, be a giving where there is no receiving, for a gift may be refused; and there may be a taking where there is no giving, the which is a presumptuous action without warrant; but there can be no place for receiving of Christ where there is not a giving of him before. "In the matter of faith, [says Rollock, Lect. 10 on 2 Thess p. 126,] there are two things: first there is a giver, and next there is a receiver. God gives, and the soul receives." The Scripture is express to this purpose: "A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven," ([John 3:27](#)).

2. "And that you shall have life and salvation by him"; namely, a life of holiness, as well as of happiness,—salvation from sin as well as from wrath,—not in heaven only, but begun here and completed hereafter. That this is the author's notion of life and salvation agreeably to the Scripture, we have had sufficient evidence already, and will find more in our progress. Wherefore this persuasion of faith is inconsistent with an unwillingness to part with sin, a bent or purpose of heart to continue in sin, even as receiving and resting on Christ for salvation is. One finds it expressed almost in so many words: ([Acts 15:11](#)), "We believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved." It is fitly placed after the former, for it cannot go before it, but follows upon it. The former is a believing of God, or believing the Son: this is a believing on the Son, and so is the same with receiving of Christ, as that receiving is explained; ([John 1:12](#)), "But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name." It doth also evidently bear the soul's resting on Christ for salvation; for it is not possible to conceive a soul resting on Christ for salvation, without a persuasion that it shall have life and salvation by him; namely, a persuasion which is of the same measure and degree as the resting is. And thus it appears, that there can be no saving faith without this persuasion in greater or lesser measure. But withal, it is to be remembered, as to what concerns the habit, actings, exercise, strength, weakness, and intermitting of the exercise of saving faith, the same is to be said of this persuasion in all points.

3. "That whatsoever Christ did for the redemption of mankind, he did it for you."—"I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me," ([Gal 2:20](#)). This comes in the last place; and I think none will question, but whosoever believes in the manner before explained, may and ought to believe this, in this order. And it is believed, if not explicitly, yet virtually, by all who receive and rest on Christ for salvation.

From what is said, it appears that this definition of faith is the same, for substance and matter, though in different words, with that of the Shorter Catechism, which defines it, by "receiving and resting upon Christ alone for salvation, as he is offered to us in the gospel." In which, though the offer to us is mentioned last, yet it is evident it is to be believed first.

Object. But the author's definition makes assurance to be of the essence of faith?

Answ. Be it so; however, he uses not the word assurance or assured in his definition; nor will anything contained in it amount to the idea now commonly affixed to that word, or to what is now in our days commonly understood by assurance. And, (1.) He doth not here teach that assurance of faith whereby believers are certainly assured that they are in the state of grace, the which is founded upon the evidence of grace, of which kind of assurance the Westminster Confession expressly treats, chap. 18, art. 1-3; but an assurance which is in faith, in the direct acts thereof, founded upon the word allenarly, ([Mark 16:15,16](#), [John 3:16](#)); and this is nothing else but a fiducial appropriating persuasion. (2.) He doth not determine this assurance or persuasion to be full, or to exclude doubting: he says not, be fully persuaded, but, be verily persuaded, which speaks only the reality of the persuasion,

and doth not at all concern the degree of it. And it is manifest, from his distinguishing between faith of adherence, and faith of evidence, [p. 99,] that, according to him, saving faith may be without evidence. And so one may have this assurance or persuasion, and yet not know assuredly that he hath it, but need marks to discover it by; for though a man cannot but be conscious of an act of his own soul as to the substance of the act, yet he may be in the dark as to the specific nature of it, than which nothing is more ordinary among serious Christians. And thus, as a real saint is conscious of his own heart's moving in affection towards God, yet sometimes doth not assuredly know it to be the true love of God in him, but fears it to be an hypocritical flash of affection; so he may be conscious of his persuasion, and yet doubt if it is the true persuasion of faith, and not that of the hypocrite. This notion of assurance, or persuasion in faith, is so agreeable to the nature of the thing called believing, and to the style of the holy Scripture, that sometimes where the original text reads faith or believing, we read, assurance, according to the genuine sense of the original phrase; ([Acts 17:31](#)), "Whereof he hath given assurance"; orig. "faith," as is noted in the margin of our Bibles. ([Deut 28:66](#)), "Thou shalt have none assurance of thy life"; orig. "Thou shalt not believe in thy life." This observation shows, that to believe, in the style of the holy Scripture, as well as in the common usage of mankind in all other matters, is to be assured or persuaded, namely, according to the measure of one's believing.

And the doctrine of assurance, or an appropriating persuasion in saving faith, as it is the doctrine of the holy Scripture, ([Rom 10:9](#), [Acts 15:11](#), [Gal 2:20](#)), so it is a Protestant doctrine, taught by Protestant divines against the Papists, and sealed with the blood of martyrs in Popish flames; it is the doctrine of Reformed churches abroad, and the doctrine of the Church of Scotland.

The nature of this work will not allow multiplying of testimonies on all these heads. Upon the first, it shall suffice to adduce the testimony of Essenius, in his *Compendium Theologia*, the system of divinity taught the students in the College of Edinburgh, by Professor Campbell. "There is, therefore," says he, "in saving faith, a special application of gospel benefits. This is proved against the Papists, (1.) From the profession of believers, ([Gal 2:20](#)), 'I live by that faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.'—([Psa 23:1](#)), 'The Lord is my shepherd, I shall not want; in cotes of budding grass he makes me to lie down, &c. Though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will not fear evil; for thou art with me,' &c. And [Job 19:25](#); [Philippians 1:21-23](#); [Romans 8:33-39](#), [10:9,10](#); [2 Corinthians 5:1-6](#), with [2 Corinthians 4:13](#), &c." *Essen. Comp. Theol. chap. 2, sect. 12.* And speaking of the method of faith, he says, it is "4. That according to the promises of the gospel, out of that spiritual desire, the Holy Spirit also bearing witness in us, we acknowledge Christ to be our Saviour, and so receive and apply him, every one to ourselves, apprehending him again, who first apprehended us, ([2 Cor 4:13](#), [Rom 8:16](#), [John 1:12](#), [2 Tim 1:12](#), [Gal 2:20](#), [Phil 3:12](#)). The which is the formal act of saving faith. 5. Furthermore, that we acknowledge ourselves to be in communion with Christ, partakers of all and every one of his benefits. The which is the latter act of saving faith, yet also a proper and elicit act of it. 6. That we observe all these acts above mentioned, and the sincerity of them in us; and THENCE gather, that we are true believers, brought into the state of grace," &c. *Ibid. sect. 21.* Observe here the two kinds of assurance before distinguished.

Peter Brulie, burnt at Tournay, anno 1545, when he was sent for out of prison to be examined, the friars interrogating him before the magistrate, he answered,—"How it is faith that bringeth unto us salvation; that is, when we trust unto God's promises, and believe steadfastly, that for Christ his son's sake our sins are forgiven us." *Sleid. Comment. in English book 16, fol. 217.*

Mr. Patrick Hamilton, burnt at St. Andrews about the year 1527. "Faith," says he, "is a sureness; faith is a sure confidence of things which are hoped for, and a certainty of things which are not seen. The faith of Christ is to believe in him, that is, to believe in his word, and to believe that he will help thee in all thy need, and deliver thee from all evil." Mr. Patrick's Articles, Knox's History, 4 to. p. 9.

For the doctrine of foreign churches on this point, I shall instance only in that of the Church of Holland, and the Reformed Church of France; "Q. What is a sincere faith? A. It is a sure knowledge of God and his promises revealed to us in the gospel, and a hearty confidence that all my sins are forgiven me for Christ's sake." Dutch Brief Compend. of Christian Religion, Vra. 19, bound up with the Dutch Bible.

"Minister. Since we have the foundation upon which the faith is grounded, can we rightly from thence conclude what the true faith is? Child. Yea; namely, a certain and steady knowledge of the love of God towards us, according as, by his gospel, he declares himself to be our Father and Saviour, by the means of Jesus Christ." Catechism of the Reformed Church of France, bound up with the French Bible, Dimanche 18. To obviate a common prejudice, whereby this is taken for an easy effort of fancy and imagination, it will not be amiss to subjoin the question immediately following there.

"M. Can we have it of ourselves, or cometh it from God? C. The Scripture teacheth us that it is a singular gift of the Holy Spirit, and experience also showeth it." Ibid.

Follows the doctrine of the Church of Scotland on this head.

"Regeneration is wrought by the power of the Holy Ghost, working in the hearts of the elect of God an assured faith in the promise of God, revealed to us in his word; by which faith we apprehend Christ Jesus, with the graces and benefits promised in him." Old Confess. art. 3.

"This our faith, and the assurance of the same, proceeds not from flesh and blood, that is to say, from no natural powers within us, but is the inspiration of the Holy Ghost." Ibid. art. 12.

For the better understanding of this, take the words of that eminent servant of Christ, Mr. John Davidson, minister of Salt-Preston, alias Preston-Pans [of whom see the fulfilling of the Scripture, p. 361,] in his Catechism, p. 20, as follows: "And certain it is, that both the enlightening of the mind to acknowledge the truth of the promise of salvation to us in Christ, and the sealing up of the certainty thereof in our hearts and minds, [of the which two parts, as it were, faith consists,] are the works and effects of the Spirit of God, and neither of nature nor art."

The Old Confession above mentioned is, "The Confession of Faith, professed and believed by the Protestants within the realm of Scotland, published by them in Parliament, and by the estates thereof ratified and approved, as wholesome and sound doctrine, grounded upon the infallible truth of God," Knox's Hist. lib. 3. p. 263. It was ratified at Edinburgh, July 17, 1560, Ibid. p. 279. And this is the Confession of our Faith, mentioned and sworn to in the national covenant, framed about twenty years after it.

In the same national covenant, with relation to this particular head of doctrine, we have these words following, viz: "We detest and refuse the usurped authority of that Roman antichrist—his general and doubtful faith." However the general and doubtful faith of the Papists may be clouded, one may, without much ado, draw these two plain conclusions from these words: "1. That since the Popish faith abjured is a doubtful faith, the Protestant faith, sworn to be maintained, is an assured faith, as we heard before from the Old Confession, to which the covenant refers. 2. That since the Popish faith is a general one, the Protestant faith must needs be an

appropriating persuasion, or a faith of special application, which, we heard already from Essenius, the Papists do deny. As for a belief and persuasion of the mercy of God in Christ, and of Christ's ability and willingness to save all that come unto him, as it is altogether general, and hath nothing of appropriation or special application in it, so I doubt if the Papists will refuse it. Sure, the Council of Trent, which fixed and established the abominations of Popery, affirms that not pious man ought to doubt of the mercy of God, of the merit of Christ, nor of the virtue and efficacy of the sacraments." *Concil. Trid. cap. 9.* I hope none will think the council allows impious men to doubt of these; but withal they tell us, "It is not to be affirmed, that no man is absolved from sin and justified, but he who assuredly believes, that he himself is absolved and justified." Here they overturn the assurance and appropriation, or special application of saving faith maintained by the Protestants; and they thunder their anathemas against those who hold these in opposition to their general and doubtful faith. "If any shall say, that justifying faith is nothing else but a confidence of the mercy of God pardoning sins for Christ's sake, or that confidence is it alone by which they are justified, let him be accursed." *Ibid. cap. 13, can. 12.* "If any shall say, that a man is absolved from sin, and justified by that, that he assuredly believes himself to be absolved and justified, let him be accursed." *Ibid. can. 14.*

Moreover, in the national covenant, as it was renewed in the years 1638 and 1639, mention is made of public catechisms, in which the true religion is expressed in the Confession of Faith [there] above written, [i.e., the national covenant, otherwise called the Confession of Faith,] and former Large Confession, [viz: the Old Confession,] is said to be set down. The doctrine on this head, contained in these catechisms, is here subjoined.

"M. Which is the first point? C. To put our whole confidence in God. M. How may that be? C. When we have assured knowledge that he is almighty, and perfectly good. M. And is that sufficient? C. No. M. What is then further required? C. That every one of us be fully assured in his conscience, that he is beloved of God, and that he will be both his Father and Saviour." *Calvin's Cat. used by the Kirk of Scotland, and approved by the First Book of Discipline, quest. 8-12.* This is the catechism of the Reformed Church of France, mentioned before. "M. Since we have the foundation whereupon our faith is builded, we may well gather hereof what is the right faith? C. Yea, verily; that is to say, it is a sure persuasion and steadfast knowledge of God's tender love towards us, according as he hath plainly uttered in his gospel, that he will be both a Father and a Saviour unto us, through the means of Jesus Christ." *Ibid. quest. 111.*

"M. By what means may we attain unto him there? C. By faith, which God's Spirit worketh in our hearts, assuring us of God's promises made to us in his holy Gospel." The manner to examine children before they be admitted to the supper of the Lord, quest. 16. This is called the Little Catechism, Assembly 1592, sess. 10. "Q. What is true faith? A. It is not only a knowledge, by which I do steadfastly assent to all things which God hath revealed unto us in his word; but also an assured affiance, kindled in my heart by the Holy Ghost, by which I rest upon God, making sure account, that forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and life, are bestowed, not only upon others, but also upon me, and that freely by the mercy of God, for the merit and desert of Christ alone." The Palatine Catechism, printed by public authority, for the use of Scotland. This famous Catechism is used in most of the Reformed Churches and schools; particularly in the Reformed Churches of the Netherlands, and is bound up with the Dutch Bible. "As for the Church of Scotland, the Palatine Catechism," says Mr. Wodrow, in the dedication to his History, "was adopted by us, till we had the happiness to join with the venerable Assembly at

Westminster. Then indeed it gave place to the Larger and Shorter Catechisms in the Church: nevertheless it continued to be taught in grammar schools."

"Q. What thing is faith in Christ? A. A sure persuasion that he is the only Saviour of the world, but OURS in special, who believe in him." Craig's Catechism, approved by the General Assembly, 1592.

To these may be added the three following testimonies. "Q. What is faith? A. When I am persuaded that God loves me and all his saints, and freely giveth us Christ, with all his benefits," Summula Catechismi, still annexed to the Rudiments of the Latin tongue, and taught in grammar schools to this day, [1726,] since the Reformation.

"What is thy faith? My sure belief that God both may and will save me in the blood of Jesus Christ, because he is almighty, and has promised so to do," Mr. James Melvil's Catechism, in his Propine of a Pastor to his People, p. 44, published in the year 1598.

"Q. What is this faith, that is the only instrument of this strait conjunction between Christ crucified and us? A. It is the sure persuasion of the heart, that Christ by his death and resurrection hath taken away our sins, and, clothing us with his own righteousness, has thoroughly restored us to the favour of God." Mr. John Davidson's Catechism, p. 46.

In the same national covenant, as it was renewed, 1638 and 1639, is expressed an agreement and resolution to labour to recover the purity of the gospel as it was established and professed before the [there] foresaid novations; the which, in the time of Prelacy, then cast out, had been corrupted by a set of men in Scotland addicted to the faction of Laud, Archbishop of Canterbury. In the year 1640, Mr. Robert Bailly, then minister of Kilwinning, afterwards one of the Commissioners from Scotland to the Westminster Assembly, wrote against that faction, proving them guilty of Popery, Arminianism, &c.: and on the head of Popery, thus represents their doctrine concerning the nature of faith, viz: "That faith is only a bare assent, and requires no application, no personal confidence; and that that personal application is mere presumption, and the fiction of a crazy brain." *Hist. Motuum in Regno Scotia*, p. 517.

Thus, as above declared, stood the doctrine of the Church of Scotland, in this point, in her confessions, and in public catechisms, confirmed by the renewing of the national covenant, when, in the year 1643, it was anew confirmed by the first article of the Solemn League and Covenant, binding to [not the Reformation, but] the preservation of the Reformed Religion in the Church of Scotland, in doctrine, &c., and that before the Westminster Confession, Larger and Shorter Catechisms, were in being.

When the Westminster Confession was received, anno 1647, and the Larger and Shorter Catechisms, anno 1648, the General Assembly did, in their three acts, respectively approving them, expressly declare them to be in nothing contrary to the received doctrine of this Kirk. And put the case they were contrary thereto in any point, they could not in that point be reckoned the judgment of the Church of Scotland, since they were received by her, as in nothing contrary to previous standards of doctrine, to which she stands bound by the covenants aforesaid. But the truth is, the doctrine is the same in them all.

"This faith is different in degrees, weak or strong; growing in many to the attainment of a full assurance." *Westm. Confess*, chap. 14, art. 3. Now, how faith can grow in any to a full assurance, if there be no assurance in the nature of it, I cannot comprehend.

Chapter II, Section III, 3

The warrant to believe in Christ.

Neo. But, sir, hath such a one as I any warrant to believe in Christ?

Evan. I beseech you consider, that God the Father, as he is in his Son Jesus Christ, moved with nothing but with his free love to mankind lost, hath made a deed of gift and grant unto them all, that whosoever of them all shall believe in this his Son, shall not perish, but have eternal life.¹⁷² And hence it was, that Jesus Christ himself said unto his disciples, ([Mark](#)

"Faith justifies a sinner—only as it is an instrument, by which he receiveth and applieth Christ and his righteousness." *Larg. Cat. Q. 73.*—"By faith they receive and apply unto themselves Christ crucified, and all the benefits of his death." *Ibid. Q. 170.*

"Q. When do we by faith receive and apply to ourselves the body of Christ crucified? A. While we are persuaded, that the death and crucifixion of Christ do no less belong to us, than if we ourselves had been crucified for our own sins; now this persuasion is that of true faith." *Sum. Catech.*

"Faith in Jesus Christ is a saving grace, whereby we receive and rest upon him alone for salvation, as he is offered to us in the gospel." *Short. Cat.*

Now, to perceive the entire harmony betwixt this and the old definitions of faith, compare with it, as to the receiving therein mentioned, the definition above cited from the Old Confession, art. 3. viz: "An assured faith in the promise by which they apprehend Christ," &c. Mr. John Davidson joins them thus: "Q. What is faith? A. It is an hearty assurance, that our sins are freely forgiven us in Christ. Or after this manner: It is the hearty receiving of Christ offered in the preaching of the word and sacraments, by the working of the Holy Spirit, for the remission of sins, whereby he becomes one with us, and we one with him, he our head, and we his members." Mr. John Davidson's Catechism, p. 24. As to the resting mentioned in the Westminster definition, compare the definition above cited from the Palatine Catechism, viz: "A sure confidence whereby I rest in God, assuredly concluding, that to me is given forgiveness," &c., quest. 21. See also Larger Catechism, quest. last. "We by faith are emboldened to plead with him that he would, and quietly to rely upon him that he will, fulfil our request; and to testify this our desire and assurance, we say, Amen." In which words, it is manifest, that quietly to rely upon him that he will, &c. [the same with resting on him for, &c.] is assurance in the sense of the Westminster divines.

172 Mr. Culverwell's words, here cited, stand thus at large: "The matter to be believed unto salvation is this, that God the Father, moved by nothing but his free love to mankind lost, hath made a deed of gift and grant of his son Christ Jesus unto mankind, that whosoever of all mankind shall receive his gift by a true and lively faith, he shall not perish, but have everlasting life." Dr. Gouge, in his preface to this treatise of that author, has these remarkable words concerning him, "Never any took such pains to so good purpose, in and about the foundation of faith, as he hath done." This deed of gift and grant, or authentic gospel-offer [of which see the preceding note] is expressed in so many words, (John 3:16), "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that WHOSOEVER believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life." Where the gospel comes, this grant is published, and the ministerial offer made and there is no exception of any of all mankind in the grant. If there was, no ministerial offer of Christ could be warrantably made to the party excepted, more than to the

16:15), "Go and preach the gospel to every creature under heaven":¹⁷³ that is, Go and tell every man without exception, that here is good news for him; Christ is dead for him; and if he will take him, and accept of his righteousness, he shall have him.¹⁷⁴ Therefore, says a

fallen angels; and without question, the publishing and proclaiming of heaven's grant unto any, by way of ministerial offer, pre-supposeth the grant, in the first place, to be made to them: otherwise, it would be of no more value than a crier's offering of the king's pardon to one who is not comprehended in it. This is the good old way of discovering to sinners their warrant to believe in Christ; and it doth indeed bear the sufficiency of the sacrifice of Christ for all, and that Christ crucified is the ordinance of God for salvation unto all mankind, in the use-making of which only they can be saved; but not an universal atonement or redemption. "What is thy faith? My sure belief that God both may and will save me, &c. Tell me the promise whereon thou leanest assuredly? 'Whosoever [says God] will believe in the death of my Son Jesus, shall not perish, but get eternal life.'" Mr. James Melvil's Cat. ubi sup. "He freely OFFERETH unto SINNERS life and salvation by Jesus Christ, requiring of them faith in him, that they may be saved." Mark 16:15,16; John 3:16; Westm. Confess. chap. 7. art. 3. "The visible Church hath the privilege of enjoying OFFERS of grace by Christ to all the members of it in the ministry of the gospel, testifying that WHOSOEVER believes in him shall be saved." Larger Catechism, quest. 63. "This general offer, in substance, is equivalent to a special offer made to every one in particular, as appears by the apostle making use of it, (Acts 16:31). The reason of which offer is given, (John 3:16)." Pract. Use of Sav. Knowledge; Conf. p. 380. The Synod of Dort may be heard without prejudice on this head. "It is the promise of the gospel [say they,] that whosoever believeth in Christ crucified should not perish, but have life everlasting; which promise, together with the injunction of repentance and faith, ought promiscuously, and without distinction, to be declared, and published to all men and people, to whom God in his good pleasure sends the gospel," chap. 2, art. 5. But forasmuch as many, being called by the gospel, do not repent nor believe in Christ, but perish in their infidelity, this comes not to pass for want of, or by any insufficiency of, the sacrifice of Christ offered upon the cross, but by their own default, art. 6.

173 That is, from this deed of gift and grant it was that the ministerial offer was appointed to be made in the most extensive terms.

174 That the reader may have a more clear view of this passage, which is taken from Dr. Preston's Treatise of Faith, I shall transcribe the whole paragraph in which it is found. That eminent divine, speaking of that righteousness by which alone we can be saved, and having shown that it is communicated by gift, says, "But when you hear this righteousness is given, the next question will be, to whom is it given? If it be only given to some, what comfort is this to me? But [which is the ground of all comfort,] it is given to every man,—there is not a man excepted; for which we have the sure word of God, which will not fail. When you have the charter of a king well confirmed, you reckon it a matter of great moment: what is it then when you have the charter of God himself? which you shall evidently see in those two places, (Mark 16:15), 'Go and preach the gospel to every creature under heaven'; What is that? Go and tell every man, without exception that here is good news for him; Christ is dead for him: and if he will take him, and accept of his righteousness, he shall have it; restraint is not; but go tell every man under heaven. The other text is, (Rev 22:17), 'Whosoever will, let him come, and take of the water of life freely.' There is a quicunque vult, whosoever will come [none excepted] may have life, and it

shall cost him nothing. Many other places of Scripture there be to prove the generality of the offer; and having a sure word for it, consider it," p. 7,8. The words "under heaven" are taken from Colossians 1:23. The scope here is the same with that of our author, not to determine concerning the extent of Christ's death, but to discover the warrant sinners have to believe in Christ, namely, that the offer of Christ is general, the deed of gift or grant is to every man. This necessarily supposeth Christ crucified to be the ordinance of God for salvation, to which lost mankind is allowed access, and not fallen angels, for whom there is none provided: even as the city of refuge was the ordinance of God for the safety of the man-slayer, who had killed any person unawares, (Num 35:16); and the brazen serpent for the cure of those bitten by a serpent, (21:8). Therefore he says not, "Tell every man Christ died for him"; but, Tell every man "Christ is dead for him"; that is, for him to come to, and believe on; a Saviour is provided for him; there is a crucified Christ for him, the ordinance of heaven for salvation for lost man, in the use-making of which he may be saved; even as one had said of old, Tell every man that hath slain any person unawares, that the city of refuge is prepared for him, namely, to flee to, that he may be safe; and every one bitten by a serpent, that the brazen serpent is set up on a pole for him, namely, to look unto, that he may be healed. Both these were eminent types of Christ; and upon the latter, the Scripture is full and clear in this very point. (Num 21:8), "And the Lord said unto Moses, make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole; and it shall come to pass, that EVERY ONE that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live."—(John 3:14-16), "And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the son of man be lifted up; that WHOSOEVER believeth on him should not perish but have eternal life." "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that WHOSOEVER," &c. Thus, what [according to Dr. Preston and our author] is to be told every man, is no more than what ministers of the gospel have in commission from their great Master, (Matt 22:4), "Tell them which are bidden, Behold, I have prepared my dinner: my oxen and my fatlings are killed, and all things are ready, come unto the marriage." There is a crucified Saviour, with all saving benefits, for them to come to, feed upon, and partake of freely. See also Luke 2:30,31; Proverbs 9:2-4; Isaiah 25:6. To confirm this to be the true and designed sense of the phrase in question, compare the following three passages, of the same treatise, giving the import of the same text, (Mark 16), "Christ hath provided a righteousness and salvation, that is, his work that he hath done already. Now, if ye will believe, and take him upon these terms that he is offered, you shall be saved. This, I say, belongs to all men. This you have expressed in the gospel in many places: 'If you believe you shall be saved': as it is, (Mark 16), 'Go and preach the gospel to every creature under heaven; he that will believe shall be saved.'" Preston on Faith, p. 32. "You must first have Christ himself, before you can partake of those benefits by him: and that I take to be the meaning of that in Mark 16, 'Go preach the gospel to every creature under heaven; he that believeth and is baptized, shall be saved'; that is, he that will believe, that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh, and that he is offered to mankind for a Saviour, and will be baptized; that will give up himself to him, that will take his mark upon him, shall be saved." Ibid. p. 46. "Go and preach the gospel to every creature; go and tell every man under heaven, that Christ is offered to him, he is freely given to him by God the Father; and there is nothing required of you but that you marry him, nothing but to accept of him." Ibid. p. 75. Thus, it appears, that universal atonement, or redemption, is not taught here, neither by our author. But that the candid reader may be satisfied as to his sentiments touching the question,— "for whom Christ died"? let him weigh these two things: 1. Our author puts a man's being persuaded that Christ died for him in particular, in the definition of saving faith, and that as the last and highest step of it. But Arminians, and other Universalists,

might as well put there a man's being persuaded that he was created, or is preserved by Jesus Christ; since in being persuaded that Christ died for him, he applies no more to himself than what, according to their principles, is common to all mankind, as in the case of creation and preservation. Hear Grotius upon this head: "Some," says he, "have here interpreted faith to be persuasion, whereby a man believes that Jesus died for him in particular, and to purchase salvation all manner of ways for him, or [what with them is the same thing] that he is elected; when, on the contrary, Paul in many places teaches, 'that Christ died for all men'; and such a faith as they talk of, has not in it anything true or profitable." Grotius apud Pol. Synop. Those whom this learned adversary here taxes, are Protestant anti-Arminian divines. Those were they who defined faith by such a persuasion, and not the Universalists. On the contrary, he argues against that definition of faith from the doctrine of universal atonement or redemption. He rejects that definition of it, as in his opinion having nothing in it true, namely, according to the principles of those who gave it, viz: that Christ died, not for all and every man in particular, but for the elect only, and as having nothing in it profitable; that being, according to his principles, the common privilege of all mankind. 2. He teaches plainly throughout the book, that they were the elect, the chosen, or believers, whom Christ represented, and obeyed, and suffered for. See among others, pages 22, 23, 54, 86. I shall repeat only two passages; the one, page 81: "According to that eternal and mutual agreement that was betwixt God the Father and him, he put himself in the room and place of all the faithful." The other in the first sentence of his own preface, viz: "Jesus Christ, the second Adam, did, as a common person, enter into covenant with God his Father for all the elect, [that is to say, all those that have or shall believe on his name,] and for them kept it." What can be more plain than that, in the judgment of our author, they were the elect whom Jesus Christ, the second Adam, entered into covenant with God for; that it was in the elect's room he put himself when he came actually to obey and suffer, and that it was for the elect he kept that covenant, by doing and suffering what was required of him as our Redeemer? As for the description, or character he gives of the elect, viz: that by the elect he understands all that have or shall believe in it, he follows our Lord himself, (John 17:20), "Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me"; and so doing, he is accompanied with orthodox divines. "Thus did the sin of all God's elect, or all true believers, [for of such, and only such, he there, viz: (Isa 53:6), speaks,] meet together upon the head of their common surety, the Lord Christ," Brinsley's Mesites, p. 64. "The Father is well satisfied with the undertakings of the Son, who entered Redeemer and Surety to pay the ransom of believers," Pract. Use of Saving Knowl. tit. 4. "The invisible church is the whole number of the elect that have been, are, or shall be gathered into one, under Christ the head," Larg. Cat. quest. 64. "Christ's church, wherein standeth only remission of sins, purchased by Christ's blood to all them that believe," The Confess. of Faith used in Geneva, approved by the Church of Scotland, sect. 4. sect. ult. But Arminians neither will nor can, in consistency with their principles touching election and the falling away of believers, admit that description or character of the elect, else they are widely mistaken by one of their own, who tells us that, "Upon the consideration of his [viz: Christ's] blood, as shed, he [viz: God] decreed, that all those who should believe in that Redeemer, and persevere in that faith, should, through mercy and grace, by him be made partakers of salvation," Exam. of Tilen. p. 131. "Brought unto faith, and persevere therein; this being the condition required in every one that is to be elected unto eternal life," Ibid. p. 139. Behold the Arminian election: "They do utterly deny that God did destine, by an absolute decree, to give Christ a Mediator only to the elect, and to give faith to them alone," Ibid. p. 149. As for Universalists, not Arminians, "They contend, that the decree of the death of Christ did go before the decree

godly writer, "Forasmuch as the holy Scripture speaketh to all in general, none of us ought to distrust himself, but believe that it doth belong particularly to himself."¹⁷⁵ And to the end, that this point, wherein lies and consists the whole mystery of our holy faith, may be understood the better, let us put the case, that some good and holy king should cause a proclamation to be made through his whole kingdom, by the sound of a trumpet, that all rebels and banished men shall safely return home to their houses: because that, at the suit and desert of some dear friend of theirs, it has pleased the king to pardon them; certainly, none of these rebels ought to doubt, but that he shall obtain true pardon for his rebellion; and so return home, and live under the shadow of that gracious king. Even so, our good King, the Lord of heaven and earth, has, for the obedience and desert of our good brother Jesus Christ, pardoned all our sins,¹⁷⁶ and made a proclamation throughout the whole

of election, and that God, in sending of Christ, had no respect unto some, more than others, but destined Christ for a Saviour to all men alike." This account of their principles is given us by Turretine, loc. 14, q. 14, th. 6. I leave it to the impartial reader to judge of the evident contrariety betwixt this and our author's words above repeated.

175 Namely, the deed of gift and grant, or the offer of Christ in the word, of which our author is all along speaking. And if there be any man to whom it doth not belong particularly, that man hath no warrant to believe on Jesus Christ: and whosoever pretends to believe on him, without believing that the grant or offer belongs to himself particularly, does but act presumptuously, as seeing no warrant he has to believe on Christ, whatever others may have.

176 So far as he hath made the deed of gift and grant, or authentic gospel-offer of the pardon of all our sins, as of all other saving benefits in Christ. Such a thing, among men, is called the king's pardon, though, in the mean time, none have the benefit of it but such as come in upon its being proclaimed, and accept of it; and why may not it be called the King of heaven's pardon? The holy Scripture warrants this manner of expression. "And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life," (1 John 5:11); in which life, without question, the pardon of all our sins is included: "Through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins," (Acts 13:38). The preaching of the gospel is the proclaiming of pardon to condemned sinners. But pardon of sin cannot be preached or proclaimed, unless, in the first place, it be granted, even as the king's pardon must be, before one can proclaim it to the rebels. That this is all that is meant by pardon here, and not a formal personal pardon, is evident from the whole strain of the author's discourse upon it. In the proposal of the simile, whereof this passage is the application, he tells us, that after it hath pleased the king [thus] to pardon the rebels, they ought not to doubt but they shall obtain pardon; and in the following paragraph he brings in Neophytus objecting, that in such a case an earthly king doth indeed intend to pardon all, but the King of heaven doth not so; the which Evangelista in his answer grants. So that, for all this general pardon, the formal personal pardon remains to be obtained by the sinner, namely, by his accepting of the pardon offered. And in the foresaid answer, he expounds the pardon in question, of the Lord's offering pardon generally to all. This, one would think, may well be admitted as the fruit of Christ's obedience and desert, without supposing an universal atonement or redemption. And to restrain it to any set of men whatsoever under heaven, is to restrain the authentic gospel-offer: of which before.

world,¹⁷⁷ that every one of us may safely return to God in Jesus Christ: wherefore I beseech you make no doubt of it, but "draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith," (Heb 10:22).¹⁷⁸

Neo. Oh, but, sir, in this similitude the case is not alike. For when the earthly king sends forth such a proclamation, it may be thought that he indeed intends to pardon all; but it cannot be thought that the King of heaven does so: for do not the Scriptures say, that "some men are ordained before to condemnation"? (Jude 4) And does not Christ himself say, that "many are called, but few are chosen"? (Matt 22:14) and, therefore, it may be, I am one of them that are ordained to condemnation; and, therefore, though I be called, I shall never be chosen, and so shall not be saved.

Evan. I beseech you to consider, that although some men be ordained to condemnation, yet so long as the Lord has concealed their names, and not set a mark of reprobation upon any man in particular, but offers the pardon generally to all, without having any respect either to election or reprobation, surely it is great folly in any man to say, It may be I am not elected, and therefore shall not have benefit by it; and therefore I will not accept of it, nor come in:¹⁷⁹ for it should rather move every man to give diligence "to make his calling and election sure," (2 Peter 1:10), by believing it, for fear we come short of it,¹⁸⁰ according to that of the apostle, "let us, therefore, fear, lest a promise being left us of entering into his

177 (Col 1:23): "The gospel which ye have heard, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven."

178 Make no doubt of the pardon offered, or of the proclamation, bearing, that every one of us may safely return to God in Christ; but thereupon draw near to him in full assurance of faith. That there can be no saving faith, no acceptance with God, where there is any doubting, is what can hardly enter into the head of any sober Christian, if he is not under a grievous temptation, in his own soul's case, nor is it in the least insinuated here. Nevertheless, the doubting mixed with faith is sin, and dishonoureth God, and believers have ground to be humbled for it, and ashamed of it, before the Lord; and therefore the full assurance of faith is duty. The Papists indeed contend earnestly for doubting, and they know very very well, wherefore they so do; for doubting being removed, and the assurance of faith in the promise of the gospel brought into its room, their market is marred, their gain by indulgences, masses, pilgrimages, &c., is gone, and the fire of purgatory extinguished. But, as Protestant divines prove against them, the holy Scripture condemns it, (Matt 14:31), "O thou of little faith! wherefore didst thou doubt?" (Luke 12:29), "Neither be ye of doubtful mind." (1 Tim 2:8), "Lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting."

179 Had the author once dreamt of an universal pardon, otherwise than that God offers the pardon generally to all, all this had been needless; it would have furnished him with a short answer, viz: That God hath pardoned all already.

180 By believing the offered pardon, with particular application to himself; without which one can never accept of it, but will undoubtedly come short of it.

rest, any of us should seem to come short of it," (Heb 4:1). Wherefore, I beseech you, do not you say, It may be I am not elected, and therefore I will not believe in Christ; but rather say, I do believe in Christ, and therefore I am sure I am elected.¹⁸¹ And check your own heart for meddling with God's secrets, and prying into his hidden counsel, and go no more beyond your bounds, as you have done, in this point: for election and reprobation is a secret; and the Scripture tells us, "that secret things belong unto God, but those things that are revealed belong unto us," (Deut 29:29). Now this is God's revealed will, for, indeed, it is his express command, "That you should believe on the name of his Son," (1 John 3:23); and it is his promise, "that if you believe, you shall not perish, but have everlasting life," (John 3:16). Wherefore, you having so good a warrant as God's command, and so great an encouragement as his promise, do your duty;¹⁸² and by the doing thereof you may put it¹⁸³ out of question, and be sure that you are also one of God's elect. Say, then, I beseech you, with a firm faith, The righteousness of Jesus Christ belongs to all that believe, but I believe,¹⁸⁴ and therefore it belongs to me. Yea, say with Paul, "I live by the faith of the Son of God who loved me, and gave himself for me," (Gal 2:20). "He saw in me [says Luther on the text] nothing but wickedness, going astray, and fleeing from him. Yet this good Lord had mercy on me, and of his mere mercy he loved me, yea, so loved me, that he gave himself for me. Who is this me? Even I, wretched and damnable sinner, was so dearly beloved of the Son of God that he gave himself for me."

Oh! print this word "me" in your heart, and apply it to your own self, not doubting but that you are one of those to whom this "me" belongs.¹⁸⁵

Neo. But may such a vile and sinful wretch as I am be persuaded that God commands me to believe, and that he hath made a promise to me?¹⁸⁶

Evan. Why do you make a question, where there is none to be made? "Go," says Christ, "and preach the gospel to every creature under heaven," that is, Go tell every man without exception, whatsoever his sins be, whatsoever his rebellions be, go and tell him these glad

181 Like that man mentioned Mark 9:24, who at once did and said.

182 Believe on the name of Christ.

183 Namely, your believing.

184 This is what is commonly called the reflex act of faith, which presupposes, and here includes the direct act, namely, a man's doing of his duty, in obedience to the command to believe on Christ; by reflecting on which, he may put it out of question that he is a believer, one of God's elect, and one of those for whom Christ died. This passage is taken out of Dr. Preston's Treatise of Faith, p. 8.

185 "This manner of applying," says Luther, "is the very true force and power of faith."

186 He had told him, that for his warrant to believe on Christ, he had God's command, (1 John 3:23). And for his encouragement, God's promise, (John 3:16). Thereupon this question is moved; the particular application to oneself being a matter of no small difficulty in the experience of many who lay salvation to heart.

tidings, that if he will come in, I will accept of him, his sins shall be forgiven him, and he shall be saved; if he will come in and take me, and receive me, I will be his loving husband, and he shall be mine own dear spouse. Let me, therefore, say unto you, in the words of the apostle, "Now, then, I as an ambassador for Christ, as though God did beseech you by me, I pray you, in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled unto God; for he hath made him to be sin for you, who knew no sin, that ye might be made the righteousness of God in him," (2 Cor 5:20,21).

Neo. But do you say, sir, that if I believe I shall be espoused unto Christ?

Evan. Yea, indeed, shall you: for faith coupleth the soul with Christ, even as the spouse with her husband; by which means Christ and the soul are made one: for as, in corporal marriage, man and wife are made one flesh, even so in this spiritual and mystical marriage, Christ and his spouse are made one spirit. And this marriage, of all others, is most perfect, and absolutely accomplished between them; for the marriage between man and wife is but a slender figure of this union; wherefore, I beseech you to believe it, and then you shall be sure to enjoy it.¹⁸⁷

Neo. But, sir, if David said, "Seemeth it to you a light thing to be an earthly king's son-in-law, seeing that I am a poor man and lightly esteemed"? (1 Sam 18:23); then surely I have much more cause to say, Seemeth it a light thing to be a heavenly King's daughter-in-law, seeing that I am such a poor sinful wretch? Surely, sir, I cannot be persuaded to believe it.

Evan. Alas! man, how much are you mistaken! for you look upon God, and upon yourself, with the eye of reason; and so as standing in relation to each other, according to the tenor of the covenant of works: whereas, you being now in the case of justification and reconciliation, you are to look both upon God and upon yourself with the eye of faith; and so standing in relation to each other, according to the tenor of the covenant of grace. For, says the apostle, "God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their sins unto them," (2 Cor 5:19); as if he had said, Because as God stands in relation to man, according to the tenor of the covenant of works, and so out of Christ, he could not, without prejudice to his justice, be reconciled unto them, nor have any thing to do with them, otherwise than in wrath and indignation; therefore to the intent that Justice and Mercy might meet together, and Righteousness and Peace might embrace each other, and so God stand

187 Believe the word of promise, the offer of the spiritual marriage, which is Christ's declared consent to be yours. Believe that it is made to you in particular, and that it shall be made out to you; the which is, to embrace the offer, to receive Christ, as the evangelist teaches, (John 1:12); [which was adverted to before;] so shall you be indeed married or espoused to Christ. Thus the holy Scripture proposes this matter, (Isa 55:3), "Hear and your soul shall live, and I will make an everlasting covenant with you"; to persuade us of the reality of the covenant betwixt God and the believer of his word, "the Father hath made a fourfold gift," &c., Pract. Use of Sav. Knowl. tit.; Warrant to Believer, fig. 7; compare Isaiah 53:1; Hebrews 4:1,2.

in relation to man, according to the tenor of the covenant of grace; he put himself into his Son Jesus Christ, and shrouded himself there, that so he might speak peace to his people, ([Psa 85:8-10](#)). Sweetly, says Luther, "Because the nature of God was otherwise higher than that we are able to attain unto it, therefore hath he humbled himself for us, and taken our nature upon him, and so put himself into Christ. Here he looketh for us, here he will receive us; and he that seeketh him here shall find him."¹⁸⁸ "This," says God the Father, "is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased," ([Matt 3:17](#)); whereupon the same Luther says in another place, "We must not think and persuade ourselves that this voice came from heaven for Christ's own sake, but for our sakes, even as Christ himself says, ([John 12:30](#)), 'This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes.' The truth is, Christ had no need that it should be said unto him, 'This is my beloved Son,' he knew that from all eternity, and that he should still so remain, though these words had not been spoken from heaven; therefore, by these words, God the Father, in Christ his Son, cheers the hearts of poor sinners, and greatly delights them with singular comfort and heavenly sweetness, assuring them, that whosoever is married unto Christ, and so in him by faith, he is as acceptable to God the Father as Christ himself;¹⁸⁹ according to that of the apostle, 'He hath made us acceptable in his beloved,' ([Eph 1:6](#)). Wherefore, if you would be acceptable to God, and be made his dear child, then by faith cleave unto his beloved Son Christ, and hang about his neck, yea, and creep into his bosom; and so shall the love and favour of God be as deeply insinuated into you as it is into Christ himself; and so shall God the Father, together with his beloved Son, wholly possess you, and be possessed of you; and so God, and Christ, and you, shall become one

188 An eminent type of this glorious mystery was that tabernacle so often mentioned in the Old Testament under the name of the tabernacle of the congregation, or rather the tabernacle of meeting, as the original word bears; and the Lord himself seems to give the reason of the name, ([Exo 30:36](#)), "In the tabernacle of the congregation, where I will meet with thee"; or, "in the tabernacle of meeting, where I will be met with by thee."—([33:7](#)), "And it came to pass, that every one which sought the Lord, went out unto the tabernacle of the congregation," or meeting.

189 The acceptation, love, and the favour of God here treated of, do not refer to the real state of believers, but to the relative state, to their justification, reconciliation, and adoption: and so they have no respect to any qualities inherent in them, good or evil, to be increased by the one, or diminished by the other; but they proceed purely upon the righteousness of Christ, which is theirs in virtue of their union with him, and is imputed to them; the which righteousness is the self-same righteousness wherewith Christ, as Mediator and Surety for elect sinners, pleased the Father. And therefore, says one, whom nobody suspects of Antinomianism, "We are as perfectly righteous as Christ the Righteous," citing [1 John 3:7](#): "He that doth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous," [Isaac Ambrose's Media](#), chap. 1, sect. 2, p. 4. This I take to be the true meaning of the passages of our author and Isaac Ambrose, expressed in terms stronger than I would desire to use. There is a danger in expressing concerning God even what is true.

entire thing, according to Christ's prayer, 'that they may be one in us, as thou and I are one,' ([John 17:21](#)).¹⁹⁰ And by this means you may have sufficient ground and warrant to say, [in the matter of reconciliation with God at any time, whensoever you are disputing with yourself, how God is to be found, that justifies and saves sinners,] I know no other God, neither will I know any other God, besides this God, that came down from heaven, and clothed himself with my flesh,¹⁹¹ unto "whom all power is given, both in heaven and in earth," who is my judge; "for the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment to the Son," ([John 5:22](#)). So that Christ may do with me whatsoever he liketh, and determine

190 The original word here rendered "one," indeed signifies "one thing." And it is evident from the text, that believers are united to God as well as to Christ. "Faith is that grace by which we are united to, and made one with, God and Christ," says the author of the Supplement to Poole's Annot. on the place. See 1 John 4:16; 2 Corinthians 4:16, compared with Ephesians 3:17. And whosoever owns Jesus Christ to be one with the Father, must needs grant this, or else deny believers to be united to Christ. This derogates nothing from the prerogative of our Lord Jesus, who is one with the Father; for he is one with him, as the Holy Ghost also is, by the adorable substantial union; but believers are so only by mystical union. Neither does it entrench upon God's supremacy, more than their confessed union with Christ does; who, notwithstanding of believers' union with him, remains to be, with the Father and Holy Spirit, the only supreme, and most high God. "Whosoever, therefore, cleaveth to Christ through faith, he abideth in the favour of God, he also shall be made beloved and acceptable as Christ is, and shall have fellowship with the Father and the Son." Luther's Chosen Sermons, Sermon of the Appearing of Christ, p. 23. "Here I will abide in the arms of Christ, cleaving inseparably about his neck, and creeping into his bosom, whatsoever the law shall say, and my heart shall feel," Ibid. Sermon of the Lost Sheep, p. 81. "Seeing, therefore, that Christ, the beloved Son, being in so great favour with God in all things that he does, is thine; without doubt, thou art in the same favour and love of God that Christ himself is in." And again, "the favour and love of God are insinuated to thee as deeply as to Christ, that now God, together with his beloved Son, does wholly possess thee, and thou hast him again wholly; that so God, Christ, and thou, do become as one certain thing,—that they may be one in us, as thou and I are one, John 17." Ibid. Sermon of the Appearing of Christ, p. 25.

191 Luther, from whom this is taken, in the place quoted by our author, confirms it thus; "For he that is a searcher of God's majesty, shall be overwhelmed of his glory. I know [adds he] by experience, what I say. But these vain spirits, which so deal with God, that they exclude the Mediator, do not believe me." And on Psalm 130, he has these remarkable words, "Ego sepe, et libenter hoc inculco, ut extra Christum, oculos et aures claudatis, et dicatis nullum vos scire Deum nisi qui fuit in gremio Mariae, et suxit ubera ejus": that is, "Often and willingly do I inculcate this, that you should shut your eyes and your ears, and say, you know no God out of Christ, none but him that was in the lap of Mary, and suckled her breasts." He means none out of him. Burroughs on Hosea 3:5, p. 729.

of me according to his own mind; and I am sure he hath said, "he came not to judge the world but to save the world," ([John 12:47](#)). And therefore I do believe that he will save me.¹⁹²

Neo. Indeed, sir, if I were so holy and so righteous as some men are, and had such power over my sins and corruptions as some men have, then I could easily believe it; but, alas! I am so sinful and so unworthy a wretch, that I dare not presume to believe that Christ will accept of me, so as to justify and save me.

Evan. Alas! man, in thus saying, you seem to contradict and gainsay both the apostle Paul, and our Lord Jesus Christ himself; and that against your own soul: for whereas the apostle Paul says, "that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners," ([1 Tim 1:15](#)), and doth justify the ungodly, ([Rom 4:5](#)), why, you seem to hold, and do in effect say, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save the righteous, and to justify the godly. And whereas our Saviour says, the whole need not a physician, but the sick; and that he came not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance, ([Matt 9:12](#)); why, you seem to hold, and do in effect say, that the sick need not a physician, but the whole: and that he came, not to call sinners, but the righteous to repentance. And indeed, in so saying, you seem to conceive, that Christ's spouse must be purified, washed, and cleansed from all her filthiness, and adorned with a rich robe of righteousness, before he will accept of her; whereas he himself said unto her, ([Eze 16:4-8](#)), "As for thy nativity, in the day that thou wast born, thy navel was not cut, neither wast thou washed with water to supple thee; thou wast not swaddled at all, nor salted at all. No eye pitied thee to do any of these things unto thee; but when I passed by thee, and looked upon thee, behold thy time was a time of love. And I spread my skirt over thee, and covered thy nakedness; yea, and I swore unto thee, and entered into covenant with thee, and thou becamest mine."—([Hosea 2:19](#)), "And I will marry thee unto me for ever; yea, I will marry thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in mercy, and compassion."

Wherefore, I beseech you, revoke this your erroneous opinion, and contradict the word of truth no longer; but conclude for a certainty, that it is not the righteous and godly man, but the sinful and ungodly man,¹⁹³ that Christ came to call, justify, and save: so that if you were a righteous and godly man, you were neither capable of calling, justifying, or saving by Christ; but being a sinful and ungodly man, I will be bold to say unto you as the people said unto blind Bartimeus, ([Mark 10:49](#)), "Be of good comfort; arise, he calleth thee," and will justify and save thee.¹⁹⁴ Go then unto him, I beseech you; and if he come and meet thee,

192 This is the conclusion of that, which one, "by faith cleaving unto Christ, and hanging about his neck," has by that means warrant to say, according to our author. Whether or not there is sufficient warrant for it, according to the Scripture, let the reader judge: what shadow of the doctrine of universal atonement, or universal pardon, is in it, I see not.

193 That is, such as are really so, and not, in their own opinion, only respectively.

194 As the people, observing Christ's call to Bartimeus, bid him be of good comfort, [or be confident] and arise; intimating, that upon his going so unto Christ, he would cure him; so one, observing the gospel call, may

[as his manner is,] then do not you unadvisedly say, with Peter, "Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Lord!" ([Luke 5:8](#)); but say, in plain terms, O come unto me; for I am a sinful man, O Lord! Yea, go on further, and say, as Luther bids you, Most gracious Jesus and sweet Christ, I am a miserable, poor sinner, and, therefore, do judge myself unworthy of thy grace; but yet I, having learned from thy word that thy salvation belongs unto such a one, therefore do I come unto thee, to claim that right which, through thy gracious promise, belongs unto me. Assure yourself, man, that Jesus Christ requires no portion with his spouse; no, verily, he requires nothing with her but mere poverty: "the rich he sends empty away," ([Luke 1:53](#)); but the poor are by him enriched. And, indeed, says Luther, "the more miserable, sinful, and distressed a man doth feel himself, and judge himself to be, the more willing is Christ to receive him and relieve him." So that, says he, in judging thyself unworthy, thou dost thereby become truly worthy; and so, indeed, hast gotten a greater occasion of coming to him. Wherefore, then, in the words of the apostle, I do exhort and beseech you to "come boldly unto the throne of grace, that you may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need," ([Heb 4:16](#)).

Neo. But, truly, sir, my heart, as it were, trembles within me, to think of coming to Christ, after such a bold manner; and surely, sir, if I should so come unto him, it would argue much pride and presumption in me.

Evan. Indeed, if you should be encouraged to come unto Christ and to speak thus unto him, because of any godliness, righteousness, or worthiness, that you conceive to be in you; that, I confess, were proud presumption in you. But to come to Christ, by believing that he will accept of you, justify, and save you freely by his grace, according to his gracious promise, this is neither pride nor presumption:¹⁹⁵ for Christ having tendered and offered it to you freely, believe it, it is true humility of heart to take what Christ offers you.

Nom. But, by your favour, sir, I pray you give me leave to speak a word by the way. I know my neighbour, Neophytus, it may be, better than you do; yet I do not intend to charge him with any sin, otherwise than by way of supposition: as thus, suppose he has been guilty of the committing of gross and grievous sins, will Christ accept of him, and justify and save him for all that?

with all boldness bid a sinner comply with it confidently; assuring him that thereupon Christ will justify and save him.

195 It is to believe the offer of the gospel, with particular application; to embrace it, and therein to receive Christ. And no man can ever receive and rest on Christ for salvation, without believing, in greater, or lesser measure, that Christ will accept of him to justification and salvation. Remove that gospel truth, that Christ will accept of him, and his faith has no ground left to stand upon.

Evan. Yes, indeed; for there is no limitation of God's grace in Jesus Christ, except the sin against the Holy Ghost.¹⁹⁶ Christ "stands at the door and knocks," ([Rev 3:20](#)). And if any murdering Manasseh, or any persecuting and blaspheming Saul, ([1 Tim 1:13](#)), or any adulterous Mary Magdalene, "will open unto him, he will come in," and bring comfort with him, "and will sup with him." "Seek from the one end of the heavens to the other," says Hooker; "turn all the Bible over, and see if the words of Christ be not true, 'Him that cometh unto me, I will in no ways cast out,'" ([John 6:37](#)).

Nom. Why, then, sir, it seems you hold, that the vilest sinner in the world ought not to be discouraged from coming unto Christ, and believing in him, by reason of his sins.

Evan. Surely, if "Christ came into the world to seek, and call, and save sinners, and to justify the ungodly," as you have heard; and if the more sinful, miserable, and distressed a man judge himself to be, the more willing Christ is to receive him and relieve him; then I see no reason why the vilest sinner should be discouraged from believing on the name of Jesus Christ by reason of his sins. Nay, let me say more; the greater any man's sins are, either in number or nature, the more haste he should make to come unto Christ, and to say with David, "For thy name's sake, O Lord, pardon mine iniquity, for it is great!" ([Psa 25:11](#)).

Ant. Surely, sir, if my friend Neophytus did rightly consider these things, and were assuredly persuaded of the truth of them, methinks he should not be so backward from coming to Christ, by believing on his name, as he is; for if the greatness of his sin should be so far from hindering his coming to Christ, that they should further his coming, then I know not what should hinder him.

Evan. You speak very truly indeed. And therefore I beseech you, neighbour Neophytus, consider seriously of it; and neither let your own accusing conscience, nor Satan the accuser of the brethren, hinder you any longer from Christ. For what though they should accuse you of pride, infidelity, covetousness, lust, anger, envy, and hypocrisy? yea, what though they should accuse you of whoredom, theft, drunkenness, and such like? yea, do what they can, they can make no worse a man of you than a sinner, or chief of sinners, or an ungodly

196 I doubt if the sin against the Holy Ghost can justly be said to be a limitation of God's grace in Jesus Christ. For in the original authentic gospel-offer, in which is the proper place for such a limitation [if there was any] that grace is so laid open to all men without exception, that no man is excluded; but there is free access to it for every man in the way of believing, ([John 3:15,16](#), [Rev 22:17](#)); and this offer is sometimes intimated to these reprobates, who fall into that sin, else they should not be capable of it. It is true, that sin is a bar in the way of the guilty, so as they can never partake of the grace of God in Christ; for it shall never be forgiven, ([Matt 12:31](#), [Mark 3:29](#)); and any further ministerial application of the offer to them seems to cease to be lawful or warranted, ([1 John 5:16](#)). But all this arises from their own willful, obstinate, spiteful, and malicious rejecting of the offer: and fighting against the Holy Ghost, whose office it is to apply the grace of Christ; and not from any limitation, or exclusive clause in the offer, for still it remains true, "Whosoever shall believe, shall not perish."

person; and so, consequently, such an one Christ came to justify and save; so that in very deed, if you do rightly consider of it, they do you more good than hurt by their accusations.¹⁹⁷ And therefore, I beseech you, in all such cases or conflicts, take the counsel of Luther, who, on the Galatians, [p. 20,] says, "When thy conscience is thoroughly afraid with the remembrance of thy sins past, and the devil assaileth thee with great violence, going about to overwhelm thee with heaps, floods, and whole seas of sins, to terrify thee, and to draw thee from Christ; then arm thyself with such sentences as these: Christ the Son of God was given, not for the holy, righteous, worthy, and such as were his friends; but for the wicked sinners, for the unworthy, and for his enemies. Wherefore, if the devil say, Thou art a sinner, and therefore must be damned; then answer thou, and say, Because thou sayest I am a sinner, therefore will I be righteous and saved. And if he reply, Nay, sinners must be damned; then answer thou, and say, No, for I flee to Christ, who hath given himself for my sins; and, therefore, Satan, in that thou sayest I am a sinner, thou givest me armour and weapons against thyself, that with thine own sword I may cut thy throat, and tread thee under my feet."¹⁹⁸ And thus you see it is the counsel of Luther, that your sins should rather drive you to Christ than keep you from him.

Nom. But, sir, suppose he hath not as yet truly repented for his many and great sins, hath he any warrant to come unto Christ, by believing, till he has done so?

Evan. I tell you truly, that whatsoever a man is, or whatsoever he hath done or not done, he hath warrant enough to come unto Christ by believing, if he can;¹⁹⁹ for Christ makes a

197 Which may put you in mind, that you are one of that sort which "Christ Jesus came into the world to save," (1 Tim 1:15); and in pleading for mercy, may furnish you with such an argument as David used, (Psa 25:11), and the woman of Canaan, (Matt 15:27), "yet the dogs eat of the crumbs," &c.

198 He adds, in the place quoted, these weighty words, "I say not this for nought; for I have often-times proved by experience, and I daily find what an hard matter it is to believe [especially in the conflict of conscience] that Christ was given, not for the holy, righteous, worthy, and such as were his friends; but for wicked sinners, for the unworthy, and for his enemies."

199 It is not in vain added, "if he can"; for there is, in this matter, a great difference betwixt what a sinner may do, in point of warrant, and what he will or can do, in point of the event. "If we say to a man, the physician is ready to heal you; before you will be healed, you must have a sense of your sickness: this sense is not required by the physician [for the physician is ready to heal him]; but if he be not sick, and have a sense of it, he will not come to the physician." Preston on Faith, p. 12. I make no question, but before a sinner will come to Christ by believing, he must be an awakened, convinced, sensible sinner; pricked in his heart with a sense of his sin and misery; made to groan under his burden to despair of relief from the law, himself, or any other creature, and to desire and thirst after Christ and his righteousness; and this our author teaches afterwards on this subject. These things also are required of the sinner in point of duty. And, therefore, the law must be preached by all those who would preach Christ aright. But that these, or any other things in the sinner, are required to warrant him, that he may come to Christ by believing, is what I conceive the Scripture teaches not; but the general offer of the

general proclamation, saying, "Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come, buy and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money, and without price." This, you see, is the condition, "buy wine and milk," that is, grace and salvation, "without money," that is, without any sufficiency of your own;²⁰⁰ only "incline your ear and hear, and your souls shall live"; yea, live by hearing that "Christ will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David."

Chapter II, Section III, 4

Evangelical repentance a consequent of faith.

Nom. But yet, sir, you see that Christ requires a thirsting, before a man come unto him, the which, I conceive, cannot be without true repentance.

Evan. In the last chapter of the Revelation, verse 17, Christ makes the same general proclamation, saying, "Let him that is athirst come"; and as if the Holy Ghost had so long since answered the same objection that yours is, it follows in the next words, "And whosoever will, let him take of the water of life freely," even without thirsting, if he will; for "him that cometh unto me, I will in nowise cast out,"²⁰¹ (John 6:37). But because it seems you conceive

gospel, of which before, warrants every man that he may come. And in practice, it will be found, that requiring of such and such qualifications in sinners to warrant them to believe in Christ, is no great help to them in their way toward him; forasmuch as it engages them in a doubtful disputation, as to the being, kind, measure, and degree of their qualifications for coming to Christ; the time spent in which might be better improved in their going forward to Christ for all, by believing. And since no man can ever believe in Christ, without knowing that he has a warrant for believing in him, otherwise he can but act presumptuously: to tell sinners, that none may come to Christ, or have warrant to believe, but such as have a true repentance, must needs, in a special manner, entangle distressed consciences, so as they dare not believe, until they know their repentance to be true repentance. This must inevitably be the issue in that case; unless they do either reject that principle, or else venture to believe without seeing their warrant. For, howbeit they hear of Christ and his salvation offered in the gospel, these will be to them as forbidden fruit, which they are not allowed to touch, till once they are persuaded, that they have true repentance. And before they can attain to this, it must be made out to their consciences, that their repentance is not legal but evangelical, having such characters as distinguish it from the repentance of the Ninevites, Judas, and many reprobates. So that, one would think the suggesting of this principle is but a bad office done to a soul brought to "the place of the breaking forth of children." Let no man say, that, arguing at this rate, one must know also the truth of his faith, before he can come to Christ; for faith is not a qualification for coming to Christ, but the coming itself, which will have its saving effects on the sinner, whether he knows the truth of it or not.

200 Take them freely, and possess them; which every one sees to be no proper condition.

201 That gospel-offer, (Isa 55:1), is the most solemn one to be found in all the Old Testament; and that recorded, (Rev 22:17), is the parting offer made to sinners by Jesus Christ, at the closing of the canon of the Scripture, and manifestly looks to the former; in the which I can see no ground to think, that the thirsting therein mentioned

he ought to repent before he believe, I pray tell me what you do conceive repentance to be, or wherein does it consist?

Nom. Why, I conceive that repentance consists in a man's humbling himself before God, and sorrowing and grieving for offending him by his sins, and in turning from them all to the Lord.

Evan. And would you have a man to do all this truly²⁰² before he come to Christ by believing?

Nom. Yea, indeed, I think it is very meet he should.

Evan. Why, then, I tell you truly, you would have him to do that which is impossible.²⁰³

does any way restrict the offer; or that the thirsty there invited, are convinced, sensible sinners, who are thirsting after Christ and his righteousness; the which would leave without the compass of this solemn invitation, not only the far greater part of mankind, but even of the visible church. The context seems decisive in this point; for the thirsting ones invited, are such as are "spending money for that which is not bread, and their labour for that which satisfieth not," (verse 1,2); but convinced, sensible sinners who are thirsting after Christ and his righteousness, are not spending their labour and money at that rate; but, on the contrary, for that which is bread and satisfieth, namely, for Christ. Wherefore, the thirsting there mentioned, must be more extensive, comprehending, yea, and principally aiming at that thirst after happiness and satisfaction, which, being natural, is common to all mankind. Men pained with this thirst or hunger are naturally running, for quenching thereof, to the empty creation, and their fulsome lusts; so "spending money for that which is not bread, and their labour for that which satisfieth not," their hungry souls find no food, but what is meagre and lean, bad and unwholesome, and cannot satisfy their appetite. Compare Luke 15:16. In this wretched case Adam left all mankind, and Christ finds them. Whereupon the gospel proclamation is issued forth, inviting them to come away from the broken cisterns, filthy puddles, to the waters of life, even to Jesus Christ, where they may have bread, fatness, what is good, and will satisfy that their painful thirst, (John 4:14, 6:35).

202 That is, in such a manner as it shall be true evangelical repentance, a gracious humiliation, sorrow and turning, acceptable in the sight of God. This question [grounded on Nomista's pretending that Neophytus had no warrant to believe, unless he had truly repented] supposes that there is a kind of repentance, humiliation, sorrow for sin, and turning from it, which goes before faith, but that they are not "after a godly sort," as the apostle's phrase is, (2 Cor 7:11).

203 I think it nothing strange to find the author so very peremptory in this point, which is of greater weight than many are aware of. True repentance is a turning unto God, a coming back to him again; a returning even unto the Lord, according to an usual Old Testament phrase, found, (Hosea 14:1), and rightly so translated, (Isa 19:22). But no man can come unto God "but by Christ"; (Heb 7:25), "He is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God BY HIM."—(John 14:6), "No man cometh unto the Father but BY ME." We must take Christ in our way to the Father, else it is impossible that we guilty creatures can reach unto him. and no man can come unto Christ, but by believing in him, (John 6:35), therefore it is impossible that a man can truly repent before he believe in Christ. "Him hath God exalted with his right hand, to be a Prince [or leader] and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins," (Acts 5:31). One would think this to be a sufficient intimation,

For, first of all godly humiliation, in true penitents, proceeds from the love of God their good Father, and so from the hatred of that sin which has displeased him; and this cannot be without faith.²⁰⁴

Secondly. Sorrow and grief for displeasing God by sin, necessarily argue the love of God; and it is impossible we should ever love God, till by faith we know ourselves loved of God.²⁰⁵

that sinners not only may, but ought to go to him for true repentance; and not stand off from him until they get it to bring along with them; especially since repentance, as well as remission of sin, is a part of that salvation, which he as a Saviour is exalted to give, and consequently, which sinners are to receive and rest upon him for; and likewise that it is that by which he, as a leader, doth lead back sinners even unto God, from whom they were led away in the first Adam, the head of the apostasy. And if one inquires anent the way of his giving repentance to Israel, the prophet Zechariah showed it before to be by faith, (Zech 12:10), "And they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn."

204 This the Scripture teacheth, determining in the general, that without faith one can do nothing acceptable in the sight of God, (John 15:5), "Without me," i.e. separate from me, "ye can do nothing."—(Heb 11:6), "Without faith it is impossible to please him": and particularly with respect to this case, (Luke 7:37-47), "And behold a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat, stood at his feet behind him weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet. And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon: Her sins which are many, are forgiven, for she loved much; but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little."—It is an argument gathered of the effects following, whereby anything is proved by signs ensuring. Calvin. Inst. lib. 3. cap. 4. sect 37.

205 There is a knowledge in faith, as our divines teach against the Papists, and the Scripture maketh manifest. (Isa 53:11), "By his knowledge shall my righteous Servant justify many."—(Heb 11:3), "Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God." Now, saving faith being a persuasion that we shall have life and salvation by Christ, or a receiving and resting on him for salvation, includes in it a knowledge of our being beloved for God: the former cannot be without the latter. In the meantime, such as the strength or weakness of that persuasion is, the steadiness or unsteadiness of that receiving and resting, just so is this knowledge, clear or unclear, free of, or accompanied with doubtings. They are still of the same measure and degree. So that this is no more in effect, but that faith in Christ is the spring of true love to God; the which, how it is attained by a guilty soul, men will the better know, if they consider well what it is. The true love of God is not a love to him only for his benefits, and for our own sake, but a love to him for himself, for his own sake; a liking of, and a complacency in, his glorious attributes and perfections, his infinite, eternal and unchangeable being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness, and truth. If a convinced sinner is void of any the least measure of persuasion of life and salvation by Christ, and of the love of this God to him; but apprehends, as he cannot miss to do in this case, that he hates him as his enemy, and will prove so at last; this cannot fail of filling his whole soul with slavish fear of God; and how then shall this love of God spring up in one's heart, in such a case? for slavish fear and true love are so opposite the one to the other, that, according to the measure in which the one prevails, the other cannot have access. (2 Tim 1:7), "God hath not given us the spirit of fear, but of power, of love, and of a sound mind." (1 John 4:18), "There is no fear in love, but perfect love casteth out fear; because fear hath torment."

Thirdly. No man can turn to God, except he be first turned of God: and after he is turned, he repents; so Ephraim says, "After I was converted, I repented,"²⁰⁶ (Jer 31:19). The truth is, a repentant sinner first believes that God will do that which he promiseth, namely, pardon his sin, and take away his iniquity; then he rests in the hope of it; and from that, and for it, he leaves sin, and will forsake his old course,²⁰⁷ because it is displeasing to God; and will do that which is pleasing and acceptable to him.²⁰⁸ So that, first of all, God's favour is apprehended, and remission of sins believed;²⁰⁹ then upon that cometh alteration of life and conversation.²¹⁰

But when once life and salvation, and remission of sin, is with application believed by the convinced sinner, and thereby the love of God towards him is known; then, according to the measure of that faith and knowledge, slavish fear of God is expelled, and the heart is kindly drawn to love him, not only for his benefits, but for himself, having a complacency in his glorious perfections. "We love him, because he first loved us," (1 John 4:19). The love of God to us is the inducement of our love to him: but love utterly unknown to the party beloved can never be an inducement to him to love again. Now, in consequence hereof, the sinner's bands are loosed, and his heart, which before was still hard as a stone, though broken in pieces by legal terrors, is broken in another manner, softened, and kindly melted in sorrow for displeasing this gracious God.

206 God's turning of a sinner first brings him to Christ, (John 6:44,45), "No man can come unto me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him." And then he comes to God by Christ, (John 14:26), "No man cometh unto the Father but by me."

207 In a right manner, in the manner immediately after mentioned.

208 Faith cometh of the word of God; hope cometh of faith; and charity springeth of them both. Faith believes that word; hope trusteth after that which is promised by the word; and charity doth good unto her neighbour. Mr. Patrick Hamilton's Articles in Knox's Hist. p. 11.

209 Not as that they are pardoned already; but that one must so apprehend the favour of God, as to believe that God will pardon his sin, as the author speaks expressly in the premises from whence this conclusion is drawn; or that God doth pardon his sin in the present time. See note, chap. 3, sect. 6. Now, remission of sin is a part of that salvation which faith receives and rests on Christ for. As for the phrase the author uses to express this, it is most agreeable to the Scripture phrase, "Remission of sins preached," (Luke 24:47, Acts 13:38).

210 Namely, such an alteration as is pleasing and acceptable in the sight of God, the which he has described in the preceding sentence. Otherwise, he has already taught us, that there are notable alterations of life and conversation which do not proceed from faith; and therefore are not accepted of God. And of these we shall hear more anon. It will not be amiss here to observe how our author, in his account of the relation betwixt faith and repentance, treads in the ancient paths, according to his manner. "It ought to be out of question," says Calvin, "that repentance doth not only immediately follow faith, but also spring out of it. As for them that think that repentance doth rather go before faith, than flow or spring forth of it, as a fruit out of a tree, they never knew the force thereof, and are moved with too weak an argument, to think so. Christ and John, [say they] in their preachings, first exhort the people to repentance, &c. A man cannot earnestly apply himself to repentance, unless he know himself to be of God: but no man is truly persuaded that he is of God, but he that hath first received

Nom. But, sir, as I conceive, the Scripture holds forth, that the Lord has appointed repentance to go before faith; for, is it not said, ([Mark 1:15](#)), "Repent and believe the gospel"?

Evan. To the intent that you may have a true and satisfactory answer to this your objection, I would pray you to consider two things:

First. That the word "repent" in the original, signifies a change of our minds from false ways, to the right, and of our hearts from evil to good:²¹¹ and as that son in the gospel said, "He would not go" work in his father's vineyard: yet afterwards says the text, "he repented and went," ([Matt 21:29](#)): that is, he changed his mind and went.

his grace. No man shall ever reverently fear God, but he that trusteth that God is merciful to him: no man will willingly prepare himself to the keeping of the law, but he that is persuaded that his services please him." *Instit.* b. 3. chap. 3. sec. 1, 2. "How soon that ever the Spirit of the Lord Jesus, which God's elect children receive by true faith, takes possession in the heart of any man, so soon doth he regenerate and renew the same man. So that he begins to hate that which before he loved, and begins to love that which before he hated; and from thence comes that continual battle which is betwixt the flesh and the spirit." *Old Confess.* art. 13. "Being in Christ, we must be new creatures—so that we must hate and flee that which before we loved and embraced, and we must love and follow that which before we hated and abhorred. All which is impossible to them that have no faith, and have but a dead faith." *Mr. John Davidson's Cat.* p. 29. "Quest. When I shall ask you then, What is craved of us, after that we are joined to Christ by faith, and made truly righteous in him? ye shall answer. A. We must repent and become new persons, that we may show forth the virtues of him that hath called us." *Ibid.* p. 35. "What is thy repentance? The effect of this faith, working a sorrow for my sins by-past, and purpose to amend in time to come." *Mr. James Melvil's Cat.* in his *Propine, &c.* p. 44. "Repentance unto life is a saving grace, whereby a sinner out of a true sense of his sin, and apprehension of the mercy of God in Christ, doth with grief and hatred of sin, turn from it unto God." *Shorter Cat.* "M. This is then thy saying, That unto the time that God hath received us to mercy, and regenerated us by his Spirit, we can do nothing but sin; even as an evil tree can bring forth no fruit but that which is evil, ([Matt 7:17](#)). C. Even so it is." *Calvin's Cat.* quest. 117. "He doth receive us into his favour, of his bountiful mercy, through the merits of our Saviour Christ, accounting his righteousness to be ours, and for his sake imputeth not our faults unto us." *Ibid.* quest. 118. "Quest. What is the first fruit of this union? [namely of union with Christ by faith]. A. A remission of our sins, and imputation of justice. Q. Which is the next fruit of our union with him? A. Our sanctification and regeneration to the image of God." *Craig's Cat.* q. 24, 25. "Q. What is sanctification? A. Sanctification is a work of God's grace, whereby they are renewed in their whole man, after the image of God, having the seeds of repentance unto life, and of all other saving graces, put into their hearts." *Larger Cat.* quest. 75. "We would beware of Mr. Baxter's order of setting repentance and works of new obedience before justification, which is indeed a new covenant of works." *Rutherford's Influences of the Life of Grace*, p. 346.

211 This is taken word for word out of the English Annotations of Matthew 3:2; which are cited for it by our author under the name of the Last Annotations, because they were printed in the year 1645, about which time this book also was first published. How the author applies it, will appear anon.

Secondly. That in those days, when John the Baptist and our Saviour preached, their hearers were most of them erroneous in their minds and judgments; for they being leavened with the doctrine of the Pharisees and Sadducees, of which our Saviour bade his disciples take heed and beware, ([Matt 16:6,12](#)), the most of them were of opinion, that the Messiah whom they looked for should be some great and mighty monarch, who should deliver them from their temporal bondage, as I showed before. And many of them were of the opinion of the Pharisees, who held, that as an outward conformity to the letter of the law was sufficient to gain favour and estimation from men, so it was sufficient for their justification and acceptance before God, and so, consequently, to bring them to heaven and eternal happiness; and, therefore, for these ends, they were very diligent in fasting and prayer, ([Luke 18:12-14](#)), and very careful to pay tithes of mint, anise, and cummin, and yet did omit the weightier matters of the law, as judgment, mercy, faith, and the love of God, ([Matt 23:23](#), [Luke 11:42](#)). And so, as our Saviour told them, ([Matt 23:25](#)), "they made clean the outside of the cup, and of the platter, but within they were full of extortion and excess."

And divers of them were of the opinion of the Sadducees, ([Acts 23:8](#)), who held "that there was no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit"; and so had all their hopes and comfort in the things of this life, not believing any other.

Now our Saviour, preaching to these people, said, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye and believe the gospel." As if he had said, The time set by the prophets for the manifestation of the Messiah is fully come; and his kingdom, which is a spiritual and heavenly kingdom, is at hand; therefore change your minds from false ways to right, and your hearts from evil to good;²¹² and do not any longer imagine, that the Messiah you look for, shall be one that shall save and deliver you from your temporal enemies; but from your spiritual, that is, from your sins, and from the wrath of God, and from eternal damnation; and therefore put your confidence no longer in your own righteousness, though you walk never so exactly according to the letter of the law; but believe the glad tidings that are now brought to you, namely, that the Messiah shall save you from sin, wrath, the devil, and hell, and bring you to eternal life and glory. Neither let any of you any longer imagine, that there is to be no resurrection of the dead, and so have your hopes only in this life: but believe these glad tidings, that are now brought unto you, concerning the Messiah; and he shall raise you up at the last day, and give you an eternal life. Now, with submission to better judgments, I do conceive, that if there be in the book of God any repentance exhor-

212 The word rendered repent, is, "To change one's mind, and to lay aside false opinions, which they had drunk in, whether from the Pharisees, concerning the righteousness of works, traditions, worship, &c.; or from the Sadducees, concerning the resurrection," &c. Lucus Brugensis, apud Pol. Synop. Crit. in Matthew 3:2.

ted unto, before faith in Christ; or if any repentance go, either in order of nature or time, before faith in Christ, it is only such a like repentance as this.²¹³

Nom. But, sir, do you think that there is such a like repentance, that goes before faith in Christ, in men now-a-days?

Evan. Yea, indeed, I think there is. As, for example, when a profane sensual man [who lives as though, with the Sadducees, he did not believe any resurrection of the dead, neither hell nor heaven] is convinced in his conscience, that if he go on in making a god of his belly, and in minding only earthly things, his end shall be damnation; sometimes such a man thereupon changes his mind, and of a profane man, becomes a strict Pharisee, or [as some call him] a legal professor; but being convinced, that all his own righteousness will avail him nothing, in the case of justification, and that it is only the righteousness of Jesus Christ that is available in that case, then he changes his mind, and, with the apostle, "desires to be found in Christ, not having his own righteousness which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, even the righteousness which is of God through faith," (Phil 3:9). Now I conceive, that a man that does this, changes his mind from false ways to the right way, and his heart from evil to good; and so, consequently, doth truly repent.²¹⁴

Nom. But, sir, do not you hold, that although repentance, according to my definition, goes not before faith in Christ, yet it follows after?

Evan. Yes, indeed; I hold, that although it go not before as an antecedent of faith, yet it follows as a consequent. For when a man believes the love of God to him in Christ, then he loves God because he loved him first; and that love constrains him to humble himself at the Lord's footstool, and to acknowledge himself to be less than the least of all his mercies; yea, and then will he "remember his own evil ways and doings, that were not good, and will loathe himself in his own sight for his iniquities, and for his abominations," (Eze 36:31); yea, and then will he also cleanse himself from all filthiness of flesh and spirit, perfecting

213 That the reader may further see how little weight there is in the objection raised from Mark 1:15, I subjoin the words of two learned commentators on the text. "Repent ye, turn from the wickedness of your ways and believe. There is a repentance that must go before faith, that is, the applicative of the promise of pardoning mercy to the soul; though true evangelical repentance, which is a sorrow for sin, flowing from the sense of the love of God in Christ, be the fruit and effect of faith." Contin. of Poole's Annot. on the place.—"Faith or believing, in order of the work of grace, is before repentance, that being the first and mother grace of all others; yet is here and in other places, named the latter: first, because though faith be first wrought, yet repentance is first seen and evidenced," &c. Lightfoot's Harmony, part 3. p. 164. 4to.

214 That is, his repentance is true in its kind, though not saving. There is a change of his mind and heart, in that, upon a conviction, he turns from profanity to strictness of life, and upon farther conviction, from a conceit of his own righteousness to a desire after the righteousness of Christ: nevertheless, all this is but selfish, and cannot please God while the man is void of faith, (Heb 11:6).

holiness in the fear of God, having respect unto all God's commandments, (2 Cor 7:1, Psa 119:6).

Nom. Well, sir, I am answered.

Chapter II, Section III, 5

The spiritual marriage with Jesus Christ.

Neo. And truly, sir you have so declared and set forth Christ's disposition towards poor sinners, and so answered all my doubts and objections, that I am now verily persuaded that Christ is willing to entertain me; and surely I am willing to come unto him, and receive him; but, alas! I want power.

Evan. But tell me truly, are you resolved to put forth all your power to believe, and so to take Christ?²¹⁵

Neo. Truly, sir, methinks my resolution is much like the resolution of the four lepers, who sat at the gate of Samaria; for as they said, "If we enter into the city, the famine is in the city, and we shall die there; and if we sit still here, we die also; now, therefore, let us fall unto the host of the Syrians; if they save us, we shall live, and if they kill us, we shall but die," (2 Kings 7:4); even so say I in mine heart, If I go back to the covenant of works to seek justification thereby, I shall die there; and if I sit still and seek it no way, I shall die also; now, therefore, though I be somewhat fearful, yet am I resolved to go unto Christ; and if I perish, I perish.²¹⁶

215 His conviction of his lost and undone state was before represented in its proper place. After much disputing whether such a vile and sinful wretch as he had any warrant to come to Christ, he appears, in his immediately foregoing speech, to be so far enlightened in the knowledge of Christ, that he is verily persuaded that Christ is willing to entertain him; and to have his heart and will so overcome by divine grace, that he is willing to come unto Christ: yet, after all, he, through weakness of judgment, apprehends himself to want power to believe; whereas it is by these very means that a soul is persuaded, and enabled too, to believe in Jesus Christ. Hereupon the author, waving the dispute anent his power to believe, wisely asks him, If he is resolved to put forth the power he has? forasmuch as it was evident from the account given of the present condition of his soul that it had felt "a day of power," (Psa 110:3), and that he was "drawn of the Father, and, therefore, could come to Christ," (John 6:44). For "effectual calling is the work of God's Spirit, whereby, convincing us of our sin and misery, enlightening our minds in the knowledge of Christ, and renewing our wills, he doth persuade and enable us to embrace Jesus Christ." Shorter Catechism.—"Savily enlightening their minds, renewing and powerfully determining their wills, so as they are hereby made willing and able." Larg. Cat. quest. 67.

216 See the foregoing note. This is the concluding point in this matter; the man being drawn by efficacious grace, though he is not without doubts and fears as to the event, yet is no more in doubt, whether to embrace the offer or not. And the inward motion of his heart breaking through the remaining doubts and fears, after a long struggle, unto Jesus Christ, in the free promise, being in itself indiscernible, but to God and one's own soul,

Evan. Why, now I tell you the match is made; Christ is yours,²¹⁷ and you are his, "this day is salvation come to your house," [your soul I mean:] for, what though you have not that power to come so fast to Christ, and lay such firm hold on him, as you desire; yet coming with such a resolution to take Christ, as you do, you need not care for power to do it, inasmuch as Christ will enable you to do it;²¹⁸ for is it not said, ([John 1:12](#)), "But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name?"²¹⁹ O therefore, I beseech you, stand no longer disputing; but be peremptory and resolute in your faith, and in casting yourself upon God in Christ for mercy; and let the issue be what it will. Yet let me tell you, to your comfort, that such a resolution shall never go to hell. Nay, I will say more; if any soul have room in heaven, such a soul shall; for God cannot find in his heart to damn such a one. I might, then, with as much true confidence say unto you, as John Careless said to John Bradford, in a letter to him, "Hearken, O heavens, and thou O earth, give ear, and bear me witness, at the great day, that I do here faithfully and truly declare the Lord's message unto his dear servant and singularly beloved John Bradford, saying, 'John Bradford, thou man so specially beloved of God, I do pronounce and testify unto thee, in the word and name of the Lord Jehovah, that all thy sins whatsoever they be, though never so many, grievous, or great, be fully and freely pardoned, released, and forgiven thee, by the mercy of God in Jesus Christ, the only Lord and sweet Saviour, in whom thou dost undoubtedly believe; as truly as the Lord liveth, he will not have thee die the death; but hath verily purposed, determined, and decreed, that thou shalt live with him for ever.'"

Neo. O, sir, if I have as good warrant to apply this saying to myself as Mr. Bradford had to himself, then I am a happy man!

it is agreeably enough to one's way in that case: discovered in that expression of a conquered soul, Now am I resolved to go unto Christ, now am I determined to believe; the which cannot but present to him who deals with the exercised person, the whole soul going out unto Jesus Christ. Hence the match may justly thereupon be declared to be made, as our author does in the words immediately following. Thus Job, in his distress, expresseth his faith, ([Job 13:15](#)), "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him." Compare ([Acts 11:33](#)), "That with purpose of heart they would cleave unto the Lord."

217 In possession.

218 That is, you need not, holding back your hand, stand disputing with yourself how you will get power; but with the power given, stretch forth the withered hand, and Christ will strengthen it, and enable you to take a firm hold. ([John 12:32](#)), "And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me."—([Isa 40:29](#)), "He giveth power to the faint; and to them that have no might he increaseth strength."

219 The power here mentioned, seems rather to denote right or privilege [as the original word is rendered in the margin of our Bibles] than strength or ability.

Evan. I tell you from Christ, and under the hand of the Spirit, that your person is accepted, your sins are done away, and you shall be saved; and if an angel from heaven should tell you otherwise, let him be accursed. Therefore, you may [without doubt] conclude that you are a happy man; for by means of this your matching with Christ, you are become one with him, and one in him, you "dwell in him, and he in you," (1 John 4:13). He is "your well beloved, and you are his," (Cant 2:16). So that the marriage union betwixt Christ and you is more than a bare notion or apprehension of your mind; for it is a special, spiritual, and real union: it is an union betwixt the nature of Christ, God and man, and you;²²⁰ it is a knitting and closing, not only of your apprehension with a Saviour, but also of your soul with a Saviour. Whence it must needs follow that you cannot be condemned, except Christ be condemned with you; neither can Christ be saved, except you be saved with him.²²¹ And as by means of corporeal marriage all things become common betwixt man and wife; even so, by means of this spiritual marriage, all things become common betwixt Christ and you; for when Christ hath married his spouse unto himself, he passeth over all his estate unto her; so that whatsoever Christ is or hath, you may boldly challenge as your own. "He is made unto you, of God, wisdom, righteousness, sanctification, and redemption," (1 Cor 1:30). And surely, by virtue of this near union it is, that as Christ is called "the Lord our righteousness," (Jer 33:6), even so is the church called, "the Lord our righteousness," (verse 16). I tell you, you may, by virtue of this union, boldly take upon yourself, as your own, Christ's watching, abstinence, travails, prayers, persecutions, and slanders; yea, his tears, his sweat, his blood, and all that ever he did and suffered in the space of three and thirty years, with his passion, death, burial, resurrection, and ascension; for they are all yours. And as Christ

220 That is, an union with the whole Christ, God-Man; (1 Cor 6:17), "He that is joined to the Lord, is one spirit."—(Eph 5:38), "For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones."

221 Jesus Christ and the believer, being one person in the eye of the law, there is no separating of them in law, in point of life and death. (John 14:19), "Because I live, ye shall live also." I have adventured this once to add one syllable to the text of the author; and so to read "condemned" for "damned." The words are of the same signification; only, the latter has an idea of horror affixed to it, which the former has not; and which perhaps it had not either, in the days of our forefathers, when godly Tindal used the expression, as our author informs us. And I take this liberty, the rather that a like expression of John Careless, in a letter to William Tyms, seems to me to run more smooth, by means of the same addition, though I doubt if the word stood so in the original copy. "Christ," says he, "is made unto us holiness, righteousness, and justification; he hath clothed us in all his merits and taken to himself all our sin—so that, if any should be now condemned for the same, it must needs be Jesus Christ, who hath taken them upon him." *The Sufferer's Mirror*, p. 66. And in the Old Confession of Faith, art. 9, according to the ancient copies, it is said, "The clean, innocent Lamb of God was damned in the presence of an earthly judge, that we should be absolved before the tribunal seat of our God." But in the copy standing in Knox's History, reprinted at Edinburgh, anno 1644, it is read "condemned."

passes over all his estate unto his spouse, so does he require that she should pass over all unto him. Wherefore, you being now married unto Christ, you must give all that you have of your own unto him; and truly you have nothing of your own but sin, and, therefore, you must give him that. I beseech you, then, say unto Christ with bold confidence, I give unto thee, my dear husband, my unbelief, my mistrust, my pride, my arrogancy, my ambition, my wrath, and anger, my envy, my covetousness, my evil thoughts, affections, and desires; I make one bundle of these and all my other offences, and give them unto thee.²²² And thus was Christ made "sin for us, that knew no sin, that we might be made the righteousness of God in him,"²²³ (2 Cor 5:21). "Now then," says Luther, "let us compare these things together, and we shall find inestimable treasure. Christ is full of grace, life, and saving health; and the soul is freight-full of all sin, death, and damnation; but let faith come betwixt these two, and it shall come to pass, that Christ shall be laden with sin, death, and hell; and unto the soul

222 This gift would indeed be a very unsuitable return, for all the benefits received from Christ by virtue of the spiritual marriage, if he did not deal with us in the way of free grace; like unto a physician who desires nothing of a poor man full of sores, but that he will employ him in the cure of them. But this gift, such as it is, as it is all we have of our own to give, so one needs make no question but it will be very acceptable, (Psa 55:22), "Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee"; not only thy burden of duty, suffering, and success, but of sin too, wherewith thou art heavy laden, (Matt 11:28). We are allowed, not only to give him our burden, but to cast it upon him. He knows very well that all these evils mentioned, and many more, are in the heart of the best: yet doth he say, (Prov 23:26), "My son, give me thine heart"; notwithstanding of the wretched stuff he knows to be in it. In the language of the Holy Ghost, these things, black as they are, are a gift by divine appointment to be given, (Lev 16:21): speaking of the scape-goat, an eminent type of Christ, he says, "And Aaron shall confess over him all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their transgressions, and all their sins: and he shall give them upon the head of the goat." Thus the original expresses what we read, "putting them," &c. Now, the end for which the sinner is to give these to Christ is twofold: (1.) For removing of the guilt of them. (2.) For the mortifying of them. And though this is not an easy way of mortification, since the way of believing is not easy, but more difficult than all the Popish austerities, forasmuch as these last are more agreeable to nature, yet indeed it is the short way to mortification, because it is the only way; without which, the practice of all other directions will be but as so many ciphers, without a figure standing at their head, signifying nothing, for true Christian mortification. (Acts 15:9), "Purifying their hearts by faith."—(Rom 6:6), "Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him." And (8:13), "If ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live."—(Gal 5:24), "And they that are Christ's, have crucified the flesh, with the affections and lusts; namely, nailing them to the cross of Christ by faith."

223 Thus, namely, by the giving of our sins to him, not by believers, but by his Father, as says the text, "He [not we] made him to be sin for us." Nevertheless, the Lord's laying our iniquities upon Christ is good warrant for every believer to give his sins in particular upon him; the latter being a cordial falling in with, a practical approbation, and taking the benefit of the former.

shall be imputed grace, life, and salvation. Who then is able to value the royalty of this marriage accordingly? Who is able to comprehend the glorious riches of his grace, where this rich and righteous husband, Christ, doth take unto wife this poor and wicked harlot, redeeming her from all devils, and garnishing her with all his own jewels? So that you, through the assuredness of your faith in Christ, your husband, are delivered from all sins, made safe from death, guarded from hell, and endowed with the everlasting righteousness, life, and saving health of this your husband Christ." And, therefore, you are now under the covenant of grace, and freed from the law, as it is the covenant of works; for [as Mr. Ball truly says] at one and the same time, a man cannot be under the covenant of works and the covenant of grace.

Neo. Sir, I do not well know how to conceive of this freedom from the law, as it is the covenant of works; and therefore I pray you make it as plain to me as you can.

Evan. For the true and clear understanding of this point, you are to consider, that when Jesus Christ, the second Adam, had, in the behalf of his chosen, perfectly fulfilled the law as it is the covenant of works;²²⁴ divine justice delivered that bond in to Christ, who utterly cancelled that hand-writing, (Col 2:14); so that none of his chosen were to have any more to do with it, nor it with them. And now, you, by your believing in Christ, having manifested that you are one, who was chosen in him "before the foundation of the world," (Eph 1:4), his fulfilling of that covenant, and cancelling that hand-writing, is imputed unto you; and so you are acquitted and absolved from all your transgressions against that covenant, either past, present or to come;²²⁵ and so you are justified, as the apostle says, "freely by his grace, through the redemption that is in Jesus Christ," (Rom 3:24).

224 Namely, by doing perfectly what it demanded to be done, by virtue of its commanding power, and suffering completely what it demanded to be borne, by virtue of its condemning power.

225 Although believers in the first moment of their union with Christ by faith, are delivered from the law, as it is the covenant of works, and therefore their after sins neither are, nor can be, formally transgressions of that covenant; yet they are interpretatively so, giving a plain proof of what they would have done against that covenant, had they been under it still. And forasmuch as they could never have been freed from it, had not the glorious Mediator wrought their deliverance, by fulfilling it in their room and stead; all their sins whatsoever, from their birth to their death, after as well as before their union with Christ, were charged upon him, as transgressions against that covenant; and such as are pardoned to them in their justification. Even as he who redeems a slave must pay in proportion to the service which it is supposed he would have done his master during life; and the slave is loosed from all obligation to these several pieces of service unto that master, upon the ransom paid, in compensation of all and every one of them. And thus our author says, that a believer, in his justification, is acquitted from all his transgressions against the covenant of works, not only past and present, but to come. So that he leaves no ground to question, but Christ satisfied for all the sins of believers whatsoever, whether in their state of regeneracy or unregeneracy. Nor does he make the least insinuation, that the sins of believers, after their union with Christ, are not properly transgressions of that law which was [yea, and to unbelievers still is] in the

Chapter II, Section III, 6

Justification before faith, refuted.

Ant. I pray you, sir, give me leave to speak a word by the way; was not he justified before this time?

Evan. If he did not believe in Christ before this time, as I conceive he did not, then certainly he was not justified before this time.

Ant. But, sir, you know, as the apostle says, "It is God that justifieth; and God is eternal; and, as you have shown, Christ may be said to have fulfilled the covenant of works from all eternity, and if he be Christ's now, then was he Christ's from all eternity." And therefore, as I conceive, he was justified from all eternity.

Evan. Indeed, God is from all eternity, and in respect of God's accepting of Christ's undertaking to fulfil the covenant of works, he fulfilled it from all eternity: and in respect of God's electing of him, he was Christ's from all eternity. And therefore it is true, in respect of God's decree, he was justified from all eternity;²²⁶ and he was justified meritoriously in the death and resurrection of Christ;²²⁷ but yet he was not justified actually, till he did actually

covenant of works: but, on the contrary, expressly teaches, that it is the very same law of the ten commands which is the law of Christ, and which the believer transgresseth, that was and is in the covenant of works. And although the revenging wrath of God and eternal death are not threatened against the sins of believers after their union with Christ; and that for this one reason, That that wrath and that death [the eternity whereof rose not from the nature of the thing, but the infirmity of the sufferer, and therefore could have no place in the Son of God] were not only threatened before, but executed too upon their surety Jesus Christ, to whom they are united: it is manifest, that there was great need of Christ's being made a curse for these sins of believers, as well as for those preceding their union with him.

226 "The sentence of justification was, as it were, conceived in the mind of God by the decree of justifying, (Gal 3:8), 'The Scripture foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith.'" Ames. Med. cap. 37, sec. 9,— "In which sense grace is said to be given us in Christ before the world began." (2 Tim 1:9) Turret. loc. 16. q. 9. th. 11.— "Sins were pardoned from eternity in the mind of God." Rutherford's Exer. Apolog. 110:1, cap. 2. sec. 21. p. 53. The same Rutherford adds, "It is one thing for a man to be justified in Christ, and that from eternity: and another for a man to be justified in Christ in time, according to the gospel-covenant. Faith is not so much as the instrument of eternal and immanent justification and remission of sins." Ibid. p. 55.

227 "Justification may be considered as to the execution of it in time; and that again, either as to the purchase of it, which was made by the death of Christ on the cross, concerning which it is said, (Rom 5:9,10), 'That we are justified and reconciled to God by the blood of Christ; and that Christ reconciled all things unto God by the blood of the cross,' (Col 1:20). And elsewhere, Christ is said to be 'raised again for our justification,' (Rom 4:25). Because, as in him dying, we died, so in him raised again and justified, we are justified; that is, we have a certain and undoubted pledge and foundation of our justification. Or as to the application of it," &c. Turret. ubi sup. "The sentence of justification was pronounced in Christ our head, risen from the dead," (2 Cor 5:19). Ames, ubi

believe in Christ; for, says the apostle, ([Acts 13:39](#)), "By him all that believe are justified."²²⁸ So that in the act of justifying, faith and Christ must have a mutual relation, and must always concur and meet together; faith as the action which apprehendeth, and Christ the object which is apprehended; for neither doth Christ justify without faith, neither doth faith, except it be in Christ.

Ant. Truly, sir, you have indifferently well satisfied me in this point; and surely I like it marvellously well, that you conclude no faith justifies, but that whose object is Christ.

Evan. The very truth is, though a man believe that God is merciful and true to his promise, and that he has his elect number from the beginning, and that he himself is one of that number, yet if this faith do not eye Christ, if it be not in God as he is in Christ, it will not serve the turn: for God cannot be comfortably thought upon out of Christ our Mediator; "for if we find not God in Christ," says Calvin, Instit. p. 155, "salvation cannot be known." Wherefore, Neophytus, I will say unto you, as Mr. Bradford said unto a gentlewoman in your case, "Thus, then, if you would be quiet, and certain in conscience, then let your faith burst forth through all things, not only that you have within you, but also whatsoever is in heaven, earth, and hell; and never rest until it come to Christ crucified, and the eternal sweet mercy and goodness of God in Christ."

Chapter II, Section II, 7

Believers freed from the commanding and condemning power of the covenant of works.

Neo. But, sir, I am not satisfied concerning the point you touched before; and therefore, I pray you, proceed to show me how far forth I am delivered from the law, as it is the covenant of works.

sup.â€”"We were virtually justified, especially when Christ having finished the purchase of our salvation, was justified, and we in him as our head," ([1 Tim 3:16](#), [2 Cor 5:19](#)). Essen. Comp. cap. 15, sec. 25.

228 "Actual justification is done in time, and follows faith." Turret. loc. 16. q. 9. th. 3.â€”"Justification is done formally when an elect man, effectually called, and so apprehended of Christ, apprehends Christ again," ([Rom 8:30](#)). Essen. ubi supra.â€”"The sentence of justification is pronounced virtually from that first relation which ariseth from faith," ([Rom 8:1](#)). Ames. ubi supra.

Upon the whole, it is evident our author keeps the path trodden by orthodox divines on the subject; and though, in order to answer the objections of his adversary, he uses the school terms, of being justified in respect of God's decree, meritoriously, and actually, agreeably to the practice of other sound divines; yet otherwise he begins and ends his decision of this controversy, by asserting in plain and simple terms, without any distinction at all, "That a man is not justified before he believes, or without faith." So his answer amounts just to this, "That God did, from all eternity, decree to justify all the elect; and Christ did, in the fullness of time, die for their sins, and rise again for their justification nevertheless, they are not justified, until the Holy Spirit doth in due time actually apply Christ unto them." Westm. Confess. cap. 11. art. 4.

Evan. Truly, as it is the covenant of works, you are wholly and altogether delivered and set free from it; you are dead to it, and it is dead to you; and if it be dead to you, then it can do you neither good nor hurt; and if you be dead to it, you can expect neither good nor hurt from it.²²⁹ Consider, man, I pray you, that, as I said before, you are now under another

229 Concerning the deliverance from the law, which, according to the Scripture, is the privilege of believers purchased unto them by Jesus Christ, there are two opinions equally contrary to the word of God, and to one another. The one of the Legalist, That believers are under the law, even as it is the covenant of works; the other of the Antinomian, That believers are not at all under the law, no, not as it is a rule of life. Betwixt these extremes, both of them destructive of true holiness and gospel-obedience, our author, with other orthodox divines, holds the middle path; asserting [and in the proper place proving] that believers are under the law, as a rule of life, but free from it as it is the covenant of works. To be delivered from the law as it is the covenant of works, is no more but to be delivered from the covenant of works. And the asserting, that believers are delivered from the law as it is the covenant of works, doth necessarily import, that they are under the law, in some other respects thereto contra- distinguished. And forasmuch as the author teaches, that believers are under the law, as it is the law of Christ, and a rule of life to them, it is reasonable to conclude that to be it. He must needs, under the term, "the covenant of works," understand and comprehend the law of the ten commandments; because no man, understanding what the covenant of works is, can speak of it, but he must, under that term, understand and comprehend the ten commandments, even as none can speak of a man, with knowledge of a sense of that word, but under that term must understand and comprehend an organic body, as well as a soul. But it is manifest, that the law of the ten commandments, without the form of the covenant of works upon it, is not the thing he understands by that term, "the covenant of works." Neither is the form of the covenant of works [which is no more the covenant itself, than the soul without the body is the man] essential to the ten commandments, so that they cannot be without it. If it be said, that the author, by the covenant of works, understands the moral law, as it is defined, [Larg. Cat. q. 92,] it is granted; but then it amounts to no more, but that, by the covenant of works, he understands the covenant of works; for by the moral law there, is understood the covenant of works, as has been already evinced. The doctrine of believers' freedom from the covenant of works, or from the law as that covenant, is of the greatest importance, and is expressly taught. [Larg. Cat. q. 97.] "they that are regenerate, and believe in Christ, be delivered from the moral law, as a covenant of works," (Rom 6:14, 7:4,6, Gal 4:4,5) West. confess. chap. 19, art. 6.—"True believers be not under the law as a covenant of works." To these I subjoin one testimony, from the Prac. Use of Saving Knowledge, tit. "For Strengthening the Man's Faith," &c. Romans 7, fig. 3, "Albeit the apostle himself [brought in here for example's cause] and all other true believers in Christ, be by nature under the law of sin and death, or under the covenant of works; [called the law of sin and death, because it bindeth sin and death upon us, till Christ set us free;] yet the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus, or the covenant of grace, [so called because it doth enable and quicken a man to a spiritual life through Christ,] doth set the apostle, and all true believers, free from the covenant of works, or the law of sin and death." See more, *ibid.* fig. 4. As also tit. "For convincing a man of Judgment by the Law," par. 2, and last. And tit. "Evidences of true Faith." And tit. "For the First," &c. fig. 4. Now, delivering from a covenant being the dissolution of a relation which admits not of degrees, believers being delivered from the covenant of works, must be wholly and altogether set free from it.

covenant, viz: the covenant of grace; and you cannot be under two covenants at once, neither wholly nor partly; and, therefore, as, before you believed, you were wholly under the covenant of works, as Adam left both you and all his posterity after his fall; so now, since you have believed, you are wholly under the covenant of grace. Assure yourself then, that no minister, or preacher of God's word has any warrant to say unto you hereafter, "Either do this and this duty contained in the law, and avoid this and this sin forbidden in the law, and God will justify thee and save thy soul: or do it not, and he will condemn thee and damn thee."²³⁰ No, no, you are now set free both from the commanding and condemning power of the covenant of works.²³¹ So that I will say unto you, as the apostle says unto the believing

This appears also from the believers' being dead to it, and it dead to him, of which before at large. There is a twofold death competent to a believer with respect to the law, as it is the covenant of works; and so to the law as such, with respect to the believer. (1.) The believer is dead to it really, and in point of duty, while he carries himself as one who is dead to it. And this I take to be comprehended in that saying of the apostle, (Gal 2:19), "I through the law am dead to the law." In the best of the children of God here, there are such remains of the legal disposition and inclination of heart to the way of the covenant of works, that as they are never quite free of it in their best duties, so at sometimes their services smell so rank of it, as if they were alive to the law, and still dead to Christ. And sometimes the Lord for their correction, trial, and exercise of faith, suffers the ghost of the dead husband, the law, as a covenant of works, to come in upon their souls and make demands on them, command, threaten, and affright them, as if they were alive to it, and it to them. And it is one of the hardest pieces of practical religion, to be dead to the law in such cases. This death to it admits of degrees, is not alike in all believers, and is perfect in none till the death of the body. But of this kind of death to the law, the question proceeds not here. (2.) The believer is dead to it relatively, and in point of privilege; the relation betwixt him and it is dissolved, even as the relation between a husband and wife is dissolved by death; (Rom 7:4), "Wherefore, my brethren ye also are become dead to the law, by the body of Christ, that ye should be married to another." This can admit of no degrees, but it is perfect in all believers; so that they are wholly and altogether set free from it, in point of privilege, upon which the question here proceeds, and in this respect they can expect neither good nor hurt from it.

230 "Believers be not under the law, as a covenant of works, to be thereby justified or condemned." Westm. Confess. chap. 19. art. 6.

231 From the general conclusion already laid down and proved, namely, That believers are wholly and altogether set free from the covenant of works, or from the law as it is that covenant, this necessarily follows. But to consider particulars, for further clearing of this weighty point, (1.) That the covenant of works hath no power to justify a sinner, in regard to his utter inability to pay the penalty, and to fulfil the condition of it, is clear from the apostle's testimony, (Rom 8:3), "What the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son," &c. (2.) That the believer is not under the condemning power of it, appears from Galatians 3:13, "Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us."—(Rom 8:1), "There is, therefore, now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus."—(verse 33,34), "It is God that justifieth; who is he that condemneth?" (3.) As to its commanding power, believers are not under it neither; for, 1. Its

Hebrews, ([Heb 12:18,22,24](#)), "Ye are not come to Mount Sinai that might be touched, and that burned with fire; nor unto blackness, and darkness, and tempest; but ye are come unto Mount Zion, the city of the living God: and to Jesus, the Mediator of the new covenant." So that [to speak with holy reverence] God cannot, by virtue of the covenant of works, either require of you any obedience, or punish you for any disobedience; no, he cannot, by virtue of that covenant, so much as threaten you, or give you an angry word, or show you an angry look; for indeed he can see no sin in you, as a transgression of that covenant; for, says the

commanding and condemning power, in case of transgression, are inseparable; for by the sentence of that covenant, every breaker of its commands is bound over to death; ([Gal 3:10](#)), "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law, to do them."—"And whatsoever it saith, it saith to them that are under it," ([Rom 3:19](#)), Therefore, if believers are under its commanding power, they must needs be under its condemning power, yea, and actually bound over to death; forasmuch as they are, without question, breakers of its commands, if they be indeed under its commanding power. 2. If, as to any set of men, the justifying and condemning power be removed from that law which God gave to Adam as a covenant of works, and to all mankind in him, then the covenant form of that law is done away as to them; so that there is not a covenant of works in being unto them, to have a commanding power over them; but such is the case of believers, that law can neither justify them, nor condemn them; therefore, there is no covenant of works in being betwixt God and them, to have a commanding power over them; our Lord Jesus "blotted out the hand-writing, took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross," ([Col 2:14](#)). 3. Believers are dead to the law, as it is the covenant of works, and "married to another," ([Rom 7:4](#)). Therefore they are set free from the commanding power of the first husband, the covenant of works. 4. They are not under it; ([Rom 6:14](#)), "Ye are not under the law, but under grace": how then can it have a commanding power over them? 5. The consideration of the nature of the commands of the covenant of works may sufficiently clear this point. Its commands bind to perfect obedience, under the pain of the curse, which, on every slip, is bound upon the transgressor; ([Gal 3:10](#)), "Cursed is every one who continueth not in all things," &c. But Christ hath redeemed believers from the curse, (verse 13), and the law they are under speaks in softer terms, ([Psa 89:31,32](#)), "If they break my statutes, then will I visit their transgression with the rod," &c. Moreover, it commands obedience upon the ground of the strength to perform, given to mankind in Adam, which is now gone, and affords no new strength; for there is no promise of strength for duty belonging to the covenant of works: and to state believers under the covenant of works, to receive commands for their duty, and under the covenant of grace, for the promise of strength to perform, looks very unlike to the beautiful order of the dispensation of grace, held forth to us in the word; ([Rom 6:14](#)), "Ye are not under the law, but under grace." Lastly. Our Lord Jesus put himself under the commanding power of the covenant of works, and gave it perfect obedience, to deliver his people from under it; ([Gal 4:4,5](#)), "God sent forth his son, made of a woman, made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law." That they then should put their necks under that yoke again, cannot but be highly dishonouring "to this crucified Christ, who disarmed the law of its thunders, defaced the obligation of it as a covenant, and, as it were, grinded the stones upon which it was wrought to powder." Charnock, vol. 2. q. 531.

apostle, "Where there is no law, there is no transgression," (Rom 4:15).²³² And therefore, though hereafter you do through frailty transgress any of all the ten commandments,²³³ yet do you not thereby transgress the covenant of works: there is no such covenant now betwixt God and you.²³⁴

And therefore, though hereafter you shall hear such a voice as this, "If thou wilt be saved, keep the commandments"; or "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them"; nay, though you hear the voice of thunder and a fearful noise; nay, though you see blackness and darkness, and feel a great tempest; that is to say, though you hear us that are preachers, according to our commission, (Isa 58:1), "lift up our voice like a trumpet," in threatening hell and damnation to sinners and transgressors of the law; though these be the words of God, yet are you not to think that they are spoken to you.²³⁵ No, no; the apostle assures you that there is no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus, (Rom 8:1). Believe it, God never threatens eternal death, after he has given to a man eternal life.²³⁶ Nay, the truth is, God never speaks to a believer out of Christ; and in Christ he speaks not a word in the terms of the covenant of works.²³⁷ And if the law, of itself, should presume to come into your conscience, and say, "Herein and herein thou hast transgressed, and broken me, and therefore thou owest so much and so much to divine justice, which must be satisfied, or else I will take hold on thee"; then answer

232 And therefore since there is no covenant of works [or law of works, as it is called, (Rom 3:27),] betwixt God and the believer, it is manifest there can be no transgressing of it, in their case. God requires obedience of believers, and not only threatens them, gives them angry words and looks, but brings heavy judgments on them for their disobedience; but the promise of strength, and penalty of fatherly wrath only, annexed to the commands requiring obedience of them, and the anger of God against them, purged of the curse, do evidently discover, that none of these come to them, in the channel of the covenant of works.

233 And though all the sins of believers are not sins of daily infirmity, yet they are all sins of frailty; (Gal 5:17), "For the flesh lusteth against the spirit, and the spirit against the flesh, so that ye cannot do the things that ye would";—(Rom 7:19), "The evil which I would not, that I do." See chapter 5:15, 17, and 6:12.

234 Thus far of the believer's complete deliverance from the covenant of works, or from the law, namely, as it is the covenant of works. Follows the practical use to be made of it by the believer. And, 1. In hearing of the word.

235 Though they are God's own sayings, found in his written word, and spoken by his servants, as having commission from him for that effect; yet, forasmuch as they are the language of the law, as it is the covenant of works, they are directed only to those who are under that covenant, (Rom 3:19), and not to believers, who are not under it.

236 And to believers he hath given eternal life already, according to the Scripture.

237 Follows, II. The use of it, in conflicts of conscience with the law in its demands, sin in its guilt, Satan in his accusations, death in its terrors.

you and say, "O law! be it known unto thee, that I am now married unto Christ, and so I am under covert; and therefore if thou charge me with any debt, thou must enter thine action against my husband, Christ, for the wife is not sueable at the law, but the husband. But the truth is, I through him am dead to thee, O law! and thou art dead to me; and therefore Justice hath nothing to do with me, for it judgeth according to the law."²³⁸ And if it yet reply, and say, "Aye, but good works must be done and the commandments must be kept, if thou wilt

238 He begins with the conflict with the law; for, as the apostle teaches, "the sting of death is sin, and the strength of sin is the law," (1 Cor 15:56). While the law retains its power over a man, death has its sting, and sin its strength against him; but if once he is dead to the law, wholly and altogether set free from it, as it is the covenant of works; then sin hath lost its strength, death its sting, and Satan his plea against him. That the author still speaks of the law as it is the covenant of works, from the commanding and condemning power of which believers are delivered, and no otherwise, cannot reasonably be questioned, since he is still pursuing the practical use of the doctrine anent it as such; and having before spoken of it as acting by commission from God he treats of it here, as acting, as it were, of its own proper motion, and not by any such commission. To those who are under the law, the law speaks its demands and terrors, as sent from God: but to believers, who are not under it, it cannot so speak, but of itself. (Rom 8:15), "For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear." Now, in the conflict the believer has with the law or covenant of works, the author puts two cases; in which the conscience needs to be soundly directed, as in cases of the utmost weight. The first case is this, The law attempting to exercise its condemning power over him, accusing him of transgression, demands of him satisfaction to the justice of God for his sin, and threatens to hale him to execution. In this case, the author dare not advise the afflicted to say, with the servant in the parable, (Matt 18:26), "Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all"; but he teaches him to devolve his burden wholly upon his surety: he bids him plead, that since "he is married to Christ," whatever action the law may pretend to be competent to it, for the satisfaction of justice, upon the account of his sin, it must lie betwixt the law and Christ, the husband; but that, in very deed, there remains no place for such action, forasmuch as, through Jesus Christ's suffering and satisfying to the full, he is set free from the law, and owes nothing to justice nor to the law upon that score. If any man will venture to deal in other terms with the law in this case, his experience will at length sufficiently discover his mistake. Now it is manifest that this relates to the case of justification.

obtain salvation";²³⁹ then answer you, and say, "I am already saved before thou camest;²⁴⁰ and therefore I have no need of thy presence,²⁴¹ for in Christ I have all things at once: neither

239 Here is the second case, namely, the law attempting to exercise its commanding power over the believer, requires him to do good works, and to keep the commandments, if he will obtain salvation. This comes in natively in the second place. The author could not, reasonably, rest satisfied with the believer's being delivered from the curse of the covenant of works, from the debt owing to divine justice, according to its penal sanction; if he had, he would have left the afflicted still in the lurch, in the point of justification, and of inheriting eternal life: he would have proposed Christ to him only as a half saviour, and left as much of the law's plea behind without an answer as would have concluded him incapable of being justified before God, and made an heir of eternal life; for the law, as it is the covenant of works, being broken, has a twofold demand on the sinner, each of which must be answered, before he can be justified. The one is a demand of satisfaction for sin, arising from, and according to its penal sanction: this demand was made in the preceding case, and solidly answered. But there remains yet another, namely, the demand of perfect obedience, arising from, and according to the settled condition of that covenant; and the afflicted must have wherewith to answer it also; otherwise he shall still sink in the deep mire, where there is no standing. For as no judge can absolve a man, merely on his having paid the penalty of a broken contract, to which he was obliged, by and attour the fulfilling of the condition, so no man can be justified before God, nor have a right to life, till this demand of the law be also satisfied in his case. Then, and not till then, is the law's mouth stopped in point of his justification. Thus Adam, before his fall, was free from the curse; yet neither was, nor could be justified and entitled to life, until he had run the course of his obedience, prescribed him by the law as a covenant of works. Accordingly, we are taught that "God justifies sinners, not only by imputing the satisfaction, but also the obedience of Christ unto them" Westm. Confess. chap. 11. art. 1. And that "justification is an act of God's free grace, wherein he not only pardoneth all our sins, but accepteth us as righteous in his sight." Short. Cat. Here then is the second demand of the law, namely, the demand of perfect obedience, respecting the case of justification, no less than the demand of satisfaction for sin. And it is proposed in such terms as the Scripture uses to express the self-same thing. (Luke 10:28), "This do, and thou shalt live."—(Matt 19:17), "If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments." In both which passages our Lord proposeth this demand of the covenant of works, for the conviction of the proud legalists with whom he there had to do. And the truth is, that the terms in which this demand stands here conceived, are so very agreeable to the style and language of the covenant of works expressed in these texts, and elsewhere, that the law, without receding in the least from the propriety of expression, might have addressed innocent Adam, in the very same terms; changing only the word salvation into life, because he was not yet miserable; and so saying to him, Good works must be done, and the commandments must be kept, if thou wilt obtain life. What impropriety there could have been in this saying, while as yet there was no covenant known in the world, but the covenant of works, I see not. Even innocent Adam was not, by his works, to obtain life, in the way of proper merit; but in virtue of compact only. Now, this being the case, one may plainly perceive, that in the true answer to it, there can be no place for bringing in any holiness, righteousness, good works, and keeping of the commandments, but Christ's only; for nothing else can satisfy this demand of the law. And if a believer should acknowledge the necessity of his own holiness and good works, in this point, and so set about them, in order to answer this demand; then he should grossly and abominably pervert the end for which the Lord requires them of him; putting his own holiness and obedience in the room of Christ's imputed obedience; and so should fix himself in the mire out of which he could never escape, until he gave over that way and betook himself again to what Christ alone has done for satisfying this demand

of the law. But that the excluding of our holiness, good-works, and keeping of the commandments, from any part in this matter, militates nothing against the absolute necessity of holiness in its proper place, [without which, in men's own persons, no man shall see the Lord,] is a point too clear among sound Protestant divines, to be here insisted upon. And hence our author could not instruct Neophytus to say, in this conflict with the law or covenant of works, "It is my sincere resolution, in the strength of grace, to follow peace with all men, and holiness." Neither would any sound Protestant divine have put such an answer into the mouth of the afflicted in this case; knowing that our evangelical holiness and good works [suppose we could attain unto them before justification] would be rejected by the law, as filthy rags; forasmuch as the law acknowledges no holiness, no good works, no keeping of the commandments, but what is every way perfect, and will never be satisfied with sincere resolutions, to do, in the strength of grace to be given; but requires doing in perfection, in the strength of grace given already, (Gal 3:10). Therefore our author sends the afflicted unto Jesus Christ, the surety for all that is demanded of him by the law or covenant of works: and teaches him in this case, to plead Christ's works, and keeping of the commands; and this is the only safe way, which all true Christians will find themselves obliged to take at the long run, in this conflict. The difficulty raised on this head is owing to that anti-scriptural principle, "That believers are under the commanding power of the covenant of works"; which is overthrown before. The case itself, and the answer to it at large, is taken from Luther's Sermon of the Lost Sheep, pp. 77, 78, and Sermon upon the Hymn of Zacharias, p. 50.

240 Saved, namely, really, though not perfectly; even as a drowning man is saved when his head is got above the water, and he, leaning on his deliverer, is making towards the shore; in this case, the believer has no more need of the law, or covenant of works, than such a man has of one, who, to save him, would lay a weight upon him, that would make him sink again beneath the stream. Observe the manner of speaking and reasoning used on this head. (Titus 3:5), "Not by works of righteousness, which we have DONE, but according to his mercy, he SAVED us, by the washing of REGENERATION, and RENEWING of the Holy Ghost."—(Eph 2:8-10), "For by grace ARE YE SAVED, through faith, not of WORKS, lest any man should boast. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus, UNTO good works." Here (1.) It is undeniable, especially according to the original words, that the apostle asserts believers to be saved already. (2.) Denying that we are saved by works which we have done, he plainly enough intimates, that we are saved by the works which Christ has done. (3.) He argues against salvation by our works, upon this very ground, that our good works are the fruit following our being saved, and the end for which we are saved. Thus he at once overthrows the doctrine of salvation by our good works, and establishes the necessity of them, as of breathings and other actions of life to a man saved from death. (4.) He shows, that inherent holiness is an essential part of salvation, without which it can no more consist, than a man without a reasonable soul; for, according to the apostle, "We are saved by our being regenerated, renewed, created in Christ Jesus, unto good works." And so is our justification also, with all the privileges depending thereupon. In one word, the salvation bestowed on believers, comprehends both holiness and happiness. Thus the apostle Peter disproves that principle, (Acts 15:1), "Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be SAVED," from his own observation of the contrary, namely, that God purified the hearts of the Gentiles by faith, (verse 9), adding for the part of the Jews, who were circumcised, (verse 11), "We believe, that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they"; that is, even as they were saved, namely, by faith without the works of the law. And the apostle Paul, encountering the same error, carries on the dispute in these terms,

need I any thing more that is necessary²⁴² to salvation. He is my righteousness, my treasure, and work;²⁴³ I confess, O law! that I am neither godly nor righteous,²⁴⁴ but yet this I am

that a man is not justified by works, (Gal 2 and 3). From whence one may conclude, that justification does no further differ from salvation, in the Scripture sense, than an essential part from the whole. This is the doctrine of holy Luther, and of our author after him, upon this head, here and elsewhere. And the disuse of this manner of speaking, and the setting of salvation so far from justification, as heaven is from earth, are not without danger, as leaving room for works, to obtain salvation by. "They that believe, have already everlasting life, and therefore undoubtedly are justified and holy, without all their own labour." Luther's Chos. Sermons, Serm. 10, page [mihi] 113. "How has God, then, remedied thy misery? He has forgiven all my sins, and freed me from the reward thereof, and made me righteous, holy, and happy, to live for ever, and that of his free grace alone, by the merits of Jesus Christ, and working of the Holy Ghost." Mr. James Melvil's Cat. Propine of a Pastor, p. 44.—"Now, being made truly and really partakers of Christ, and his righteousness, by faith only, and so justified, saved, and counted truly righteous, we are to see what God craveth of us in our own part, to witness our thankfulness." Mr. John Davidson's Cat. p. 27. See Palat. Cat. q. 86.—"God delivereth his elect out of it [viz: the estate of sin and misery] and bringeth them into an estate of salvation by the second covenant." Larg. Cat. q. 30. And surely one cannot be in a state of salvation who is not really saved; more than one can be in a state of health and liberty, who is not really saved from sickness and slavery. "Those whom God hath predestinated unto life, and those only he is pleased, in his appointed and accepted time, effectually to call, by his word and Spirit, out of that state of sin and death in which they are by nature, to grace and salvation—effectually drawing them to Jesus Christ." Westm. Confess. chap. 10, art. 1. Whence one may easily perceive, that a sinner drawn to Jesus Christ, is saved; though not yet carried to heaven.

241 A good reason why a soul united to Jesus Christ, and already saved by him really, though not perfectly, hath no need of the presence of her first husband, the law, or covenant of works: namely, because she hath in Christ, her head and present husband, all things necessary to save her perfectly, that is, to make her completely holy and happy. If it were not so, believers might yet despair of attaining to it: since Christ shareth his office of Saviour with none; neither is their salvation in any other, whether in whole or in part, (Acts 4:12). But surely believers have all that is necessary to complete their salvation, in Jesus Christ: forasmuch as he "of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption"; in the compass of which, there is sufficient provision for all the wants of all his people. It is the great ground of their comfort, that "it pleased the Father, that in him should all fullness dwell," (Col 1:19). And it becomes them, with their whole hearts, to approve of the design and end of that glorious and happy constitution, namely, that "he that glorieth, glory in the Lord," (1 Cor 1:31). It is true, that fullness is so far from being actually conveyed, in the measure of every part, into the persons of believers at once, that the stream of conveyance will run through all the ages of eternity, in heaven, as well as on earth. Nevertheless, whole Christ, with all his fullness, is given to them at once, and therefore they have all necessary for them at once, in him as their Head. (1 Cor 3:21), "All things are yours."—(Phil 4:28), "I have all, and abound."—(2 Cor 6:10), "As having nothing, yet possessing all things."—(Col 2:10), "and ye are complete in him, which is the Head."

242 But are not personal holiness, and godliness, good works, and perseverance in holy obedience, jostled out at this rate as unnecessary? No, by no means. For Christ is the only fountain of holiness, and the cause of good works, in those who are united to him; so that, where union with Christ is, there is personal holiness infallibly; there they do good works, if capable of them, and persevere therein; and where it is not, all pretences to these things are utterly vain. Therefore are ministers directed to prosecute such doctrines, and make choice of such uses, especially, "as may most draw souls to Christ, the fountain of light, holiness, and comfort." Directory, tit. "Of the Preaching of the Word."—"As we willingly spoil ourselves of all honour and glory of our own creation and redemption, so do we also of our regeneration and sanctification; for of ourselves we are not sufficient to think one good thought; but he who has begun the work in us, is only he that continues us in the same, to the praise and the glory of his undeserved grace. So that the cause of good works, we confess to be, not our free will, but the Spirit of the Lord Jesus, who, dwelling in our hearts by true faith, bringeth forth such works, as God has prepared for us to walk in. For this we most boldly affirm, that blasphemy it is to say, that Christ abideth in the hearts of such, as in whom there is no spirit of sanctification." Old Confess. art. 12, 13.—"M. What is the effect of thy faith? C. That Jesus Christ his Son came down into this world, and accomplished all things, which were necessary for our salvation." The Manner to Examine Children, &c., quest. 3.—"Whether we look to our justification or sanctification, they are wholly wrought and perfected by Christ, in whom we are complete, howbeit after a diverse sort." Mr. John Davidson's Cat. p. 34. The truth is, personal holiness, godliness, and perseverance, are parts of the salvation already bestowed on the believer, and good works begun, the necessary fruit thereof. See the preceding note. And he hath, in Christ his head, what infallibly secures the conservation of his personal holiness and godliness: his bringing forth of good works still, and perseverance in holy obedience, and the bringing of the whole to perfection in another life, and so completing the begun salvation. If men will, without warrant from the word, restrain the term salvation to happiness in heaven, then all these, according to the doctrine here taught, are necessary to salvation, as what of necessity must go before it, in subjects capable; since, in a salvation carried on by degrees, what is by the unalterable order of the covenant first conferred on a man, must necessarily go before that which, by the same unalterable order, is conferred on him in the last place. But in the sense of Luther and our author, all these are comprehended in the salvation itself. For justifying of which, one may observe, that when the salvation is completed, they are perfected; and the saints in glory work perfectly good works, without interruption, throughout all eternity; for they were the great end God designed to bring about by the means of salvation. To the Scripture texts adduced in the preceding note, add (2 Tim 2:10), "I endure all things, for the elect's sake, that they also may obtain the salvation, which is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory." Here is a spiritual salvation, plainly distinguished from eternal glory. Compare (1 Peter 1:8,9), "Believing, ye rejoice. Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls." This receiving of salvation, in the present time, is but the accomplishment of that promise, in part; (Acts 16:31), "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved"; which, I make no question, bears a great deal of salvation, communicated on this side death, as well as beyond it; (Matt 1:21), "He shall save his people from their sins." Thus, salvation comprehends personal holiness and godliness. And the Scripture holds out good works, as things that accompany salvation, (Heb 6:9), and as the fruit of it, (Luke 1:71-75), "That we should be saved from our enemies—being delivered out of the hands of our enemies, we might serve him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before him, all

sure of, that he is godly and righteous for me.²⁴⁵ And to tell the truth, O law! I am now with him in the bridechamber, where it maketh no matter what I am,²⁴⁶ or what I have done; but what Christ, my sweet husband, is, has done, and does for me:²⁴⁷ and therefore leave off, law, to dispute with me, for by faith 'I apprehend him who hath apprehended me,' and put me into his bosom. Wherefore I will be bold to bid Moses with his tables, and all lawyers with their books, and all men with their works, hold their peace and give place:²⁴⁸

the days of our life." For it is an everlasting salvation, (Isa 45:17), importing a perseverance in holy obedience to the end.

243 My righteousness, upon which I am justified, my treasure, out of which all my debt to the law, or covenant of works, is paid, and my work, whence my righteousness arises, and which I can, with safety and comfort, oppose to the law-demand of work. "The law of God we confess and acknowledge most just, most equal, most holy, most perfect, commanding these things, which being wrought in perfection, were able to give life, and able to bring man to eternal felicity. But our nature is so corrupt, so weak, and so imperfect, that we are never able to fulfil the works of the law in perfection—and therefore it behoves us to apprehend Christ Jesus, with his justice, i.e., his righteousness and satisfaction, who is the end and accomplishment of the law." Old Confess. art. 15.

244 Namely, in the eye of the law, which acknowledgeth no godliness nor righteousness, but what is every way perfect; (Rom 4:5), "Believeth on him that justifieth the UNGODLY." And to plead any other sort of godliness or righteousness, in the conflict of conscience with the law, is vain. (Gal 3:10)

245 That is, Christ hath perfect purity of nature and life, which is all that the law can demand in point of conformity and obedience to its commandments; he was born holy, and he lived holy in perfection. Now, both these are imputed to believers, not in point of sanctification, but of justification; for without the imputation of them both, no flesh could be justified before God, because the law demands of every man purity of nature, as well as purity of life, and both of them in perfection; and since we have neither the one nor the other in ourselves, we must have both by imputation, else we must remain under the condemnation of the law. So, the Palatine Catechism. "Q. How art thou righteous before God? A. The perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ is imputed and given unto me, as if I had neither committed any sin, neither were there any blot or corruption cleaving unto me. Q. 60. The use—If Satan yet lay to my charge, Although in Christ Jesus thou hast satisfied the punishment which thy sins deserved, and hast put on his righteousness by faith, yet thou canst not deny, but that thy nature is corrupt, so that thou art prone to all ill, and thou hast in thee, the seed of all vices. Against this temptation this answer is sufficient, That by the goodness of God, not only perfect righteousness, but even the holiness of Christ also, is imputed and given unto me," &c. Ibid.—"the satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ alone is my righteousness, in the sight of God." Ibid. quest. 61.

246 Namely, to the law or covenant of works, which has no power over me, who am now married to another.

247 Luther expresses it thus, "What I am, or what I ought to do, and what not to do; but what Christ himself is, ought to do, and doth."

248 Moses with his tables, here, is no more, in the sense of Luther and our author, but the law, as it is the covenant of works; the which, whoso in the conflict of conscience with it, can treat at this rate, he is strong in faith, and happy is he. Consider the Scripture phrase, (John 5:45), "There is one that accuseth you, even Moses,

so that I say unto thee, O law! be gone." And if it will not be gone, then thrust it out by force, says Luther.²⁴⁹

And if sin offer to take hold of you, as David said his did on him, (Psa 40:12); then say you unto it, "Thy strength, O sin, is the law, (1 Cor 15:66), and the law is dead to me, So that, O sin, thy strength is gone; and therefore be sure thou shalt never be able to prevail against me, nor do me any hurt at all."²⁵⁰

And if Satan take you by the throat, and by violence draw you before God's judgment-seat, then call to your husband, Christ, and say, "Lord, I suffer violence, make answer for me, and help me." And by his help you shall be enabled to plead for yourself, after this

in whom ye TRUST." Compare (Rom 2:17), "Behold, thou art called a Jew, and RESTEST in the LAW." By Moses here, is not meant the person of Moses, but Moses' law, which the carnal Jews trusted to be saved and justified by; that is plainly, by the law, as it is the covenant of works. And in our author's judgment, the law was given on Mount Sinai as the covenant of works. And he shows, that although Luther, and Calvin too, do thus exempt a believer from the law, in the case of justification, and as it is the covenant of works, yet do they not so out of the case of justification, and as it is the law of Christ. P. 184-186. And so, at once, clears them and himself from that odious charge which some might find in their hearts to fix upon them from such expressions.

249 Luther's words are, "Then it is time to send it [the law] away, and if it will not give place," &c. See the preceding note.

250 Here is the use to be made of the same former doctrine, in the conflict of conscience with sin. Guilt, even the guilt of revenging wrath is the handle by which, in this conflict, sin offers to take hold of the believer, as it did of David, (Psa 40:12). Who, in that Psalm, speaks as a type of Christ, on whom the guilt of the elect's sin was laid. "Now, in respect of that guilt, the strength of sin is the law, or covenant of works, with its cursing and condemning power, from which, since believers are delivered, that strength of sin is gone as to them; they are free from the guilt of sin, the condemning wrath of God." Westm. Confess. chap. 20. art. 1.—"The revenging wrath of God, and that perfectly in this life." Larg. Cat. quest. 77. Whence it necessarily follows, that sin, in this attack, can never prevail nor really hurt them in this point, since there neither is, nor can be, any such guilt remaining upon them. How sin may otherwise prevail against a believer, and what hurt it may do him in other respects, the author expressly teaches here and elsewhere. In the manner of expression, he follows famous divines, whose names are in honour in the church of Christ. "God saith unto me, I will forgive thee thy sin, neither shall thy sins hurt thee." Luther, Chos. Sermon. p. 40.—"Forasmuch as Jesus Christ hath, by one infinite obedience, made satisfaction to the infinite majesty of God, it followeth, that my iniquities can no more fray nor trouble me, my accounts being assuredly razed by the precious blood of Christ." Beza, Confess. point 4. art. 10.—"Even as the viper that was upon Paul's hand, though the nature of it was to kill presently, yet when God had charmed it, you see it hurt him not; so it is with sin, though it be in us, and though it hang upon us, yet the venom of it is taken away, it hurts us not, it condemns us not." Dr. Preston on Faith, p. 51. Hear the language of the Spirit of God, (Luke 10:19); "And nothing shall by any means hurt you."—"Nothing shall hurt their souls, as to the favour of God, and their eternal happiness," says the author of the Supplement to Poole's Annot. on the Text.

manner: O God the Father! I am thy Son Christ's; thou gavest me unto him, and thou hast given unto him "all power, both in heaven and in earth, and hast committed all judgment to him"; and therefore I will stand to his judgment, who says, "he came not to judge the world, but to save it"; and therefore he will save me, according to his office. And if the jury²⁵¹ should²⁵² bring in their verdict that they have found you guilty, then speak to the Judge, and say, In case any must be condemned for my transgressions, it must needs be Christ, and not I; for albeit I have committed them, yet he hath undertaken and bound himself to answer for them, and that by the consent and good-will of God his Father: and indeed he hath fully satisfied for them.

And if death creep upon you, and attempt to devour you; then say, "Thy sting, O death! is sin; and Christ my husband has fully vanquished sin, and so deprived thee of thy sting; and therefore do I not fear any hurt that thou, O death! canst do unto me." And thus you may triumph with the apostle, saying, "Thanks be unto God, who hath given me the victory, through our Lord Jesus Christ," (1 Cor 15:56,57).

And thus have I also declared unto you how Christ, in the fullness of time, performed that which God before all time purposed, and in time promised, touching the helping and delivering of fallen mankind.

And so have I also done with the "Law of Faith."

251 The ten commandments.

252 By your own conscience.

CHAPTER III - OF THE LAW OF CHRIST.

Section 1 - The nature of the law of Christ.

Nom. Then sir, I pray you, proceed to speak of the law of Christ; and first, let us hear what the law of Christ is.

Evan. The law of Christ, in regard of substance and matter, is all one with the law of works, or covenant of works. Which matter is scattered through the whole Bible, and summed up in the decalogue, or ten commandments, commonly called the moral law, containing such things as are agreeably to the mind and will of God, that is, piety towards God, charity towards our neighbour, and sobriety towards ourselves. And therefore was it given of God to be a true and eternal rule of righteousness, for all men, of all nations, and at all times. So that evangelical grace directs a man to no other obedience than that whereof the law of the ten commandments is to be the rule.²⁵³

253 The author here teaches, that the matter of the law of works and of the law of Christ, is one, namely, the ten commandments, commonly called the moral law. And that this law of the ten commandments was given of God, and so of divine authority, to be a rule of righteousness for men to walk by; a true rule agreeable in all things to the divine nature and will; an eternal rule, indispensable, ever to continue, without interruption for any one moment; and that for all men, good, bad, saints and sinners, of all nations, Jews and Gentiles, and at all times, in all ages, from the moment of man's creation, before the fall, and after the fall; before the covenant of works, under the covenant of works, and under the covenant of grace, in its several periods. Thus he asserts this great truth, in terms used by orthodox divines, but with a greater variety of expression than is generally used upon this head, the which serves to inculcate it in the more. And speaking of the ten commandments, he declares in these words. "That neither hath Christ delivered believers any otherwise from them, than as they are the covenant of works. The scope of this part of the book, is to show that believers ought to receive them as the law of Christ, whom we believe to be with the Father, and the Holy Ghost, the eternal Jehovah, the Supreme, the most High God; and consequently as a law having a commanding power, and binding force, upon the believer, from the authority of God, and not as a simple passive rule, like a workman's rule, that hath no authority over him, to command and bind him to follow its direction. Nay, our author owns the ten commandments to be a law to believers, as well as others, again and again commanding, requiring, forbidding, reprovng, condemning sin, to which believers must yield obedience, and fenced with a penalty, which transgressing believers are to fear, as being under the law to Christ." These things are so manifest, that it is quite beyond my reach to conceive how, from the author's doctrine on this head, and especially from the passage we are now upon, it can be inferred that he teaches, that the believer is not under the law as a rule of life; or can be affirmed that he does not acknowledge the law's commanding power, and binding force upon the believer, but makes it a simple passive rule to him; unless the meaning be, that the author teaches, "That the believer is not under the covenant of works as a rule of life"? or, "that the law, as it is the covenant of works, is not a rule of life to the believer; and that he does not acknowledge the commanding power, and binding force of the covenant of works upon the believer; nor

Nom. But yet, sir, I conceive, that though [as you say] the law of Christ, in regard of substance and matter, be all one with the law of works, yet their forms do differ.

Evan. True, indeed; for [as you have heard] the law of works speaks on this wise, "Do this and thou shalt live; and if thou do it not, then thou shalt die the death": but the law of Christ speaketh on this wise, ([Eze 16:6](#)), "And when I passed by thee, and saw thee polluted in thine own blood, I said unto thee, when thou wast in thy blood, live."—([John 11:26](#)), "And whosoever liveth and believeth in me, shall never die."²⁵⁴ —([Eph 5:1,2](#)), "Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children: and walk in love, as Christ hath loved us." And "if ye love me, keep my commandments," ([John 14:15](#)). And "if they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments, then will I visit their transgressions with a rod, and their iniquity with stripes; nevertheless my loving-kindness will I not utterly take away from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail," ([Psa 89:31-33](#)). Thus, you see, that both these laws agree in saying, "Do this." But here is the difference; the one saith, "Do this and live"; and the other saith, "Live, and do this"; the one saith, Do this for life; the other saith, Do this from life: the one saith, "If thou do it not, I will chastise thee with the rod."²⁵⁵ The one is to be delivered by God as he is Creator out of Christ, only to such as are out of Christ; the other is to be delivered by God, as he is a Redeemer in Christ, only to such as are in Christ.²⁵⁶ Wherefore, neighbour

that obedience is commanded him upon the pain of the curse, and bound upon him with the cords of the threatening of eternal death in hell." For, otherwise, it is evident that he teaches the law of the ten commandments to be a rule of life to a believer, and to have a commanding and binding power over him. Now, if these be errors, the author is undoubtedly guilty; and if his sentiments on these heads were proposed in those terms, as the thing itself doth require, no wrong would be done him therein. But that these are gospel-truths, appears from what is already said: and the contrary doctrines do all issue out of the womb of that dangerous position, "That the believer is not set free both from the commanding and condemning power of the covenant of works,"—of which before.

254 These texts are adduced to show, that they to whom the law of the ten commandments is given, as the law of Christ, are those who have already received life, even life that shall never end; and that of God's free gift, before they were capable of doing good works; who therefore need not to work for life, but from life. "The preface to the ten commandments teaches us, that because God is the LORD, and our GOD, and REDEEMER, therefore we are bound to keep all his commandments." ([Luke 1:74](#)), "That we being delivered out of the hands of our enemies, might serve him without fear."—([1 Peter 1:15](#)), "As he that hath called you is holy, so be ye holy; because it is written, Be ye holy for I am holy. Forasmuch as ye know, that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things—but with the precious blood of Christ." Short. Cat. with the Scriptures at large.

255 Of this penalty of the law of Christ, the author treats afterwards.

256 To direct the believer how to receive the law of the ten commandments with application to himself, he assigns this difference betwixt the law of works and the law of Christ. the one, namely, the law of works, is the law of the ten commandments, but supposed to be delivered by God as he is Creator out of Christ; and so standing in relation to man, only as Creator, not as Redeemer; the other, namely, the law of Christ, is the same

Neophytus, seeing that you are now in Christ, beware that you receive not the ten commandments at the hands of God out of Christ, nor yet at the hands of Moses, but only at the hands of Christ; and so shall you be sure to receive them as the law of Christ.²⁵⁷

law of the ten commandments, but supposed to be delivered by God, as he is not only Creator but Redeemer in Christ. And although the notion of Creator doth not imply that of Redeemer, yet the latter implies the former; as he is Redeemer, he is sovereign Lord Creator, else we are yet in our sins, for none of inferiour dignity could remove our offence or guilt; but the word of truth secures this foundation of believers' safety and comfort; (Isa 44:6,24), "Thus saith the Lord, the King of Israel, and his Redeemer, the Lord of hosts, I am the First, and I am the Last, and besides me there is no God. Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, and He that formed thee from the womb, I am the Lord that maketh all things, that stretcheth forth the heavens alone, that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself."—(54:5), "Thy Maker is thine Husband." Now, the law of the ten commandments is given, the former way, only to unbelievers, or such as are out of Christ, the latter way to believers, or such as are in Christ. And to prove whether this be a vain distinction or not, one needs but to consult the conscience, when thoroughly awakened, whether it is all a case to it, to receive the law of the ten commandments in the thunders from Mount Sinai, or in the still small voice, out of the tabernacle, that is, from an absolute God, or from a God in Christ. It is true, unbelievers are not under the law, as it is the law of Christ; and that is their misery, even as it is the misery of the slaves, that the commands of the master of the family, though the matter of them be the very same to them, and to the children, yet they are not fatherly commands to them, as they are to the children, but purely masterly. And they are not hereby freed from any duty, within the compass of the perfect law of the ten commandments; for these commands are the matter of the law of works, as well as of the law of Christ. Neither are they thereby exempted from Christ's authority and jurisdiction, since the law of works is his law, as he is with the Father and the Holy Ghost, the Sovereign Lord Creator: yea, and even as Mediator, he rules in the midst of his enemies, and over them, with a rod of iron.

257 The receiving of the ten commandments at the hands of Christ, is here opposed, (1.) To the receiving of them at the hands of God out of Christ. (2.) To the receiving of them at the hands of Moses, namely, as our Lawgiver. The first is a receiving of them immediately from God, without a Mediator; and so receiving of them as the law of works. The second is a receiving of them from Christ, the true Mediator, yet immediately by the intervention of a typical one, and so is a receiving of them as a law of Moses, the typical Mediator, who delivered them from the ark or tabernacle. To this it is, and not to the delivering of them from Mount Sinai, that the author doth here look, as is evident from his own words. The former manner of receiving them is not agreeable to the state of real believers, since they never were, nor are given in that manner to believers in Christ, but only to unbelievers, whether under the Old or New Testament. The latter is not agreeable to the state of New Testament believers, since the true Mediator is come, and is sealed of the Father, as the great Prophet, to whom Moses must give place, (Matt 17:5, Acts 3:22). See Turret. loc. 11. q. 24, th. 15. However, the not receiving of Moses as the lawgiver of the Christian church, carries no prejudice to the honour of that faithful servant; nor to the receiving of his writings, as the word of God, they being of divine inspiration, yea, and the fundamental divine revelation.

Nom. But, sir, may not God out of Christ deliver the ten commandments, as the law of Christ?

Evan. O no! for God out of Christ stands in relation to man, according to the tenor of the law as it is the covenant of works; and, therefore, can speak to man upon no other terms than the terms of that covenant.²⁵⁸

Chapter III, Section 2

The law of the ten s a rule of life to believers.

Nom. But, sir, why may not believers amongst the Gentiles receive the ten commandments as a rule of life, at the hands of Moses, as well as the believers amongst the Jews did?

Evan. For answer hereunto, I pray you consider that, the ten commandments being the substance of the law of nature²⁵⁹ engraven in the heart of man in innocency, and the express idea, or representation of God's own image, even a beam of his own holiness, were to have been a rule of life both to Adam and his posterity, though they never had been the covenant of works;²⁶⁰ but being become the covenant of words, they were to have been a rule of life

258 This plainly concludes, that to receive the law of the ten commandments from God, as Creator out of Christ, is to receive them as the law [or covenant] of works; unless men will fancy, that after God hath made two covenants, the one of works, the other of grace, he will yet deal with them neither in the way of the one, nor of the other.

259 Calling the ten commandments but the substance of the law of nature, he plainly intimates, that they were not the whole of that law, but that the law of nature had a penal sanction. Compare his speaking of the same ten commands, still as the substance of the law of works, and of the law of Christ. Indeed, he is not of opinion, that a penal sanction is inseparable from the law of nature. That would put the glorified saints, and confirmed angels in heaven, [to say nothing more,] under a penal sanction too; for without question, they are, and will remain for ever, under the law of nature. The truth is, the law of nature is suited both to the nature of God, and to the nature of the creature; and there is no place for a penal sanction, where there is no possibility of transgression.

260 The ten commands being the substance of the law of nature, a representation of God's image, and a beam of his holiness, behoved for ever unalterably to be a rule of life to mankind, in all possible states, conditions, and circumstances; nothing but the utter destruction of human nature, and its ceasing to be, could divest them of that office, since God is unchanging in his image and holiness. Hence, their being a rule of life to Adam and his posterity, had no dependence on their becoming the covenant of works; but they would have been that rule, though there never had been any such covenant: yea, whatever covenant was introduced, whether of works or of grace, whatever form might be put upon them, they behoved still to remain the rule of life; no covenant, no form whatsoever, could ever prejudice this their royal dignity. Now, whether this state of the matter, or their being the covenant of works, which was merely accessory to them, and might never have been at all, is the firmer foundation, to build their being a rule of life upon, is no hard question to determine.

to them, as a covenant of works.²⁶¹ And then, being as it were raised out of man's heart by his fall, they were made known to Adam, and the rest of the believing fathers, by visions and revelations, and so were a rule of life to him;²⁶² yet not as the covenant of works, as they were before his fall, and so continued until the time of Moses. And as they were delivered by Moses unto the believing Jews from the ark, and so as from Christ, they were a rule of life to them, until the time of Christ's coming in the flesh. And since Christ's coming in the flesh, they have been and are to be, a rule of life both to believing Jews and believing Gentiles, unto the end of the world; not as they are delivered by Moses, but as they are delivered by Christ: for when Christ the Son comes and speaks himself, then Moses the servant must keep silence; according as Moses himself foretold, (*Acts 3:22*), saying, "A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things which he shall say unto you." And, therefore, when the disciples seemed to desire to hear Moses and Elias²⁶³ speak on the mountain Tabor, they were presently taken away; and a voice came out of the cloud, saying, "This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased;

261 And would have been so always to them all, till they had perfectly fulfilled that covenant, had they not been divested of that form, unto believers, through Jesus Christ their surety. To them they remain to be a rule of life, but not under the form of the covenant of works; but to unbelievers they are, and still will be, a rule of life under that form.

262 And to them. One will not think strange to hear, that the ten commands were, as it were, razed out of man's heart by the fall, if one considers the spirituality and vast extent of them, and that they were, in their perfection engraven on the heart of man, in his creation, and doth withal take notice of the ruin brought on man by the fall. Hereby he indeed lost the very knowledge of the law of nature, if the ten commands are to be reckoned, as certainly they are, the substance and matter of that law; although he lost it not totally, but some remains thereof were left with him. Concerning these the apostle speaks, (*Rom 1:19,20, 2:14,15*). And our author teaches expressly, that the law is partly known by nature, that is, in its corrupt state. And here he says, not simply, that the ten commandments were razed, though in another case he speaks after that manner, where yet it is evident he means not a razing quite; but he says, "They were, as it were, razed." But what are these remains of them in comparison with that body of natural laws, fairly written, and deeply engraven, on the heart of innocent Adam? If they were not, as it were, razed, what need is there of writing a new copy of them in the hearts of the elect, according to the promise of the new covenant? "I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them," (*Heb 10:16, 8:10, Jer 31:33*). What need was there of writing them in the book of the Lord, the Bible, in which they were made known again to us, as they were to Adam and the believing fathers, the author speaks of, by visions and revelations? the latter being as necessary to them as the former is to us, for that end, since these supplied to them the want of the Scriptures. As for those, who neither had these visions and revelations given to themselves, nor the doctrine thereby taught communicated to them by others, it is manifest they could have no more knowledge of those laws, than was to be found among the ruins of mankind in the fall.

263 The former, the giver of the law, the latter the restorer of it.

hear ye him," ([Matt 17:4,5](#)). As if the Lord had said, You are not now to hear either Moses or Elias, but my "well-beloved Son"; and, therefore, I say unto you, HEAR HIM.²⁶⁴ And is it not said, ([Heb 1:2](#)), "That in these last days God hath spoken to us by his Son"? and doth not the apostle say, "Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly; and whatsoever you do, in word or deed, do all in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ." The wife must be subject unto the husband, as unto Christ;²⁶⁵ the child must yield obedience to his parents, as unto Christ; and the believing servant must do his master's business, as Christ's business; for says the apostle, "Ye serve the Lord Christ," ([Col 3:16-24](#)). Yea, says he to the Galatians, "Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfil the law of Christ," ([Gal 6:2](#)).

Ant. Sir, I like it very well, that you say, Christ should be a Christian's teacher, and not Moses; but yet I question whether the ten commandments may be called the law of Christ; for where can you find them repeated, either by our Saviour, or his apostles, in the whole New Testament?

Evan. Though we find not that they are repeated in such a method as they are set down in Exodus and Deuteronomy, yet so long as we find that Christ and his apostles did require and command these things, that are therein commanded, and reprov'd and condemn those things that are therein forbidden, and that both by their lives and doctrines, it is sufficient to prove them to be the law of Christ.²⁶⁶

Ant. I think, indeed, they have done so, touching some of the commandments, but not touching all.

Evan. Because you say so, I entreat you to consider,—

264 "Which words establish Christ as the only doctor and teacher of his church; the only one whom he had entrusted to deliver his truths and will to his people; the only one to whom Christians are to hearken," Sup. to Poole's Annot. on Matthew 17:5.

265 "Wives, submit yourselves unto your husbands as unto the Lord," ([Eph 5:22](#)).

266 Whether or not this be sufficient to prove them to be the law of Christ, having a divine, authoritative, binding power on men's consciences, notwithstanding of the term doctrines here used by the author, one may judge from these texts: ([Matt 7:28,29](#)), "The people were astonished at his doctrine, for he taught them as one having authority, and not as the scribes."—([John 7:16](#)), "My doctrine is not mine, but His that sent me."—([Heb 1:1-3](#)), "God, who at sundry times, and in divers manners, spake in time past unto the fathers, by the prophets, hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds; who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person," &c.—([Matt 27:18-20](#)), "All power is given unto me in heaven and earth: go ye, therefore, and teach all nations, to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you." The original word, in the Old Testament, rendered law, doth properly signify a doctrine, Hence, ([Matt 15:9](#)), "Teaching for doctrines the commandments of men," i.e., the laws and commands of men, for the laws and commands of God. Compare verses 4-6.

1st, Whether the true knowledge of God required, ([John 3:19](#)); and the want of it condemned, ([2 Thess 1:8](#)); and the true love of God required, ([Matt 22:37](#)); and the want of it reprov'd, ([John 5:42](#)); and the true fear of God required, ([1 Peter 2:17](#), [Heb 12:28](#)); and the want of it condemned, ([Rom 3:18](#)); and the true trusting in God required, and the trusting in the creature forbidden, ([2 Cor 1:9](#), [1 Tim 6:17](#)); be not the substance of the first commandment.

And consider, 2dly, Whether the "hearing and reading of God's word," commanded, ([John 5:39](#), [Rev 1:3](#)); and "prayer," required, ([Rom 12:12](#), [1 Thess 5:17](#)); and "singing of psalms," required, ([Col 3:16](#), [James 5:13](#)); and whether "idolatry," forbidden, ([1 Cor 10:14](#), [1 John 5:21](#)); be not the substance of the second commandment.

And consider, 3dly, Whether "worshipping of God in vain," condemned, ([Matt 15:9](#)); and "using vain repetitions in prayer," forbidden, ([Matt 6:7](#)); and "hearing of the word only, and not doing," forbidden, ([James 1:22](#)); whether "worshipping God in spirit and truth," commanded, ([John 4:24](#)); and "praying with the spirit and with understanding also"; and "singing with the spirit" and "with understanding also," commended, ([1 Cor 14:15](#)); and "taking heed what we hear," ([Mark 4:24](#)); be not the substance of the third commandment.

Consider, 4thly, Whether Christ's rising from the dead the first day of the week, ([Mark 16:2,9](#)); the disciples assembling, and Christ's appearing unto them, two several first days of the week, ([John 20:19,26](#)); and the disciples coming together and breaking bread, and preaching afterwards on that day, ([Acts 20:7](#), [1 Cor 16:2](#)); and John's being in the Spirit on the Lord's day, ([Rev 1:10](#)); I say, consider whether these things do not prove, that the first day of the week is to be kept as the Christian Sabbath.

Consider, 5thly, Whether the apostle's saying, "Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right: honour thy father and thy mother, which is the first commandment with promise," ([Eph 6:1,2](#)), and all these other exhortations, given by him and the apostle Peter, both to inferiours and superiours, to do their duty to each other, ([Eph 5:22,25](#), [6:4,5,9](#), [Col 3:18-22](#), [Titus 3:1](#), [1 Peter 3:1](#), [2:18](#)); I say, consider whether all these places do not prove that the duties of the fifth commandment are required in the New Testament.

Here you see are five of the ten commandments; and as for the other five, the apostle reckons them up altogether, saying, "Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not kill, Thou shalt not steal, Thou shalt not bear false witness, Thou shalt not covet," ([Rom 13:9](#)). Now, judge you whether the ten commandments be not repeated in the New Testament; and so consequently whether they be not the law of Christ, and whether a believer be not under the law to Christ, or "in the law through Christ," as the apostle's phrase is, ([1 Cor 9:21](#)).

Chapter III, Section 3

Antinomian objections answered. Ant. But yet, sir, as I remember, both Luther and Calvin do speak as though a believer were so quite freed from the law by Christ, as that he need not make any conscience at all of yielding obedience to it.

Evan. I know right well that Luther on the Galatians, p. 59, says, "The conscience hath nothing to do with the law or works"; and that Calvin, in his Instit. p. 403, says, "The conscience of the faithful, when the affiance of their justification before God is to be sought, must raise and advance themselves above the law, and forget the whole righteousness of the law, and lay aside all thinking upon works." Now, for the true understanding of these two worthy servants of Christ, two things are to be considered and concluded. First, That when they speak thus of the law, it is evident they mean only in the case of justification. Secondly, That when the conscience hath to do with the law in the case of justification, it hath to do with it only as it is the covenant of works; for as the law is the law of Christ, it neither justifies nor condemns.²⁶⁷ And so, if you understand it of the law, as it is the covenant of works,

²⁶⁷ That is, the law of the ten commandments, commonly called the moral law, as it is the law of Christ, neither justifies nor condemns men's persons in the sight of God. How can it do either the one or the other as such, since to be under it, as it is the law of Christ, is the peculiar privilege of believers, already justified by grace, and set beyond the reach of condemnation; according to that of the apostle, (Rom 8:1), "There is, therefore, now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus"? But to say that this makes the law of Christ despicable, is to forget the sovereign authority of God in him, his matchless love in dying for sinners, the endearing relations wherein he stands to his people, and upon the one hand, the enjoyment of actual communion and fellowship with God, and the many precious tokens of his love, to be conferred on them, in the way of close walking with God; and upon the other hand, the want of that communion and fellowship, and the many fearful tokens of his anger against them for their sins. [See sec. 11.] All these belong to the law of Christ, and will never be despicable in the eyes of any gracious soul; though I doubt if ever hell and damnation were more despised in the eyes of others, than they are at this day, wherein believers and unbelievers are set so much on a level with respect to these awful things. As to the point of condemnation, it is evident from Scripture, that no law can condemn those "who are in Christ Jesus," (Rom 8:1,33,34). And the law, as it is the covenant of works, condemns all those who are not in Christ, but under the law. (Gal 3:10, Rom 3:19) And particularly, it condemns every unbeliever, whose condemnation will be fearfully aggravated by his rejection of the gospel offer; the which rejected offer will be a witness against him in the judgment; in respect whereof our Lord says, (John 12:48), "The word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day." Compare (15:22), "If I had not come and spoken unto them, they had not had sin; but now they have no cloak for their sin." Therefore the law, which unbelievers still remain under, as a covenant of works, will condemn them with a double condemnation. (John 3:18), "He that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. And hence it appears that there is as little need of, as there is warrant for, a condemning gospel. The holy Scripture states it as the difference betwixt the law and the gospel, that the former is the ministration of condemnation and

according to their meaning, then it is most true what they say; for why should a man let the law come into his conscience? That is, why should a man make any conscience of doing the law, to be justified thereby, considering it as a thing impossible? Nay, what need hath a man to make conscience of doing the law to be justified thereby, when he knows he is already justified another way? Nay, what need hath a man to make conscience of doing that law, which is dead to him, and he to it? Hath a woman any need to make conscience of doing her duty to her husband when he is dead, nay, when she herself is dead also? or, hath a debtor any need to make any conscience of paying that debt which is already fully discharged by his surety? Will any man be afraid of that obligation which is made void, the seal torn off, the writing defaced, nay, not only cancelled and crossed, but torn in pieces?²⁶⁸ I remem-

death, the latter, the ministration of righteousness and life." (2 Cor 3:6-9) Compare (John 12:47), "If any man hear my words, and believe not, I judge him not, for I came not to judge the world, but to save the world." As to the point of justification; no man is, nor can be justified by the law. It is true, the Neonomians or Baxterians, to wind in a righteousness of our own into the case of justification, do turn the gospel into a law, properly so called; and do tell us, that the gospel justifieth as a law, and roundly own what is the necessary consequent of that doctrine, namely, that faith justifieth, as it is our evangelical righteousness, or our keeping the gospel law, which runs thus: He that believeth shall not perish. [Gibbon's Ser. Morn. Ex. Meth. p. 418-421.] But the holy Scripture teaches, that we are justified by grace, and by no law nor deed, [or work of a law, properly so called,] call it the law of Christ, or the gospel law, or what law one pleaseth; and thereby faith itself, considered as a deed or work of a law, is excluded from the justification of a sinner, and hath place therein, only as an instrument. (Gal 3:11), "That no man is justified by a law in the sight of God, it is evident."—(5:4), "Whosoever of you are justified by a law, ye are fallen from grace."—(Rom 3:28), "Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith, without deeds of a law." (Gal 2:16), "Knowing that a man is not justified by works of a law." I read, a law, deeds, works, simply; because so the original words, used in these texts, do undeniably signify. To this agrees Westm. Confess. chap. 11, art. 1, "These whom God effectually calleth, he also freely justifieth, not for any thing wrought in them, or done by them, but for Christ's sake alone; not by imputing faith itself, the act of believing, or any other evangelical obedience, to them, as their righteousness; but," &c. Larg. Cat. quest. 73.—"Faith justifies a sinner in the sight of God, not as if the grace of faith, or any act thereof, were imputed to him for his justification; but only as it is an instrument by which he receiveth and applieth Christ and his righteousness." West. Confess. chap. 19, art. 6.—"Although true believers be not under the law, as a covenant of works, to be thereby justified or condemned, yet it is of great use to them, as well as to others, in that, as a rule of life, informing them of the will of God and their duty, it directs and binds them to walk accordingly." From this last passage of the confession, two important points plainly offer themselves. (1.) That the law is a rule of life to believers, directing and binding them to duty, though they are neither justified nor condemned by it. (2.) That neither justifying nor condemning belong unto the law, as a rule of life simply, but as a covenant of works. And these are the very points here taught by our author.

268 (Col 2:14), "Blotting out the hand-writing, nailing it to his cross."

ber the apostle says, (Heb 10:1,2), That if the sacrifices which were offered in the Old Testament "could have made the comers thereunto perfect, and have purged the worshippers, then should they have had no more conscience of sin"; that is, their conscience would not have accused them of being guilty of sins. Now, the "blood of Christ" hath "purged the conscience" of a believer from all his sins, (9:14), as they are transgressions against the covenant of works; and, therefore, what needs his conscience be troubled about that covenant? But now, I pray you, observe and take notice, that although Luther and Calvin do thus exempt a believer from the law, in the case of justification, and as it is the law or covenant of works, yet they do not so, out of the case of justification, and as it is the law of Christ.

For thus saith Luther, on the Galatians, p. 182, "Out of the matter of justification, we ought, with Paul, (Rom 7:12,14), to think reverently of the law, to commend it highly to call it holy, righteous, just, good, spiritual, and divine. Yea, out of the case of justification, we ought to make a God of it."²⁶⁹ And in another place, says he, on the Galatians, p. 5, "There is a civil righteousness, and a ceremonial righteousness; yea, and besides these, there is another righteousness, which is the righteousness of the law, or of the ten commandments, which Moses teacheth; this also we teach after the doctrine of faith." And in another place, he having showed that believers, through Christ, are far above the law, adds, "Howbeit, I will not deny but Moses showeth to them their duties, in which respect they are to be admonished and urged; wherefore such doctrines and admonitions ought to be among Christians, as it is certain there was among the apostles, whereby every man may be admonished of his estate and office."

And Calvin, having said, as I told you before, "That Christians, in the case of justification, must raise and advance themselves above the law," adds, "Neither can any man thereby gather that the law is superfluous to the faithful, whom, notwithstanding, it doth not cease to teach, exhort, and prick forward to goodness, although before God's judgment-seat it hath no place in their conscience."

Ant. But, sir, if I forget not, Musculus says, "That the law is utterly abrogated."

Evan. Indeed, Musculus, speaking of the ten commandments, says, If they be weak, if they be the letter, if they do work transgression, anger, curse, and death: and if Christ, by the law of the Spirit of life, delivered them that believed in him from the law of the letter, which was weak to justify, and strong to condemn, and from the curse, being made a curse for us, surely, they be abrogated. Now, this is most certain, that the ten commandments do no way work transgression, anger, curse, and death, but only as they are the covenant of works.²⁷⁰ Neither hath Christ delivered believers any otherwise from them, than as they

²⁶⁹ That is, raise our esteem of it to the highest pitch, and give it illimitable obedience.

²⁷⁰ According to the holy Scripture, it is certain, that the law of the ten commandments has an irritating effect, whereby they increase sin; and a condemning and killing effect, so that they work curse, death, and wrath, called anger [it would seem] in the language of our forefathers, when Musculus' commonplaces were Englished. And

are the covenant of works. And therefore we may assuredly conclude, that they are no otherwise abrogated, than as they are the covenant of works.²⁷¹ Neither did Musculus intend

it is no less certain, that Jesus Christ hath delivered believers from the law as it hath these effects, (Rom 14:15), "For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect, because the law worketh wrath."—(7:5,6), "For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins which were by the law, did work in our members, to bring forth fruit unto death. But now we are delivered from the law that we should serve in newness of spirit," &c.—(8:2), "For the law of the spirit of life, in Christ Jesus, has made me free from the law of sin and death."—(Gal 3:13), "Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us." If then the ten commandments have these effects, not only as they are the covenant of works, but as they are the law of Christ, or a rule of life, then believers are altogether delivered from them, which is absurd and abominable doctrine. Therefore it evidently follows, that the ten commandments have these effects, only as they are the covenant of works. The truth is, unto a gracious soul, the strongest possible temptation to Antinomianism, or casting off the ten commandments for good and all, would be to labour to persuade him, that they have these effects, not only as they are the covenant of works, but as they are the law of Christ; so that, take them what way he will, he shall find they have not only a cursing, condemning, and killing power, but also an irritating effect, increasing sin in him. Nevertheless, a Christian man's doing against them [which is the reverend Musculus' phrase, as cited by the author in the following.] may be a transgression, for a man may transgress the law, though the motions of his sins be not by the law. And how such a man's sinning is more outrageous than an ungodly man's will convincingly appear, if one measures the outrageousness of sinning, by the obligations to duty lying on the sinner, and not by his personal hazard, which is a measure more becoming a slave than a son.

271 Thus our author has proved, that the law of the ten commandments is a rule of life to believers; and hath vindicated Luther and Calvin from the opposite Antinomian error, as he does Musculus also, in the following words: and that from their express declarations, in their own words. And here is the conclusion of the whole matter. To show the judgment of other orthodox Protestant divines, on this head, against the Antinomians, it will not be amiss to adduce a passage out of a system of divinity, commonly put into the hands of students not very many years ago, I am sure. "It is one thing [says Turretine, disputing against the Antinomians] to be under the law as a covenant; another thing, to be under the law as a rule of life. In the former sense, Paul says, 'That we are not under the law, but under grace,' (Rom 6:14), as to its covenant relation, curse, and rigour; but in the latter sense we always remain bound unto it, though for a different end; for in the first covenant man was to do this, to the end that he might live; but in the other, he is bound to perform the same thing, not that he may live, but because he lives." Turret. loc. 11. quest. 24, thes. 7. View again, Westm. Confess. chap. 19, art. 6. Hereunto agreeth our author's conclusion, viz: That believers are no otherwise, not any otherwise delivered from the law of the ten commandments, but as they are the covenant of works. Now, how can those who oppose Antinomianism, on this head, contradict the author thereupon but by asserting, "That believers are not delivered from the law, as it is the covenant of works, but that they are still under the power of the covenant of works"? The which are principles as opposite to the received doctrine of orthodox Protestant divines and to the Confession of Faith, as they are to the doctrine of our author.

any otherwise; for, says he, in the words following, it must not be understood, that the points of the substance of Moses' covenant are utterly brought to nothing;²⁷² God forbid. For a Christian man is not at liberty to do those things that are ungodly and wicked; and if the doing of those things the law forbids, do not displease Christ; if they be no much different,²⁷³ yea contrary; if they be not repugnant to the righteousness which we received of him; let it be lawful for a Christian man to do them; or else not.²⁷⁴ But a Christian man doing against those things which are commanded in the decalogue, doth sin more outrageously than he that should so do, being under the law;²⁷⁵ so far off is he from being free from those things that be there commanded.

Chapter III, Secion 4

The necessity of marks and signs of grace.

Wherefore, friend Antinomista, if either you, or any man else, shall, under a pretence of your being in Christ, exempt yourselves from being under the law of the ten commands, as they are the law of Christ, I tell you truly, it is a shrewd sign you are not yet in Christ; for if you were, then Christ were in you; and If Christ were in you, then would he govern you,

272 That is, that the particular precepts of the law of the ten commandments, called by Musculus the substance of the law-covenant, are disannulled, and no more to be regarded.

273 That is, very unsuitable.

274 That is, or if they be, as certainly they are, displeasing to Christ: most unsuitable, contrary, and repugnant to the righteousness which the believer hath received from Christ, then they are by no means to be done.

275 These are the words of Musculus still, adduced by the author to show, that that famous divine was no Antinomian; and if they will not serve to clear him, but he must still be on that side, I apprehend orthodox Protestants will be sorry for their loss of that great man. But though it be observed, that he speaks of doing against the things commanded in the law, but not against the law itself, there is no hazard: for it is evident, that by the law, Musculus understands the covenant of works, or, in his style, Moses' covenant; and since he was not of the opinion that believers are under the covenant of works, no, nor under the commanding power of that covenant, he could not say that they sinned against it. However, he still looks on the ten commandments, the substance of that covenant, to be also the law of Christ, binding the Christian man to obedience. From his saying, That a Christian doing against these things, sins more outrageously than one who is under the law; it does, indeed, follow, that a Christian's sin is more displeasing to God, and deserves a heavier curse in itself, though in the mean time, the law of Christ has no curse annexed unto the transgressions of it. For, sin's deserving of a curse, arises not from the threatening, but from its contrariety to the precept, and consequently, to the holy nature of God; since it is manifest that sin does not therefore deserve a curse, because a curse is threatened; but a curse is threatened, because sin deserves it. And the sins of believers do in themselves deserve a heavier curse than the sins of others. Yet the law of Christ has not a curse annexed to the transgressions of it; because the heavy curse, deserved by the sins of believers, was already laid on Christ, to whom they are united, and he bore it for them, and bore it away from them; so that they cannot be threatened with it over again, after their union with him.

and you would be subject unto him. I am sure the prophet Isaiah tell us, that the same Lord, who is our Saviour, "is also our King and Lawgiver," ([Isa 33:22](#)); and, truly, he will not be Jesus a Saviour to any but only to those unto whom he is Christ a Lord; for the very truth is, wheresoever he is Jesus a Saviour, he is also Christ a Lord; and, therefore, I beseech you, examine yourself whether he be so to you or no.

Ant. Why then, sir, it seems that you stand upon marks and signs?

Evan. Yea, indeed, I stand so much upon marks and signs, that I say unto you in the words of the apostle John, ([1 John 3:10](#)), "In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil; whosoever does not righteousness, is not of God." For says Luther, "He that is truly baptized, is become a new man, and has a new nature, and is endowed with new dispositions; and loveth, liveth, speaketh, and does far otherwise than he was wont, or could before." For says godly Tindal, "God worketh with his word, and in his word: and bringeth faith into the hearts of his elect, and looseth the heart from sin, and knitteth it to God, and giveth a man power to do that which was before impossible for him to do, and turneth him into a new nature." 1 And, therefore, says Luther in another place, "Herein works are to be extolled and commended, in that they are fruits and signs of faith; and, therefore, he that hath no regard how he leadeth his life, that he may stop the mouths of all blamers and accusers, and clear himself before all, and testify the he has lived, spoken, and done well, is not yet a Christian." How then, says Tindal again, "dare any man think that God's favour is on him, and God's Spirit within him, when he feels not the working of his Spirit, nor himself disposed to any good thing?" 2 Evan. Indeed, I must needs confess with Mr. Bolton and Mr. Dyke, that in these times of Christianity, a reprobate may make a glorious profession of the gospel, and perform all the duties and exercises of religion, and that, in outward appearance, with as great spirit and zeal as a true believer; yea, he may be made partaker of some measure of inward illumination, and have a shadow of true regeneration; there being no grace effectually wrought in the faithful, a resemblance whereof may not be found in the unregenerate. And therefore, I say, if any man pitch upon the sign, without the thing signified by the sign, 3 that is, if he pitch upon his graces [or gifts rather] and duties, and conclude *The Marrow of Modern Divinity* by THOMAS BOSTON

Chapter III, Section 5

Antinomian objections answered.

Ant. But, sir, you know the Lord hath promised to write his law in a believer's heart, and to give him his Spirit to lead him into all truth: and therefore he hath no need of the law, written with paper and ink, to be a rule of life to him; neither hath he any need to endeavour to be obedient thereunto, as you say.

Evan. Indeed, says Luther, the matter would even so far as you say, if we were perfectly and altogether the inward and spiritual men, which cannot be in any wise before the last day at the rising again of the dead:²⁷⁶ so long as we be clothed with this mortal flesh, we do but begin and proceed onwards in our course towards perfection, which will be consummated in the life to come: and for this cause the apostle, ([Rom 8](#)) doth call this the "first fruits of the Spirit," which we do enjoy in this life, the truth and fullness of which we shall receive in the life to come. And therefore, says he in another place, it is necessary so to preach to them that have received the doctrine of faith, that they might be stirred up to go on in good life, which they have embraced; and that they suffer not themselves to be overcome by the assaults of the raging flesh; for we will not so presume of the doctrine of faith, as if, that being had, every man might do what he listed: no, we must earnestly endeavour ourselves, that we may be without blame; and when we cannot attain thereunto, we must flee to prayer, and say before God and man, "Forgive us our trespasses." And, says Calvin, Instit. p. 162, one proper use and end of the law, concerning the faithful,²⁷⁷ in whose hearts liveth and reigneth the Spirit of God, is this: namely, although they have the law written and engraven in their hearts by the finger of God, yet is the²⁷⁸ law to them a very good means, whereby they may daily, better and more assuredly, learn what is the will of the Lord: and let none of us exempt himself from this need, for no man hath hitherto attained to so great wisdom, but that he hath need to be daily instructed by the law. And herein Christ differeth from us, that the Father hath poured out upon him the infinite abundance of his Spirit: but whatsoever we do receive, it is so by measure, that we have need one of another.

Now mind it, I pray you, if believers have the Spirit but in measure, and know but in part, then have they the "law written in their hearts" but in measure and in part,²⁷⁹ ([1 Cor 13:9](#)); and if they have the law written in their hearts but in measure and in part, then have they not a perfect rule within them; and if they have not a perfect rule within them, then they have need to have a rule without them. And therefore, doubtless, the strongest believer of us all, had need to hearken to the advice of Tindal, who says, "Seek the word of God in all things, and without the word of God do nothing." And says another godly and evangel-

276 We would have no need for the law written without us, if, as we are spiritual in part, in respect of sanctification begun in us, we were perfectly and altogether spiritual, both in body and soul. But that is not to be expected till the resurrection; when that which is now "sown a natural body, is raised a spiritual body," ([1 Cor 15:44](#)); being re-united to the spirit or soul "made perfect at death"; ([Heb 12:23](#)); the which doth therefore no more, from the moment of death, need the law written without it.

277 That is, respecting believers.

278 Written.

279 They have not the law written completely and perfectly in their hearts.

ical writer, "My brethren, let us do our whole endeavour to do the will of God as it becometh good children, and beware that we sin not, as near as we can."

Ant. Well, sir, I cannot tell what to say, but, methinks, when a man is perfectly justified by faith, it is a very needless thing for him to endeavour to keep the law, and to do good works.²⁸⁰

Evan. I remember Luther says, that in his time there were some that did reason after the like manner: "If faith, say they, do accomplish all things, and if faith be only and alone sufficient unto righteousness, to what end are we commanded to do good deeds? we may go play then, and work no working at all." To whom he makes an answer, saying, "Not so, ye ungodly! not so." And there were others that said, "If the law do not justify, then it is in vain, and of none effect." "Yet it is not therefore true, says he; for like as this consequence is nothing worth, money doth not justify or make a man righteous, therefore it is unprofitable; the eyes do not justify, therefore they must be plucked out; the hands make not a man righteous, therefore they must be cut off; so is this naught also, the law doth not justify, therefore it is unprofitable. We do not therefore destroy and condemn the law, because we say it doth not justify; but we say with Paul, (1 Tim 1:8), 'the law is good, if a man do rightly use it.' And that this is a faithful saying, that they 'which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works; these things are good and profitable unto men,'" (Titus 3:8).

Chapter III, Section 6

Holiness and good works attained to only by faith.

Neo. Truly, sir, for mine own part, I do much marvel that this my friend Antinomista should be so confident of his faith in Christ, and yet so little regard holiness of life, and keeping of Christ's commandments, as it seems he does. For I give the Lord thanks, I do now, in some small measure, believe that I am, by Christ, freely and fully justified and acquitted from all my sins, and therefore have no need either to eschew evil or do good, for fear of punishment or hope of reward; and yet, methinks, I find my heart more willing and desirous to do what the Lord commands, and to avoid what he forbids, than ever it was before

280 This Antinomian principle, That it is needless for a man, perfectly justified by faith, to endeavour to keep the law, and do good works, is a glaring evidence that legality is so engrained in man's corrupt nature, that until a man truly come to Christ, by faith, the legal disposition will still be reigning in him; let him turn himself into what shape, or be of what principles he will in religion; though he run into Antinomianism he will carry along with him his legal spirit, which will always be a slavish and unholy spirit. He is constrained, as the author observes, to do all that he does for fear of punishment, and hope of reward; and if it is once fixed in his mind that these are ceased in his case, he stands still like a clock when the weights that made her go are removed, or like a slave when he is in no hazard of the whip; than which there cannot be a greater evidence of loathsome legality.

I did thus believe.²⁸¹ Surely, sir, I do perceive that faith in Christ is no hindrance to holiness of life, as I once thought it was.

281 It is not the scope or design of Neophytus here, to show wherein the essence of faith consists, or to give a definition to it. But suppose it was so, his definition falls considerably short of some given by famous orthodox Protestant divines, yea, and churches too. See the note on the definition of faith. I repeat here Mr. John Davidson's definition only, viz: "Faith is an hearty assurance that our sins are freely forgiven us in Christ." From whence one may clearly see, that some time a-day, it was reckoned no absurdity that one's justification was made the object of one's belief. For the understanding of which ancient Protestant doctrine, grown almost quite out of ken with unlearned readers, I shall adduce a passage out of Wendeline's *Christ. Theol. lib. 1. cap. 24, p. 542, 543.* He proposes the Popish objection thus, "Justifying faith must go before justification; but the faith of special mercy doth not go before justification; if it did, it were false; for at that rate, a man should believe that his sins are forgiven, which as yet are not forgiven, since they are not forgiven but by justification; therefore the faith of special mercy is not justifying faith." In answer to which, he denies the second of these propositions, with the proofs thereof, and concludes in these words: "Justifying faith, therefore, hath for the special object of it, forgiveness of sins, future, present, and past." He explains it thus, "By the faith of special mercy, as it goeth before justification, a man doth not believe that his sins are forgiven him already, before the act of believing"; this, by the by, is the Antinomian faith, justifying only declaratively. Follows the true doctrine of faith: "But that he shall have forgiveness of sins; in the very act of justification, he believes his sins are forgiven him, and so receives forgiveness; after justification, he believes the past application," viz: forgiveness, that is, that his sins are now already forgiven him. But the design of Neophytus is, to make a profession of his faith, and, by an argument drawn from Christian experience, to refute the Antinomian pretended faith, whereby a sinner, at first brush, believes his sins to be already forgiven him, before the act of believing, and thereafter hath no regard to holiness of life; a plain evidence that that persuasion is not of God. And in opposition to it, is this profession made, which consists of three parts: (1.) He professes that he believes himself to be justified and acquitted from all his sins; and this is the belief of the past application, after justification, which we heard before from Wendeline. For we have already found Neophytus brought unto faith in Christ, and the match betwixt Christ and him declared to be made, though his faith was accompanied with fears. And now he finds his faith grown up in some small measure unto the height which Antinomista pretended his faith to be at, namely, unto believing himself to be already justified; but withal he intimates, that his faith had not come to this pitch all of a sudden, as Antinomista's had done; but that it was some time after he believed, ere he did thus believe. And now, indeed, his believing thus, only in some small measure, was his sin, and argued the weakness of his faith: but such a man's believing, in any measure, great or small, that he was justified and acquitted from all his sins, must be commended and approved, unless we will bring back the Popish doctrine of doubting. (2.) He professes, That therefore, namely, since he was justified, and believed himself to be so, he had no need to eschew evil, or do good for fear of punishment or hope of reward; the which Antinomista pretending to likewise, had cast off all care of keeping the law, or doing good works, having no other principle of obedience within him. This does not at all look to punishments and rewards, improperly so called, that is, fatherly chastisements and favours, of which the author afterwards treats expressly; but it is plainly meant of rewards and punishments taken in a proper sense, as flowing

Evan. Neighbour Neophytus, if our friend Antinomista do content himself with a mere gospel knowledge, in a notionary way, and have run out to fetch in notions from Christ, and yet is not fetched in by the power of Christ, let us pity him, and pray for him. And in the mean time, I pray you, know that true faith in Christ²⁸² is so far from being a hindrance from holiness of life and good works, that it is the only furtherance; for only by faith in Christ, a man is enabled to exercise all Christian graces aright, and to perform all Christian duties aright, which before he could not. As, for example, before a man believe God's love to him in Christ, though he may have a kind of love to God, as he is his Creator and Preserver, and gives him many good things for this present life, yet if God do but open his eyes, to see what condition his soul is in, that is, if he do but let him see that relation that is betwixt God and him, according to the tenor of the covenant of works, then he conceives of him as an angry Judge, armed with justice against him, and must be pacified by the works of the law, whereunto he finds his nature opposite and contrary; and therefore he hates both God and his law, and doth secretly wish and desire there were neither God nor law. And though God should now give unto him ever so many temporal blessings, yet could he not love him; for what malefactor could love that judge or his law, from whom he expected the sentence of condemnation, though he should feast him at his table with ever so many dainties? "But after that the kindness and love of God his Saviour hath appeared, not by works of righteousness that he hath done, but according to his mercy he saved him," ([Titus 3:4,5](#)); that is, when as by the eye of faith, he sees himself to stand in relation to God, according to the tenor of the covenant of grace,²⁸³ then he conceives of God as a most merciful and loving Father to him in Christ, that hath freely pardoned and forgiven him all his sins, and quite released him from the covenant of works,²⁸⁴ and by this means "the love of God is shed abroad in

from the justice of God, remunerative and vindictive, and proceeding upon our works, good and evil; and particularly it is meant of heaven and hell. This is the sense in which that phrase is commonly used by divines; and that it is so to be taken here, is evident from its being inferred from his justification, which indeed leaves no place for fear of punishment and hope of reward in the latter sense: but not so in the former sense. And thus, it appears, Nomista understood it, as shall appear afterwards. (3.) He professes, That he was so far from being the less inclined to duty, that he believed himself to be fully justified, and that the fear of punishment and hope of reward were ceased in his case; that, on the contrary, he found, as his faith grew, his love to and readiness for holiness of life, grew: he was more willing, and more desirous to do the Lord's commandments than he had been before his faith was advanced to that pitch. And herein, I conceive, the experience of the saints will not contradict him. Thus he gives a plain testimony against the Antinomian faith.

282 Namely, the faith of special mercy, or a faith of particular application, without which, in greater or lesser measure, it is not saving faith.

283 His soul resting on Christ, whom he hath received for salvation.

284 Thus he conceives of God according to the measure of his faith, or of his soul's resting on Christ, which admits of various degrees.

his heart, through the Holy Ghost which is given to him," and then "he loves God because he first loved him," ([Rom 5:5](#), [1 John 4:19](#)). For as a man seeth and feeleth by faith the love and favour of God towards him in Christ his Son, so doth he love again both God and his law; and indeed it is impossible for any man to love God, till by faith he know himself beloved of God.

Secondly, Though a man, before he believe God's love to him in Christ, may have a great measure of legal humiliation, compunction, sorrow, and grief, and be brought down, as it were, to the very gate of hell, and feel the very flashing of hell-fire in his conscience for his sins, yet it is not because he hath thereby offended God, but rather because he hath thereby offended himself, that is, because he hath thereby brought himself into the danger of eternal death and condemnation.²⁸⁵ But when once he believes the love of God to him in Christ in pardoning his iniquity, and passing by his transgressions,²⁸⁶ then he sorrows and grieves for the offence of God by sin; reasoning thus with himself: And is it so indeed? Hath the Lord given his own Son to death for me who have been such a vile sinful wretch? And hath Christ borne all thy sins? and was he wounded for thy transgressions? Oh then, the working of his bowels, the stirring of his affections, the melting and relenting of his repenting heart! "Then he remembers his own evil ways, and his doings that were not good, and loathes himself in his own eyes for all his abominations"; and looking upon Christ, "whom he hath pierced, he mourns bitterly for him, as one mourneth for his only son," ([Eze 36:31](#), [Zech 12:10](#)). Thus, when faith has bathed a man's heart in the blood of Christ, it is so mollified that it quickly dissolves into tears of godly sorrow; so that if Christ do but turn and look upon him, Oh then, with Peter, he goes out and weeps bitterly! And this is true gospel-mourning; and this is right evangelical repenting.²⁸⁷

Thirdly, Though, before a man do truly believe in Christ, he may so reform his life and amend his ways, that as "touching the righteousness which is of the law," he may be, with the apostle, blameless, ([Phil 3:6](#)); yet, being under the covenant of works, all the obedience that he yields to the law, all his leaving off of sin, and performance of duties, all his avoiding

285 A man's believing God's love to him, is woven into the very nature of saving faith, as hath been already shown. Wherefore, whatsoever humiliation, compunction, sorrow, and grief for sin, go before it, they must needs be but legal, being before faith, "without which it is impossible to please God," ([Heb 11:6](#)).

286 The belief of which, in some measure, is included in the nature of faith.—See note on the definition of faith.

287 This is the springing up of the "seeds of repentance put into the heart in sanctification," *Larg. Cat.* q. 75; a work of sanctifying grace, acceptable to God; the curse being taken off the sinner, and his person accepted in the Beloved, and like to the mourning and repenting of that woman, ([Luke 7:47](#)), "Who, having much forgiven her, loved much." Betwixt which repentance and pardon of sin, there is an inseparable connection, so that it is of such necessity to all sinners, that none may expect pardon without it. *Westm. Confess.* chap. 15. art. 3.

what the law forbids, and all his doing what the law commands, is begotten by the law of works, of Hagar the bond-woman, by the force of self-love; and so, indeed, they are the fruit and works of a bond-servant, that is moved and constrained to do all that he doth, for fear of punishment and hope of reward.²⁸⁸ "For," says Luther, on the Galatians, p. 218, "the law given on Mount Sinai, which the Arabians call Agar, begetteth none but servants." And so indeed all that such a man doth is but hypocrisy; for he pretends the serving of God, whereas, indeed, he intends the serving of himself. And how can he do otherwise? for whilst he wants faith, he wants all things: he is an empty vine, and therefore must needs bring forth fruit unto himself: ([Hosea 10:1](#)). Till a man be served himself, he will not serve the Lord Christ.²⁸⁹ Nay, while he wants faith, he wants the love of Christ, and therefore he lives not to Christ, but to himself, because he loves himself. And hence, surely, we may conceive it is that Dr. Preston says, "All that a man doeth, not out of love, is out of hypocrisy. Wheresoever love is not, there is nothing but hypocrisy in such a man's heart."

288 This can have no reference at all to the motives of a believer's obedience, unless believers, as well as unbelievers, are to be reckoned to be under the covenant of works; for it is manifest, that the author speaks here of such only as are under that covenant. But, on the contrary, if a man is under the covenant of works called the law, in the style of the Holy Ghost, he is not a believer, but an unbeliever, (Rom 6:14), "Sin shall not have dominion over you; for ye are not under the law, but under grace." This reasoning proceeds upon this principle, viz: Those who are under the covenant of works, and they only, are under the dominion or reigning power of sin. And if men, being under the covenant of works, are under the dominion of sin, it is evident that they are not believers, but bond-servants, that the love of God dwelleth not in them, but corrupt self-love reigns in them; and, therefore, unto the good they do, they are constrained, by fear of punishment and hope of reward, agreeable to the threatening and promise of the broken covenant of works they are under; that their obedience, conform to their state and condition, is but servile; no better than it is here described to be, having only the letter, but not the spirit of true obedience, the which, before any man can attain unto, he must be set free from the covenant of works, as the apostle teaches; (Rom 7:6), "But now, we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter": and finally, that as is the condition and the obedience of those under the covenant of works, so shall their end be, (Gal 4:30), "Cast out the bond-woman and her son: for the son of the bond-woman shall not be heir with the son of the free-woman."

289 That is, till the empty vine be filled with the Spirit from Jesus Christ, it will never bring forth fruit unto him. Till a man do once eat by faith he will never work aright. The conscience must be purged from dead works, else one is not in case "to serve the living God," (Heb 9:14). The covenant of works says to the sinner, who is yet without strength, "Work, and then ye shall be filled"; but the covenant of grace says to him, "Be filled, and then thou must work." And until the yoke of the covenant of works be taken off a man's jaws, and meat be laid unto him, he will never take on and bear the yoke of Christ's acceptably.

But when a man, through the "hearing of faith, receives the Spirit of Christ," (Gal 3:2), that Spirit, according to the measure of faith, writes the lively law of love in his heart, [as Tindal sweetly says,] whereby he is enabled to work freely and of his own accord, without the co-action or compulsion of the law.²⁹⁰ For that love wherewith Christ, or God in Christ,

290 The words co-action and compulsion signify one and the same thing, viz: forcing; so that to work without the co-action or compulsion of the law, is to work without being force thereto by the law. One would think it so very plain and obvious, that the way how the law forceth men to work, is by the terror of the dreadful punishment which it threatens in case of not working, that it does but darken the matter to say, The co-action or compulsion of the law consists in its commanding and binding power or force; the which must needs be meant of the commanding and binding power of the covenant of works, or of the law, as it is the covenant of works. For it cannot be meant [as these words seem to bear] of that power which the law of the ten commandments, as a rule of life, hath over men, to bind them to obedience, under which, I think, the impartial reader is by this time convinced that the author denies not believers still to be; for to call that co-action or compulsion, is contrary to the common understanding and usage of these words in society. At this rate, one must say, That the glorified saints and angels [to ascend no higher] being, as creatures of God, under the commanding and binding power of the eternal rule of righteousness, are compelled and forced to their obedience too; and that when we pray, "Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven," we pray to be enabled to obey the will of God, as the angels do in heaven, by co-action and compulsion in the height thereof; for surely the angels have the sense of the commanding and binding power of the eternal rule of righteousness upon them in a degree far beyond what any believer on earth has. Wherefore that exposition of the co-action or compulsion of the law, and so putting believers under the law's co-action or compulsion, amount just to what we met with before, namely, That believers are under the commanding power [at least] of the covenant of works, having obedience bound upon them with the cords of hell, or under the pain of the curse. Accordingly, the compulsion of the law is more plainly described to be its binding power and moral force, which it derives from the awful authority of the sovereign Lawgiver, commanding obedience to his law, and threatening disobedience with wrath, or with death, or hell. And so our author is blamed for not subjecting believers to this compulsion of the law. In the preceding paragraph he had shown, that the obedience of unbelievers to the law of the ten commandments is produced by the influence of the law [or covenant] of works upon them, forcing or constraining them thereto by the fear of the punishment which it threatens. Thus, they work by the co-action or compulsion of the law, or covenant of works, being destitute of the love of God. Here he affirms, that when once a man is brought unto Christ, he having the sanctifying Spirit of Christ dwelling in him, and being endowed with faith that purifies the heart, and with love that is strong as death, is enabled to work freely, and of his own accord, without that co- action or compulsion. This is the doctrine of the holy Scripture. (Psa 51:12), "Uphold me with thy free spirit." Compare (Gal 5:18), "But if ye be led by the Spirit, ye are not under the law." So (Psa 110:3), "Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power." Compare (1 Peter 5:2), "Not by constraint but willingly." And believers are declared to be "not under the law," (Rom 6:14).—"To be made free from the law of death. Not to have received the spirit of bondage again to fear, but the spirit of adoption," (8:2,15). How then can they still be under the co-active and compulsive power of the law, frightening and forcing them to obedience by its threatenings of the second death, or eternal wrath? And

hath loved him, and which by faith is apprehended of him, will constrain him to do so; according to that of the apostle, (2 Cor 5:14), "The love of Christ constraineth us." That is, it will make him do so, whether he will or no; he cannot choose, but do it.²⁹¹ I tell you truly, answerably as the love of Christ is shed abroad in the heart of any man, it is such a strong impulsion, that it carries him on to serve and please the Lord in all things, according to the saying of an evangelical man:²⁹² "The will and affection of a believer, according to the

it is evident that this is the received doctrine of orthodox divines, which might be attested by a cloud of witnesses, if the nature of this work did permit. "Not to be under the law," says Luther, "is to do good things, and abstain from wicked things, not through compulsion of the law, but by free love, and with pleasure." Chos. Ser. 20, p. 232. "The second part [viz: of Christian liberty] is," says Calvin, "that consciences obey the law, not as compelled by the necessity of the law, but being free from the yoke of the law itself, of their own accord they obey the will of God." Instit. book 3, chap. 19, sec. 4. "We would distinguish betwixt the law, considered as a law and as a covenant. A law doth necessarily imply no more than, (1.) To direct. (2.) To command, enforcing that obedience by authority. A covenant doth further necessarily imply promises made upon some condition, or threatenings added, if such a condition be not performed. The first two are essential to the law, the last two to believers, are made void through Christ; in which sense it is said, that by him we are freed from the law as a covenant; so that believers' lives depend not on the promises annexed to the law, nor are they in danger by the threatenings adjoined to it." Durham on the Commands, p. 4. "What a new creature doth, in observance of the law, is from natural freedom, choice, and judgment, and not by the force of any threatenings annexed to it." Charnock, vol. 2, p. 59. See Westminster Confession, chap. 20, art. 1, of which afterwards. And thus is that text, (1 Tim 1:9), "The law is not made for a righteous man, generally understood by divines, critics, and commentators, the law, threatening, compelling, condemning, is not made for a righteous man, because he is pushed forward to duty of his own accord, and is no more led by the spirit of bondage, and fear of punishment." Turret. loc. 2, q. 24, th. 8.—"By the law is to be understood the moral law, as it is armed in stings and terrors, to restrain rebellious sinners. By the righteous man is meant one in whom a principle of divine grace is planted, and who, from the knowledge and love of God, chooses the things that are pleasing to him. As the law has annexed so many severe threatenings to the transgressors of it, it is evident that it is directed to the wicked, who will only be compelled by fear from an outrageous breaking of it." Continuation of Poole's Annotations on the Text. "The law is not for him, as a master to command him, to constrain him as a bondman." Lodovic de Dieu. "The law doth not compel, press on, fright, lie heavy upon, and punish a righteous man." Strigelius.—"It lies not on him as a heavy burden, compelling a man against his will, violently pressing him on, and pushing him forwards; it doth not draw him to obedience; but leads him, being willing." Scultetus.—"For of his own accord he doth right." Castalio, apud Pol. Synop. in Loc.

291 "It is a metonymy from the effect, that is, love makes me to do it in that manner, as a man that is compelled; that is the meaning of it. So it has the same effect that compulsion hath, though there be nothing more different from compulsion than love." Dr. Preston, *ibid.* p. 29.

292 If one considers that the drift and scope of this whole discourse, is to discover the naughtiness of Antinomista's faith, observed by Neophytus, one may perceive, that by the author's quoting Towne, the Antinomian,

measure of faith and the spirit received, sweetly quickens and bends, to choose, affect, and delight in whatever is good and acceptable to God, or a good man; the Spirit freely and cheerfully moving and inclining him to keep the law, without fear of hell or hope of heaven." For a Christian man, says sweet Tindal, worketh only because it is the will of his Father; for after that he is overcome with love and kindness, he seeks to do the will of God, which is indeed a Christian man's nature; and what he doth, he doth it freely after the example of Christ. As a natural son, ask him why he does such a thing. Why, says he, it is the will of my Father, and I do it that I may please him; for, indeed, love desireth no wages, it is wages enough to itself, it hath sweetness enough in itself, it desires no addition, it pays its own wages. And therefore it is the true child-like obedience, being begotten by faith, of Sarah the free-woman, by the force of God's love. And so it is indeed the only true and sincere obedience: for, says Dr. Preston, "To do a thing in love, is to do it in sincerity; and, indeed, there is no other definition of sincerity; that is the best way to know it by."

Chapter III, Section 7

Slavish fear and servile hope not the springs of true obedience.

Nom. But stay, sir, I pray you, would you not have believers to eschew evil and do good, for fear of hell, or for hope of heaven?

Evan. No, indeed, I would not have any believer to do either the one or the other; for so far forth as they do so, their obedience is but slavish.²⁹³ And therefore though, when

upon that head, he gives no more ground to suspect himself of Antinomianism, though he calls him an evangelical man than a Protestant gives in point of Popery, by quoting Cardinal Bellarmine against a Papist, though withal he call him a Catholic. And the epithet given to Towne, is so far from being a high commendation, that, really, it is none at all; for, though both these epithets, the latter as well as the former, are in themselves honourable, yet in these cases, a man speaking in the language of his adversary, they are nothing so. Evangelista could not but remember that Antinomista had told him roundly, "That he had not been so evangelical as some others in the city, which caused him to leave hearing of him, to hear them," viz: those evangelical men; and why might not he give him a sound note from one of those evangelical men, even under that character, so acceptable to him, without ranking himself with them?

293 As for what concerns the hope of heaven, the author purposely explains that matter, that he would not have any believer to eschew evil or do good for fear of hell; the meaning thereof plainly is this, you being a believer in Christ, ought not to eschew evil and do good, for fear you be condemned, and cast into hell. So far as a believer doth so, the author justly reckons his obedience accordingly slavish. This is the common understanding and sense of such a phrase, as when we say, The slave works for fear of the whip. Some men abstain from stealing, robbing, and the like, for fear of the gallows; they eschew evil, not from love of virtue, but for fear of punishment, as the heathen poet says of his pretender to virtue, Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore, Tu nihil admittes in te formidine poenae. Horat. Epist. 16. Which may be thus Englished: Hatred of vice, in generous souls, From love

of virtue flows, While nothing vicious minds controls But servile fear of blows. This is quite another thing than to say, that a believer in doing good, or eschewing evil, ought not to regard threatenings, nor be influenced by the threatening of death. For though believers ought never to fear that they shall be condemned and cast into hell, yet they both may and ought awfully to regard the threatenings of the holy law: and how they ought to regard them, one may learn from the Westm. Confess. chap. 19, art. 6, in these words, "The threatenings of it [viz: the law] serve to show what even their sins deserve; and what afflictions in this life they may expect for them, although freed from the curse thereof threatened in the law." Thus they are to regard them, not as denunciations of their doom, in case of sinning, but as a looking-glass wherein to behold the fearful demerit of their sin; the unspeakable love of God in freeing them from bearing it, his fatherly displeasure against his own for their sin, and the tokens of his anger to be expected by them in that case. So will they be influenced to eschew evil and do good, being thereby filled with hatred and horror of sin, thankfulness to God, and fear of the displeasure and frowns of their Father, though not with a fear that he will condemn them, and destroy them in hell; this glass represents no such thing. Such a fear in a believer is groundless. For (1.) He is not under the threatening of hell, or liable to the curse. If he were, he behoved that moment he sinneth to fall under the curse. For since the curse is the sentence of the law, passing on the sinner, according to the threatening, adjudging, and binding him over to the punishment threatened; if the law say to a man, before he sinneth, "In the day thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die," it says unto him, in the moment he sinneth, "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things written in the law, to do them." And forasmuch as believers sin in every thing they do, their very believing and repenting being always attended with sinful imperfections, it is not possible, at this rate, that they can be one moment from under the curse; but it must be continually wreathed about their necks. To distinguish in this case, betwixt gross sins and lesser sins, is vain; for as every sin, even the least, deserves God's wrath and curse, [Short. Cat.,] so, against whomsoever the curse takes place, [and by virtue of God's truth, it takes place against all those who are threatened with hell or eternal death] they are cursed for all sins, smaller or greater: "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things": though still there is a difference made betwixt greater and lesser sins, in respect of the degree of punishment, yet there is none in respect of the kind. But now believers are set free from the curse. (Gal 3:13), "Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us." (2.) By the redemption of Christ already applied to the believer, and by the oath of God, he is perfectly secured from the return of the curse upon him, (Gal 3:13), [see before,] compared with (Isa 53, 54:9), "For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for, as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee." Therefore he is perfectly secured from being made liable any more to hell or eternal death. For a man, being under the curse, is "so made liable to the pains of hell for ever." Short. Cat. (3.) He is justified by faith, and so adjudged to live eternally in heaven. This is unalterable, "for the gifts and calling of God are without repentance," (Rom 11:29). And a man can never stand adjudged to eternal life, and to eternal death, at one and the same time. (4.) One great difference betwixt believers and unbelievers lies here, that the latter are bound over to hell and wrath, the former are not: (John 3:18), "He that believeth is not condemned: but he that believeth not, is condemned already"; not that he is in hell already, but bound over to it. Now, a believer is still a believer, from the first moment of his believing; and therefore it remains true concerning him, from that moment for ever, that he is not condemned or bound over to hell and wrath. He is expressly secured against it for all time to come, from that moment. (John 5:24), "He shall not come into condemnation." And the apostle cuts off all

they were first awakened and convinced of their misery, and set foot forward to go on in the way of life, they, with the prodigal, would be hired servants; yet when, by the eye of faith,

evasion by distinctions of condemnation here, while he tells us in express terms, "There is no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus," (Rom 8:1). (5.) The believer's union with Christ is never dissolved. (Hosea 2:19), "I will betroth thee unto me for ever": and being in Christ he is set beyond the reach of condemnation, (Rom 8:1). Yea, and being in Christ, he is perfectly righteous for ever; for he is never again stripped of the white raiment of Christ's imputed righteousness; while the union remains, it cannot be lost: but to be perfectly righteous, and yet liable to condemnation before a just Judge, are inconsistent. Neither is such a fear in a believer acceptable to God; for, (1.) It is not from the Spirit of God, but from one's own spirit, or a worse; (Rom 8:15), "Ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear"; namely, to fear death or hell. (Heb 2:15), "Who through fear of death were all their life-time subject to bondage." (2.) It was the design of the sending of Christ, that believers in him might serve God without that fear, (Luke 1:74). That "We, being delivered out of the hands of our enemies, might serve him without fear." Compare (1 Cor 15:26), "The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death." And for this very cause Jesus Christ came, "That through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is the devil; and deliver them, who, through fear of death, were all their life-time," namely, before their deliverance by Christ, "subject to bondage," (Heb 2:14,15). (3.) Though it is indeed consistent with, yet it is contrary to faith; (Matt 8:26), "Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith!" And to love too; (1 John 4:18), "Perfect love casteth out fear, because fear hath torment."—(2 Tim 1:7), "God hath not given us the spirit of fear, but of power, of love, and of a sound mind." (4.) As it is not agreeable to the character of a father, who is not a revenging judge to his own family, to threaten to kill his children, though he threaten to chastise them: so such a fear is no more agreeable to the spirit of adoption, nor becoming the state of sonship to God, than for a child to fear that his father, being such a one, will kill him. And therefore, "the spirit of bondage to fear" is opposed to "the spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father," (Rom 8:15). "Adoption is an act of the free grace of God, whereby all those that are justified are received into the number of his children, have his name put upon them, the Spirit of his Son given to them, [receive the spirit of adoption, Westm. Confess. chap. 12,] are under his fatherly care and dispensation, admitted to all the liberties and privileges of the sons of God, made heirs of all the promises, and fellow-heirs with Christ in glory." Larg. Cat. q. 74. "The LIBERTY which Christ has purchased for believers under the gospel, consists in their freedom from the guilt of sin, the condemning wrath of God, the curse of the moral law, as also in their free access to God, and their yielding obedience unto him, not out of slavish fear, but a child-like love and willing mind. All which were common also to believers under the law." Westm. Confess. chap. 20, art. 1. By the guilt of sin here, must needs be understood obligation to eternal wrath. "The end of Christian liberty is, that being delivered out of the hands of our enemies, we might 'serve the Lord without fear.'" Ibid. art. 3. "The one [viz: justification] doth equally free all believers from the revenging wrath of God, and that perfectly in this life, that they never fall into condemnation." Larg. Cat. q. 77. "Though a soul be justified and freed from the guilt of eternal punishment, and so the spirit is no more to be afraid and disquieted for eternal wrath and hell." Rutherford's Trial and Triumph, &c. Ser. 19, p. 261. "The believer hath no conscience of sins; that is, he in conscience is not to fear everlasting condemnation, that is most true." Ibid. p. 266.

they see the mercy and indulgence of their heavenly Father in Christ, running to meet them and embrace them; I would have them, with him, to talk no more of being hired servants, (Luke 16). I would have them so to wrestle against doubting, and so to exercise their faith as to believe, that they are by Christ "delivered from the hands of their enemies," both the law, sin, wrath, death, the devil, and hell, "that they may serve the Lord without fear, in holiness and righteousness all the days of their lives," (Luke 1:74,75). I would have them so to believe God's love to them in Christ, as that thereby they may be constrained to obedience.²⁹⁴

Nom. But, sir, you know that our Saviour says, "Fear him that is able to destroy both soul and body in hell," (Matt 10:28). And the apostle says, "We shall receive of the Lord the reward of the inheritance," (Col 3:24). And is it not said, that "Moses had respect unto the recompense of reward"? (Heb 11:26).

Evan. Surely the intent of our blessed Saviour, in that first Scripture, is to teach all believers, that when God commands one thing, and man another, they should obey God, and not man, rather than to exhort them to eschew evil for fear of hell.²⁹⁵ And for those other

294 And no marvel one would have them do so, since that is what all the children of God with one mouth do daily pray for, saying "Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven."

295 There is a great difference betwixt a believer's eschewing evil for fear of hell, and his eschewing it from the fear of God, "as able to destroy both soul and body in hell." The former respects the event as to his eternal state, the latter not. To this purpose the variation of the phrase in the text is observable,—"fear not them that KILL the body": this notes the event, as to temporal death by the hands of men, which our Lord would have his people to lay their account with; but with respect to eternal death, he says not, fear him which destroys, but, "which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell." Moreover, the former is a slavish fear of God as a revenging judge; the believer eschewing sin for fear he be damned: the latter is a reverential fear of God as of a Father with whom is awful dominion and power. The former carries in it a doubtfulness and uncertainty as to the event, plainly contrary to the remedy prescribed in this same case: (Prov 29:25), "The fear of man bringeth a snare; but whoso putteth his trust in the Lord shall be safe." The latter is consistent with the most full assurance of one's being put beyond all hazard of hell, (Heb 12:28,29), "Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably, with reverence and godly fear. For our God is a consuming fire." A believer, by fixing his eyes on God, as able to destroy both soul and body in hell, may be so filled with the reverential fear of God, his dreadful power and wrath against sin, as to be fenced against the slavish fear of the most cruel tyrants, tempting him to sin; though in the mean time he most firmly believes that he is past that gulf, can never fall into it, nor be bound over unto it. For, so he hath a lively representation of the just deserving of sin, even of that sin in particular unto which he is tempted; and so must tremble at the thought of it, as an evil greater than death. And as a child, when he seeth his father lashing his slaves, cannot but tremble, and fear to offend him, so a believer's turning his eyes on the miseries of the damned, must raise in him an awful apprehension of the severity of his Father against sin, even in his own; and cause him to say in his heart, "My flesh trembleth for fear of thee; and I am afraid of thy judgments," (Psa 119:120). Thus also he hath a view of

Scriptures by you alleged, if you mean reward, and the means to obtain that reward, in the Scripture sense, then it is another matter; but I had thought you had meant in our common sense, and not in Scripture sense.

Nom. Why, sir, I pray you, what difference is there betwixt reward, and the means to obtain the reward, in our common sense, and in the Scripture sense?

Evan. Why, reward, in our common sense, is that which is conceived to come from God, or to be given by God; which is a fancying of heaven under carnal notions, beholding it as a place where there is freedom from all misery, and fullness of all pleasures and happiness, and to be obtained by our own works and doings.²⁹⁶ But reward in the Scripture sense, is not so much that which comes from God, or is given by God, as that which lies in God, even the full fruition of God himself in Christ. "I am," says God to Abraham, "thy shield, and thy exceeding great reward," ([Gen 15:1](#)), and "Whom have I in heaven but thee?" says David; "and there is none on earth that I desire besides thee," ([Psa 73:25](#)); and "I shall be satisfied when I awake with thy likeness,"²⁹⁷ ([Psa 17:15](#)). And the means to obtain this reward is, not by doing, but by believing; even by "drawing near with a true heart, in the full assurance of faith," ([Heb 10:22](#)); and so indeed it is given freely.²⁹⁸ And therefore you are not to conceive of that reward which the Scripture speaks of, as if it were the wages of a servant, but as it is

the frightful danger, he has escaped; the looking back to which must make one's heart shiver, and conceive a horror of sin; as in the case of a pardoned criminal, looking back to a dreadful precipice from which he was to have been thrown headlong, had not a pardon seasonably prevented his ruin; ([Eph 2:3](#)), "We were by nature the children of wrath, even as others."

296 Thus, to eschew evil and do good for hope of heaven, is to do so in hope of obtaining heaven by our own works. And certainly "that hope shall be cut off, and be a spider's web," ([Job 8:14](#)); for a sinner shall never obtain heaven but in the way of free grace: "But if it be of works, then it is no more grace," ([Rom 11:6](#)). But that a believer may be animated to obedience by eying the reward already obtained for him by the works of Christ, our author no where denies. So indeed the apostle exhorts believers to run their Christian race, "looking unto Jesus, who, for the joy that was set before him," [to be obtained by his own works, in the way of most proper merits] "endured the cross," ([Heb 12:1,2](#)). "Papists," says Dr. Preston, "tell of escaping damnation, and of getting into heaven. But Scripture gives other motives [viz: to good works]: Thou art in Christ, and Christ is thine; consider what he hath done for thee, what thou hast by him, what thou hadst been without him, and thus stir up thyself to do for him what he requireth."—Abridg. of his Works, p. 394.

297 "Man's chief end is to glorify God and to enjoy him for ever." Short. Cat.—"Believers shall be made perfectly blessed in full enjoying of God to all eternity." Ibid.

298 ([Rom 4:16](#)), "Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise [viz: of the inheritance (verse 13,14),] might be sure to all the seed." Otherwise it is not given freely; for "to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt," (verse 4).

the inheritance of sons.²⁹⁹ And when the Scripture seemeth to induce believers to obedience, by promising this reward, you are to conceive that the Lord speaks to believers as a father does to his young son, Do this or that and then I will love thee; whereas we know, that the father loveth the son first, and so does God; and therefore this is the voice of believers, "We love him, because he first loved us," (1 John 4:19). The Lord doth pay them, or at least gives them a sure earnest of their wages, before he bid them work;³⁰⁰ and therefore the contest of a believer [according to the measure of his faith] is not, what will God give me? but, what shall I give God? "What shall I render unto the Lord for all his goodness? For thy loving-kindness is before mine eyes, and I have walked in thy truth," (Psa 116:12, 26:3).

Nom. Then, sir, it seems that holiness of life, and good works, are not the cause of eternal happiness, but only the way thither?

Evan. Do you not remember that our Lord Jesus himself says, "I am the way, the truth, and the life"? (John 14:6); and doth not the apostle say to the believing Colossians, "As ye have received Jesus Christ the Lord, so walk in him"? (Col 2:6); that is, as ye have received him by faith, so go on in your faith, and by his power walk in his commandments. So that good works, as I conceive, may rather be called a believer's walking in the way of eternal happiness, than the way itself; but, however, this we may assuredly conclude, that the sum and substance both of the way, and walking in the way, consists in the receiving of Jesus Christ by faith, and in yielding obedience to his law, according to the measure of that receiving.³⁰¹

299 The apostle's decision in this case seems to be pretty clear: (Rom 6:23), "for the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life": he will not have us to look upon it as the wages of a servant too. The joining together of both these notions of the reward was, it seems, the doctrine of the Pharisees; (Mark 10:17), "Good Master, what shall I do, that I may inherit eternal life?" And how unacceptable it was to our blessed Saviour, may be learned from his answer to that question. "The Papists confess that life is merited by Christ, and is made ours by the right of inheritance: so far we go with them. Yea, touching works, they hold many things with us; (1.) That no works of themselves can merit life everlasting. (2.) That works done before conversion, can merit nothing at God's hand. (3.) That there is no merit at God's hand, without his mercy, no exact merit as often there is amongst men. The point whereabout we dissent is, that with the merit of Christ and free promise, they will have the merit of works joined, as done by them who are adopted children."—Bayne on Ephesians 2:8).

300 Namely, in the way of the covenant of grace.

301 Our author, remembering Nomista's bias towards good works, as separated from Christ, puts him in mind, that Christ is the way; and that the soul's motion heaven-ward is in Christ; that is, a man being once united to Christ by faith, moveth heaven-ward, making progress in believing, and by influences derived from Jesus Christ, walking in his holy commandments. The Scripture acknowledges no other holiness of life, or good works; and concerning the necessity of these the author moves no debate. But as to the propriety of expression, since good works are the keeping of the commandments, in the way of which we are to go, he conceives they may, with greater propriety, be called the walking in the way, than the way itself. It is certain that the Scripture speaks

Chapter III, Section 8

The efficacy of faith for holiness of heart and life.

Neo. Sir, I am persuaded, that through my neighbour Nomista's asking you these questions, you have been interrupted in your discourse, in showing how faith enables a man to exercise his Christian graces, and perform his Christiana duties aright: and therefore I pray you go on.

Evan. What should I say more? for the time would fail me to tell, how that, according to the measure of any man's faith, is his true peace of conscience; for, says the apostle, "being justified by faith, we have peace with God," (Rom 5:1). Yea, says the prophet Isaiah, "Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee, because he trusteth in thee," (Isa 26:3). Here there is a sure and true grounded peace: "Therefore it is of faith," says the apostle, "that it might be by grace, and that the promise might be sure to all the seed," (Rom 4:16). And answerable to a man's believing that he is "justified freely by God's grace, through that redemption that is in Jesus Christ,"³⁰² (Rom 4:3,24), is his true humility of spirit. So that, although he be endowed with excellent gifts and graces, and though he perform never so many duties, he denies himself in all; he does not make them as ladders for him to ascend up into heaven by, but he desires to "be found in

of "walking in Christ," (Col 2:6), "walking in his commandments," (2 Chron 17:4), and "walking in good works," (Eph 2:10); and that as these terms signify but one and the same thing, so they are all metaphorical. But one would think the calling of good works the way to be walked in, is further removed from the propriety of expression, than the calling them the walking in the way. But the author waiving this, as a matter of phraseology, or manner of speaking only, tells us, that assuredly the sum and substance, both of the way to eternal happiness, and of the walking in the way to it, consists in the receiving Jesus Christ by faith, and in yielding obedience to his law, according to the measure of that receiving. Herein is comprehended Christ and holiness, faith and obedience; which are inseparable. And no narrower is the compass of the way and walking mentioned, (Isa 35:8,9), "It shall be called the way of holiness—the redeemed shall walk there."—"The way of holiness, or the holy way, [according to an usual Hebraism,] as it is generally understood by interpreters, is the way leading to heaven, says Piscator; namely, Christ, faith, and the doctrine of a holy life." Fererius apud Pol. Synop. in loc. And now that our author, though he conceives good works are not so properly called the way, as the walking, yet does not say, that in no sense they may be called the way, but does expressly assert them to be the soul's walking in the way of eternal happiness; he cannot justly be charged here [more than any where else in his book] with teaching, that holiness is not necessary to salvation, unless one will, in the first place, say that though the way itself to eternal happiness is necessary to salvation, yet the walking in the way is not necessary to it; which would be Antinomian with a witness.

302 And not for any thing wrought in himself, or done by himself.

Christ, not having his own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ," (Phil 3:9). He does not think himself to be one step nearer to heaven, for all his works and performances. And if he hear any man praise him for his gifts and graces, he will not conceive that he has obtained the same by his own industry and pains-taking, as some men have proudly thought; neither will he speak it out, as some have done, saying; These gifts and graces have cost me something—I have taken much pains to obtain them; but he says, "By the grace of God I am what I am; and not I, but the grace of God that was with me," (1 Cor 15:10). And if he behold an ignorant man, or a wicked liver, he will not call him "Carnal wretch!" or, "Profane fellow!" nor say, "Stand by thyself, come not near me, for I am holier than thou," (Isa 65:5), as some have said; but he pities such a man, and prays for him; and in his heart he says concerning himself, "Who maketh thee to differ? and what hast thou that thou hast not received"? (1 Cor 4:7).

And thus I might go on, and show you how, according to any man's faith, is his true joy in God, and his true thankfulness to God, and his patience in all troubles and afflictions, and his contentedness in any condition, and his willingness to suffer, and his cheerfulness in suffering, and his contentedness to part with any earthly thing. Yea, according to any man's faith, is his ability to pray aright, (Rom 10:14), to receive the sacrament with profit and comfort: and to do any duty either to God or man after a right manner, and to a right end, (Heb 4:2). Yea, according to the measure of any man's faith, in his love to Christ, and so to man for Christ's sake; and so, consequently, his readiness and willingness to forgive an injury; yea, to forgive an enemy, and to do good to them that hate him; and the more faith any man has, the less love he has to the world or the things that are in the world. To conclude, the greater any man's faith is, the more fit he is to die, and the more willing he is to die.

Neo. Well, sir, now I do perceive that faith is a most excellent grace, and happy is that man who has a great measure of it.

Evan. The truth is, faith is the chief grace that Christians are to be exhorted to get and exercise; and therefore, when the people asked our Lord Christ, "What they should do to work the works of God," he answered and said, "This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent," (John 6:29); speaking as if there were no other duty at all required, but only believing; for, indeed, to say as the thing is, believing includes all other duties in it, and they spring all from it; and therefore says one, "Preach faith, and preach all."—"Whilst I bid man believe," says learned Rollock, "I bid him do all good things"; for, says Dr. Preston, "Truth of belief will bring forth truth of holiness; if a man believe, works of sanctification

will follow; for faith draws after it inherent righteousness and sanctification. Wherefore" says he, "if a man will go about this great work, to change his life, to get victory over any sin, that it may not have dominion over him, to have his conscience purged from dead works and to be made partaker of the divine nature, let him not go about it as a moral man"; that is, let him not consider what commandments there are, what the rectitude is which the law requires, and how to bring his heart to it; but "let him go about it as a Christian, that is, let him believe the promise of pardon, in the blood of Christ; and the very believing the promise will be able to cleanse his heart from dead works."³⁰³

Neo. But I pray you, sir, whence has faith its power and virtue to do all this?

Evan. Even from our Lord Jesus Christ; for faith doth ingraft a man, who is by nature a wild olive branch, into Christ as into the natural olive; and fetches sap from the root, Christ, and thereby makes the tree bring forth fruit in its kind; yea, faith fetcheth a supernatural efficacy from the death and life of Christ; by virtue whereof it metamorphoses³⁰⁴ the heart of a believer, and creates and infuses into him new principles of action.³⁰⁵ So that, what a treasure of all graces Christ hath

303 The sum thereof is, that no considerations, no endeavours whatsoever, will truly sanctify a man, without faith. Howbeit, such considerations and endeavours are necessary to promote and advance the sanctification of the soul by faith.

304 That is, transforms or changes. (Rom 12:2), "Be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind."

305 Namely, instrumentally. It cannot be denied that our author places faith before the new principles of actions in this passage, and before the habits of grace, and yet it will not follow, that, in his opinion, there can be no gracious change in the soul before faith. What he does indeed teach, in this matter, is warranted by the plain testimony of the apostle, (Eph 1:13), "After that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise." And what this seal is, at least as to the chief part of it, may be learned from John 1:16, "And of his fullness have all we received, and grace for grace." For as sealing is the impression of the image of the seal on the wax, so that it thereby receives upon it point for point on the seal, so believers being sealed with the Spirit of Christ, receive grace for grace in Christ, whereby they are made like him, and bear his image. And as it is warranted by the words, so it is agreeable to the old Protestant doctrine, that we are regenerate by faith; which is the title of the 3d chap. of the 3d book of Calvin's Instit. and is taught in the Old Confess. art. 3, in these words: "Regeneration is wrought by the power of the Holy Ghost, working in the hearts of the elect of God an assured faith"; and art. 13, in these words: "So soon as the Spirit of the Lord Jesus [which God's elect children receive by true faith] takes possession in the heart of any man, so soon does he regenerate and renew the same man." Nevertheless, I am not of the mind, that, either in truth, or in the judgment of our reformers, or of our author, the first act of faith is an act of an unregenerate, that is to say, a dead soul. But to understand this matter aright, I conceive one must distinguish betwixt regeneration taken strictly, and taken largely; and betwixt new powers and new habits or principles of action. Regeneration, strictly so called, is the quickening of the dead soul, by the Spirit of Christ passively received, and goes before faith, according to John 1:12,13, "But as many as received him, to them gave

stored up in him, faith draineth, and draweth them out to the use of a believer; being as a conduit-cock, that watereth all the herbs of the garden. Yea, faith does apply the blood of Christ to a believer's heart; and the blood of Christ has in it, not only a power to wash from the guilt of sin, but to cleanse and purge likewise from the power and stain of sin, and therefore, says godly Hooker, "If you would have grace, you must first of all get faith, and that will bring all the rest, let faith go to Christ, and there is meekness, patience, humility, and wisdom, and faith will fetch all them to the soul; therefore, [says he,] you must not look for

he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name; which were born not of blood, but of God." This is called by Amesius, the first regeneration, *Medul. lib. 1, cap. 29, sect. 6*; see *cap. 26, sect. 19*. And it belongs to, or is the same with effectual calling; in the description of which, in the Shorter Catechism, one finds a renewing mentioned, whereby sinners are enabled to embrace Jesus Christ; and, says the Larger Catechism on the same subject, "They, although in themselves dead in sin, are hereby made able to answer his call." Regeneration, largely taken, presupposing the former, is the same with sanctification, wrought in the soul by the Spirit of Christ, actively received by faith, and so follows faith. (*Acts 26:18*), "Among them which are sanctified by faith, that is in Me": the subjects of which "are the redeemed, called, and justified." *Essen. Com. cap. 16, sect. 3*. And accordingly, in the description thereof in the Shorter Catechism, mention is made of a second renewing, namely, "Whereby we are renewed in the whole man after the image of God, and are enabled more and more to die unto sin, and live unto righteousness." And thus I conceive regeneration to be taken in the above passages of the Old Confession. The which is confirmed by the following testimonies: "Being in Christ, we must be new creatures, not in substance, but in qualities and disposition of our minds, and change of the actions of our lives, all which is impossible to them that have no faith." *Mr. John Davidson's Catechism, page 29*.—"So good works follow as effects of Christ in us, possessed by faith, who beginneth to work in us regeneration and a renewing of the whole parts and powers of the soul and body. Which begun sanctification and holiness he never ceases to accomplish." *Ibid. p. 30*.—"The effect [viz: of justification] inherent in us, as in a subject, is that new quality which is called inherent righteousness or regeneration." *Grounds of Christian Religion, by the renowned Beza and Faius, 1586, chap. 29, sect. 11*.—"That new quality, then called inherent righteousness and regeneration, testified by good works, is a necessary effect of true faith." *Ibid. chap. 31, sect. 13*. Now in regeneration taken in the former sense, new powers are put into the soul, whereby the sinner, who was dead in sin, is able to discern Christ in his glory, and to embrace him by faith. But it is in regeneration taken in the latter sense, that new habits of grace, or immediate principles of actions are given; namely, upon the soul's uniting with Christ by faith. So *Essenius*, having defined regeneration to be, the putting of spiritual life in a man spiritually dead, [*compare chap. 14, sect. 11*,] afterwards says, "As by regeneration new powers were put into the man, so by sanctification are given new spiritual habits." *Theological Virtues, ibid. cap. 16, sect. 5*. And as the Scriptures are express, in that men are "sanctified by faith," (*Acts 26:18*), so is the Larger Catechism in that it is in sanctification they are "renewed in the whole man, having the seeds of repentance unto life, and of all other saving graces, put into their hearts," *quest. 75*.

sanctification till you come to Christ in vocation."

Nom. Truly, sir, I do now plainly see that I have been deceived, and have gone a wrong way to work; for I verily thought that holiness of life must go before faith, and so be the ground of it, and produce and bring it forth; whereas I do now plainly see, that faith must go before, and so produce and bring forth holiness of life.

Evan. I remember a man, who was much enlightened in the knowledge of the gospel,³⁰⁶ who says, "There may be many that think, that as a man chooses to serve a prince, so men choose to serve God. So likewise they think that as those who do best service, do obtain most favour of their lord; and as those that have lost it, the more they humble themselves, the sooner they recover it; even so they think the case stands between God and them; whereas, says he, it is not so, but clean contrary, for he himself says, 'Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you,' ([John 15:16](#)). And not for that we repent and humble ourselves, and do good works, he gives us his grace; but we repent and humble ourselves, do good works, and become holy, because he gives us his grace." The good thief on the cross was not illuminated, because he did confess Christ; but he did confess Christ, because he was illuminated. For, says Luther, on Galatians, p. 124, "The tree must first be, and then the fruit; for the apples make not the tree, but the tree makes the apples. So faith first maketh the person, which afterwards brings forth works. Therefore to do the law without faith, is to make the apples of wood and earth without the tree, which is not to make apples, but mere fantasies."

Wherefore, neighbour Nomista, let me entreat you, that whereas before you have reformed your life that you might believe, why, now believe that you may reform your life: and do not any longer work to get an interest in Christ, but believe your

306 This man, Bernardine Ochine, an infamous apostate, was at first a monk; but as our author says, being much enlightened in the knowledge of the gospel, he not only made profession of the Protestant Religion, but, together with the renowned Peter Martyr, was esteemed a most famous preacher of the gospel, throughout Italy. Being in danger on the account of religion, he left Italy by Martyr's advice; and being much assisted by the Duchess of Ferrara in his escape, he went first to Geneva, and then to Zurich, and was admitted a minister in that city. But discovering himself there, [as Simon Magus did, after he had joined himself to the church of Samaria] he was banished; and is justly reckoned among the forerunners of the execrable Socinus. See Hoornbeck, appar. ad. contr. Soc. page 47. Hence one may plainly see how there are sermons of his which might safely and to good purpose be quoted. And as for the character given him by the author here, if one is in hazard of reckoning it an applause, one must remember that is no greater than what the apostle gives to the guilty of the sin against the Holy Ghost, ([Heb 6:6](#)), "Those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift," &c., which I make no question but our author had his eye upon, in giving this man this character very pertinently.

interest in Christ, that so you may work.³⁰⁷ And then you will not make the change of your life the ground of your faith, as you have done, and as Mr. Culverwell says, many do, who being asked, What caused them to believe? answer, "Because they have truly repented, and changed their course of life."³⁰⁸

Ant. Sir, what think you of a preacher that, in my hearing, said, he durst not exhort nor persuade sinners to believe their sins were pardoned, before he saw their lives reformed, for fear they should take more liberty to sin?

Evan.. Why, what should I say but that I think that preacher was ignorant of the mystery of faith?³⁰⁹ For it,³¹⁰ is of the nature of sovereign waters, which so wash off the corruption of the ulcer, that they cool the heat, and stay the spreading of the infection, and so by degrees heal the same. Neither did he know that it is of the nature of cordials, which so comfort the heart and ease it, that they also expel the noxious humours, and strengthen nature against them.³¹¹

Ant. And I am acquainted with a professor, though, God knows,³¹² a very weak one, that says, If he should believe before his life be reformed, then he might believe, and yet walk on in his sins:—I pray you, sir, what would you say to such a man?

307 That is, by believing, get a saving interest in Christ; whereas, before, you have set yourself, as it were, to work it. See the note on the Definition of Faith.

308 "Which [adds he] if it proceed not from faith, is not so much as a sound proof of faith, much less can it be any cause to draw them to believe."—"The only firm ground of saving faith is God's truth, revealed in his word; as is plainly taught," (Rom 10:17). Ibid p. 20, 21.

309 This censure, as it natively follows upon the overthrowing of that doctrine, viz: "That holiness of life must go before faith, and so be the ground of it, and produce and bring it forth"; so it is founded on these two ancient Protestant principles: (1.) That the belief of the remission of sin is comprehended in saving, justifying faith. (2.) That true repentance, and acceptable reformation of life, do necessarily flow from, but go not before saving faith. Hence it necessarily follows, that remission of sin must be believed, before there can be any acceptable reformation of life; and that the preacher's fear was groundless, reformation of life being so caused by the faith of remission of sin, that it is inseparable from it: as our author teaches in the following passages. Calvin's censure in this case is fully as severe: "As for them [says he] that think that repentance does rather go before faith, than flow or spring forth of it, as a fruit out of a tree, they never knew the force thereof." Instit. book 3. chap. 3. sect. 1.—"Yet when we refer the beginning of repentance to faith, we do not dream a certain mean space of time, wherein it brings it out: but we mean to show, that a man cannot earnestly apply himself to repentance, unless he know himself to be of God." Ibid. sect. 2.

310 Namely, faith.

311 Even so, faith not only justifies a sinner, but sanctifies him in heart and life.

312 I think this expression might very well have been spared here.

Evan. Why, I could say with Dr. Preston, let him, if he can, believe truly, and do this; but it is impossible: let him believe, and the other will follow; truth of belief will bring forth truth of holiness: for who, if he ponder it well, can fear a fleshly licentiousness, where the believing soul is united and married to Christ?³¹³ The law, as it is the covenant of works, and Christ, are set in opposition, as two husbands to one wife successively, ([Rom 7:4](#)); whilst the law was alive in the conscience, all the fruits were deadly, (verse 5); but Christ, taking the same spouse to himself, the law being dead, by his quickening Spirit doth make her fruitful to God, (verse 6); and so raises up seed to the former husband: for materially these are the works of the law, though produced by the Spirit of Christ in the gospel.³¹⁴

Ant. And yet, sir, I am verily persuaded, that there be many, both preachers and professors, in this city, of the very same opinion, that these two are of.

Evan. The truth is, many preachers stand upon the praise of some moral virtue, and do inveigh against some vice of the times, more than upon pressing men to believe. But, says a learned writer, "It will be our condemnation, if we love darkness, rather than light, and desire still to be groping in the twilight of morality, the precepts of moral men, than to walk in the true light of divinity, which is the doctrine of Jesus Christ; and I pity the preposterous care and unhappy travail of many well-affected, who study the practice of this and that virtue, neglecting this cardinal and radical virtue; as if a man should water all the tree, and not the root. Fain would they shine in patience, meekness, and zeal, and yet are not careful to establish and root themselves in faith, which should maintain all the rest; and therefore all their labour has been in vain and to no purpose."

Nom. Indeed, sir, this which you have now said, I have found true by my own experience; for I have³¹⁵ laboured and endeavoured to get victory over such corruptions as to overcome my dullness, and to perform duties with cheerfulness,
and all in vain.

Evan. And no marvel; for to pray, to meditate, to keep a Sabbath cheerfully, to

313 "Q. Does not this doctrine [viz: of justification by faith without works] make men secure and profane? A. No, for it cannot be, but they who are ingrafted into Christ by faith, should bring forth fruits of thankfulness." Palat. Cat. q. 64.

314 As a woman married to a second husband, after the death of the first, does the same work for subsistence in the family, that was required of her by the first husband; yet does it not to, nor as under the dead husband, but the living one; so the good works of believers are materially, and but materially, the works of the law, as a covenant, the first husband, now dead to the believer. In this sense only the law is here treated of: and to make the good works of believers formally the works of the law as a covenant and husband, is to contradict the apostle, ([Rom 7:4-6](#)), to "make them deadly fruits, dishonourable to Christ, the second husband, and unacceptable to God."

315 After that manner.

have your conversation in heaven, is as impossible for you yourself to do, as for iron to swim, or for stones to ascend upwards; but yet nothing is impossible to faith; it can naturalize these things unto you; it can make a mole of the earth a soul of heaven. Wherefore, though you have tried all moral conclusions of purposing, promising, resolving, vowing, fasting, watching, and self-revenge; yet get you to Christ, and with the finger of faith touch but the hem of his garment; and you shall feel virtue come from him, for the curing of all your diseases. Wherefore I beseech you, come out of yourself unto Jesus Christ, and apprehend him by faith, as, blessed be God, you see your neighbour Neophytus has done; and then shall you find the like loathing of sin, and love to the law of Christ, as he now does; yea, then shall you find your corruptions dying and decaying daily, more and more, as I am confident he shall.

Neo. Aye, but, sir, shall I not have power quite to overcome all my corruptions, and to yield perfect obedience to the law of Christ, as, the Lord knows, I much desire?

Evan. If you could believe perfectly, then should it be even according to your desire; according to that of Luther, on the Galatians, p. 173, "If we could perfectly apprehend Christ, then should we be free from sin": but alas! whilst we are here, we know but in part, and so believe but in part, and so receive Christ but in part, ([1 Cor 13:9](#)), and so, consequently, are holy but in part; witness James the Just, including himself, when he says, "In many things we sin all," ([James 3:2](#)). John the faithful and loving disciple, when he says, "If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us," ([1 John 1:8](#)). Yea, and witness Luther, when he says on the Galatians, p. 144, "A Christian man hath a body, in whose members as Paul says, 'sin dwelleth and warreth,' ([Rom 7:15](#)). And although he fall not into outward and gross sins, as murder, adultery, theft, and such like, yet is he not free from impatience and murmuring against God; yea, [says he] I feel in myself covetousness, lust, anger, pride, and arrogancy, also the fear of death, heaviness, hatred, murmurings impatience." So that you must not look to be quite without sin, whilst you remain in this life; yet this I dare promise you, that as you grow from faith to faith, so shall you grow from strength to strength in all other graces. "Wherefore," says Hooker, "strengthen this grace of faith, and strengthen all; nourish this, and nourish all." So that if you can attain to a great measure of faith, you shall be sure to attain to a great measure of holiness; according to the saying of Dr. Preston, "He that hath the strongest faith, he that believeth in the greatest degree the promise of pardon and remission of sins, I dare boldly say, he hath the holiest heart, and the holiest life. And therefore, I beseech you labour to grow strong in the faith of the

gospel," ([Phil 1:27](#)).

Chapter III, Section 9

Use of means for strengthening of faith.

Neo. O sir, I desire it with all my heart; and therefore, I pray you, tell me, what you would have me to do, that I may grow more strong.

Evan. Why, surely, the best advice and counsel that I can give you, is to exercise that faith which you have, and wrestle against doubting, and be earnest with God in prayer for the increase of it. "Forasmuch," says Luther, "as this gift is in the hands of God only, who bestoweth when, and on whom, he pleaseth, thou must resort unto him by prayer, and say with the apostles, 'Lord, increase our faith,'" ([Luke 17:5](#)). and you must also be diligent in hearing the word preached; for as "faith cometh by hearing," ([Rom 10:17](#)), so is it also increased by hearing. And you must also read the word, and meditate upon the free and gracious promises of God; for the promise is the immortal seed, whereby the Spirit of Christ begets and increases faith in the hearts of all his. And lastly, you must frequent the sacrament of the Lord's supper, and receive it as often as conveniently you can.

Ant. But by your favour, sir, if faith be the gift of God, and he give it when, and to whom he pleases, then I conceive that a man's using such means will not procure any greater measure of it than God is pleased to give.

Evan. I confess it is not the means that will either beget or increase faith; but it is the Spirit of God in the use of means that doth it: so that as the means will not do it without the Spirit, neither will the Spirit do it without the means, where the means may be had. Wherefore, I pray you, do not you hinder him from using the means.

Neo. Sir, for my own part, let him say what he will, I am resolved, by the assistance of God, to be careful and diligent in the use of these means which you have now prescribed; that so, by the increasing of my faith, I may be the better enabled to be subject to the will of the Lord, and so walk as that I may please him.

Chapter III, Section 10

The distinction of the law of works, and law of Christ, applied to six paradoxes.

But forasmuch as heretofore he hath endeavoured to persuade me to believe divers points, which then I could not see to be true, and therefore could not assent unto them, methinks I do now begin to see some show of truth in them; therefore, sir, if you please to give me leave, I will tell you what points they are, to the intent I may have your judgment and direction therein.

Evan. Do so, I pray you.

Neo. 1. Why, first of all, he hath endeavoured to persuade me that a believer is not under the law, but is altogether delivered from it.

2. That a believer does not commit sin.

3. That the Lord can see no sin in a believer.

4. That the Lord is not angry with a believer for his sins.

5. That the Lord doth not chastise a believer for his sins.

6. Lastly, That a believer hath no cause neither to confess his sins, nor to crave pardon at the hands of God for them, neither yet to fast, nor mourn, nor humble himself before the Lord for them.

Evan. These points which you have now mentioned have caused many needless and fruitless disputes; and that because men have either not understood what they have said, or else not declared whereof they have affirmed; for in one sense they may all of them be truly affirmed, and in another sense they may all of them be truly denied; whereof if we would clearly understand the truth, we must distinguish betwixt the law as it is the law of works, and as it is the law of Christ.³¹⁶

316 The Antinomian sense of all these positions is, no doubt, erroneous and detestable, and is opposed and disproved by our author. The positions themselves are paradoxes bearing a precious gospel truth, which he maintains against the legalist; but I doubt it is too much to call them all Antinomian paradoxes. But to call them simply, and by the lump, Antinomian errors, is shocking: one might as good say, it is a Popish or Lutheran error, "that the bread in the sacrament is Christ's body"; and that it is a Socinian, Arminian, or Baxterian error, "That a sinner is justified by faith"; for the first four of the paradoxes are as directly scriptural as these are; though the Antinomian sense of the former is anti-scriptural, as is the Popish, Lutheran, Socinian, Arminian, and Baxterian sense of the latter, respectively. At this rate, one might subvert the very foundations of Christianity, as might easily be instructed, if there were sufficient cause to exemplify it here. How few doctrines of the Bible are there that have not been wrested to an erroneous sense by some corrupt men or other! yet will not their corrupt glosses warrant the condemning of the scriptural positions themselves as erroneous. The first four of these paradoxes are found in the following texts of Scripture, viz: 1st. (Rom 6:14), "Ye are not under the law, but under grace."—(7:6), "Now we are delivered from the law." 2d. (1 John 3:6), "Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not."—(verse 9), "Whosoever is born of God, doth not commit sin, and he cannot sin." 3d. (Num 23:21), "He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel."—(Cant 4:7), "Thou art all fair, my love, there is no spot in thee." 4th. (Isa 54:9), "So have I sworn, that I would not be wroth with thee nor rebuke thee." The case standing thus, these paradoxes must needs be sensed one way or other, agreeable to the analogy of faith, and so defended by all who own the divine authority of the holy Scripture. And as an orthodox divine would not condemn the two propositions above mentioned, brought in for illustration of this matter, but clear the same by giving a sound sense of them, and rejecting the unsound sense, as that it is true that the bread is Christ's body sacramentally; false, that it is so by transubstantiation, or consubstantiation: that it is true, sinners, are justified by faith as an instrument, apprehending and applying Christ's righteousness; false, that they are justified by it as a work, fulfilling the pretended new proper gospel law: so our author gives a safe and sound

Now, as it is the law of works, it may be truly said, that a believer is not under the law, but is delivered from it,³¹⁷ according to that of the apostle, (Rom 6:14), "Ye are not under the law, but under grace"; and (Rom 7:6), "But now we are delivered from the law." And if believers be not under the law, but are delivered from the law, as it is a law of works, then, though they sin, yet do they not transgress the law of works; for "where no law is, there is no transgression," (Rom 4:15). And therefore, says the apostle John, "Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not," (1 John 3:6); that is, as I conceive, whosoever abideth in Christ by faith, sinneth not against the law of works.³¹⁸ And if a believer sin not against the law of works, then can God see no sin in a believer, as a transgression of that law;³¹⁹ and therefore it is said, (Num 23:21), "He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel"; and again it is said, (Jer 50:20), "At that time the iniquity of Israel shall be sought for, and there shall be none; and the sins of Judah, and they shall not be found": and in Canticles 4:7, Christ says concerning his spouse, "Behold thou art all fair, my love, and there is no spot in thee." And if God can see no sin in a believer, then assuredly he is neither angry

sense of these scriptural paradoxes, and rejects the unsound sense put upon them by Antinomians; and this he does, by applying to them the distinction of the law, as it is the law of works, i.e., the covenant of works, and as it is the law of Christ, i.e., a rule of life, in the hand of a Mediator, to believers. Now, if this distinction be not admitted here, neither in these nor equivalent terms, but the law of Christ, and law of works, must be reckoned one and the same thing; then believers in Christ, whom none but Antinomians will deny to be under the law, as it is the law of Christ, or a rule of life, are evidently staked down under the covenant works still; forasmuch as, in the sense of the holy Scripture, as well as in the sense of our author, the law of works is the covenant of works. And since it is plain from the holy Scripture, and from the Westminster Confession, that believers are not under the law as a covenant of works; a way which, by this distinction, our author had blocked up, is, by rejecting of it, and confounding the law of works and law of Christ, opened for Antinomians to cast off the law for good and all. The two last of these paradoxes are consequently scriptural, as necessarily following upon the former, being understood in the same sense as they are, and as our author explains them.

317 "True believers be not under the law as a covenant of works." Westm. Confess. chap. 19, sect. 6.—"The law of works," says our author, "is as much as to say, the covenant of works."

318 "As the world is altogether set upon sin, and can do nothing but sin, so they that are born of God sin not; not that their sins of themselves are not deadly, but because their persons are so lively in Christ, that the deadliness of sin cannot prevail against them." Mr. John Davidson's Cat. p. 32. What he means by the deadliness of sin, appears from these words a little after: "Howbeit the condemnation of sin be removed from the faithful altogether," &c. The penalty which the law of works threatens, says our author to Neophytus, is "condemnation and eternal death; and this you have no cause at all to fear."

319 Mr. James Melvil to the same purpose expresses it thus:— But God into his daughter dear sees nane iniquitie, Nor in his chosen Israel will spy enormitie: Not looking in hir bowk, whilk is with frenticles replete But ever into Christ her face, whilk pleasand is and sweet. Morning Vision, dedicated to James VI. p. 85.

nor doth chastise a believer for his sins, as a transgression of that law;³²⁰ and hence it is, that the Lord says concerning his own people that were believers, ([Isa 27:4](#)), "Anger is not in me": and again, ([Isa 54:9](#)), the Lord speaking comfortably to his spouse the Church, says, "As I have sworn that the waters of Noah shall no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I will no more be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee." Now, if the Lord be not angry with a believer, neither doth chastise him for his sins, as they are any transgression of the law of works, then hath a believer neither need to confess his sins unto God, nor to crave pardon for them, nor yet to fast, nor mourn, nor humble himself for them, as conceiving them to be any transgression of the law, as it is the law of works.³²¹ Thus you see, that if you consider the law in this sense, then all these points follow: according as you say our friend Antinomista hath endeavoured to persuade you.

But if you consider the law, as it is the law of Christ, then they do not so, but quite contrary. For as the law is the law of Christ, it may be truly said, that a believer is under the law, and not delivered from it; according to that of the apostle, ([1 Cor 9:21](#)), "Being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ," and according to that of the same apostle, ([Rom 3:31](#)), "Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid! yea, [by faith] we establish the law." And if a believer be under the law, and not delivered from it, as it is the law of Christ, then if he sin, he doth thereby transgress the law of Christ; and hence I conceive

320 Such anger is revenging wrath, and such chastisement is proper punishment inflicted for satisfying offended justice; in which sense it is said, ([Isa 53:5](#)), "The chastisement of our peace was upon him," namely, on Jesus Christ; and therefore it cannot be on believers themselves.

321 Our author does not indeed here refute the Antinomian error, that the believer ought not to mourn for his sins; he does that effectually in the next paragraph. But here he refutes the legalist, who will needs have the believer still to be under the law, as it is the covenant of works; and therefore to confess and mourn, &c. for his sins, as still committed against the covenant of works. But it is evident as the light, that believers are not under the covenant of works, or, in other terms, under the law, as that covenant; and that principle being once fixed, the whole chain of consequences, which our author has here made, does necessarily follow thereupon. It is strange that nothing can be allowed in believers to be mourning for sin, unless they mourn for it as unbelievers, as persons under the covenant of works, who doubtless are under the curse and condemnation for their sin, ([Gal 3:10](#)). But "as our obedience now is not the performance, so our sinning is not the violation of the condition of the old covenant. Believers' sins now, though transgressions of the law, are not counted violations of the conditions of the covenant of works, under which they are not." Brown on Justification, chap. 15. p. 224.—"If sense of sin be taken for the unbelieving feeling of, and judging myself cast out of his sight, and condemned; whereas yet I am in Christ, and 'it is God that justifies me; who is he that shall condemn?' ([Rom 8:33,34](#)); we shall agree with Antinomians. This is indeed the hasty sense of unbelief. ([Psa 31:22](#), [John 2:4](#)). Hence let them be rebuked, who say not that Christ in his gospel hath taken away this sense of sin." Rutherford on the Covenant, p. 222.

it is that the apostle John says, both concerning himself and other believers, ([1 John 1:8](#)), "If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us"; and so says the apostle James, chapter 3:2, "In many things we offend all." And if a believer transgress the law of Christ, then doubtless he seeth it: for it is said, ([Prov 5:21](#)), "that the ways of man are before the eyes of the Lord, and he pondereth all his goings"; and in [Hebrews 4:13](#), it is said, "all things are naked and open unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do." And if the Lord sees the sins that a believer commits against the law, as it is the law of Christ, then doubtless he is angry with him; for it is said, ([Psa 106:40](#)), that because the people "went a whoring after their own inventions, therefore was the wrath of the Lord kindled against his people, insomuch that he abhorred his own inheritance"; and in [Deuteronomy 1:37](#), Moses says concerning himself, "The Lord was angry with me." And if the Lord be angry with a believer for his transgressing the law of Christ, then assuredly, if need be, he will chastise him for it: for it is said, ([Psa 89:30-32](#)), concerning the seed and children of Jesus Christ, "If they forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments, then will I visit their transgressions with the rod, and their iniquities with stripes." And in [1 Corinthians 11:30](#), it is said concerning believers, "For this cause," namely, their unworthy receiving of the sacrament, "many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep." And if the Lord be angry with believers, and do chastise them for their sins, as they are a transgression of the law of Christ, then hath a believer cause to confess his sins unto the Lord, and to crave pardon for them, yea and to fast, and mourn, and humble himself for them, as conceiving them to be a transgression of the law of Christ.³²²

Chapter III, Section 11

The use of that distinction in practice.

And now, my loving neighbour Neophytus, I pray you, consider seriously of these things, and learn to distinguish aright betwixt the law, as it is the law of works, and as it is the law of Christ, and that in effect and practice; I mean, in heart and conscience.

Neo. Sir, it is the unfeigned desire of my heart so to do; and therefore, I pray you, give me some direction therein.³²³

Evan. Surely the best direction I can give you is, to labour truly to know, and firmly to believe, that you are not now under the law, as it is the law of works; and that you are now

322 Thus our author hath solidly refuted in this paragraph the Antinomian sense of all the six positions above mentioned.

323 Namely, now to improve these points of doctrine in my practice. There lies the great difficulty: and according as unbelief or faith has the ascendant, so will the soul in practice carry itself; confessing, begging pardon, fasting, mourning, and humbling itself either as a condemned malefactor, or as an offending child.

under the law as, it is the law of Christ; and that therefore you must neither hope for what the law of works promises, in case of your most exact obedience; nor fear what it threatens, in case of your most imperfect and defective obedience: and yet you may both hope for what the law of Christ promises, in case of your obedience, and are to fear what it threatens, in case of your disobedience.

Neo. But, sir, what are these promises and threatenings? and, first, I pray you, tell me what it is that the law of works promises.

Evan. The law of works, or, which is all one, as I have told you, the covenant of works, promises justification and eternal life to all that yield perfect obedience thereunto: and this you are not to hope for, because of your obedience. And indeed, to say as the thing is, you, being dead to the law of works, can yield no obedience at all unto it; for how can a dead wife yield any obedience to her husband? And if you can yield no obedience at all unto it, what hope can you have of any reward for your obedience? Nay, let me tell you more, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, hath purchased both justification and eternal life by his perfect obedience to the law of works, and hath freely given it to you, as it is written, ([Acts 13:39](#)), "By him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses": and "Verily, verily," says our Saviour, "he that believeth in me hath everlasting life." ([John 6:47](#))

Neo. And I pray you, sir, what does the law of works threaten, in case of a man's disobedience unto it?

Evan. Why, the penalty which the law of works, in that case, threatens, is condemnation and death eternal: and this you have no cause at all to fear, in case of your most defective obedience; for no man hath any cause to fear the penalty of that law which he lives not under. Surely a man that lives under the laws of England, has no cause to fear the penalties of the laws of Spain or France: even so you, that now live under the law of Christ, have no cause to fear the penalties of the law of works.³²⁴ Nay, the law of works is dead to you; and therefore you have no more cause to fear the threats thereof, than a living wife has to fear the threats of her dead husband,³²⁵ nay, than a dead wife has to fear the threats of a dead husband. Nay, let me say yet more, Jesus Christ, by his condemnation and death upon the cross, has delivered you and set you free from condemnation and eternal death; as it is written, ([Rom](#)

324 "The law, as it condemneth and curseth, is to the believer a mere passive and a naked stander-by, and has no activity, nor can it act in that power upon any in Christ; as the law of Spain is merely passive in condemning a free-born man dwelling in Scotland." Rutherford's Spirit. Antichrist, p. 87.—"The law being fully satisfied by Christ, it neither condemneth, nor can it condemn, to eternal sufferings, for that is removed from the law to all that are in Christ." Ibid.

325 For, according to the Scripture, the believer is dead to the law, and the law is dead to the believer; namely, as it is the law of the covenant of works.

8:1), "There is therefore now no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus." And, says Christ himself, (John 11:26), "Whosoever liveth, and believeth in me, shall never die."

And thus you see your freedom and liberty from the law as it is the law of works. And that you may be the better enabled to "stand fast in this liberty, wherewith Christ has made you free"; beware of conceiving that the Lord now stands in any relation to you, or will any way deal with you as a man under that law. So that if the Lord shall be pleased hereafter to bestow upon you a great measure of faith, whereby you shall be enabled to yield an exact and perfect obedience to the mind and will of God;³²⁶ then beware of conceiving that the Lord looks upon it s obedience to the law of works, or will in any measure reward you for it, according to the promises of that law. And if in case, at any time hereafter, you be, by reason of weakness of your faith, and strength of temptation, drawn aside, and prevailed with to swerve from the mind and will of the Lord, then beware of conceiving that the Lord sees it as any transgression of the law of works. For if you cannot transgress that law, then it is impossible the Lord should see that which is not; and if the Lord can see no sin in you, as a transgression of the law of works, then it is impossible that he should either be angry with you, or correct you for any sin, as it is a transgression of that law. No, to speak with holy reverence, as I said before, the Lord cannot, by virtue of the covenant of works, either require any obedience of you, or give you an angry look, or any angry word; much less threaten and afflict you for any disobedience to that covenant. And, therefore, whensoever your conscience shall tell you, that you have broken any of the ten commandments, do not conceive that the Lord looks upon you as an angry Judge, armed with justice against you; much less do you fear that he will execute his justice upon you, according to the penalty of that covenant, in unjustifying of you, or depriving you of your heavenly inheritance, and giving you your portion in hell-fire. No, assure yourself that your God in Christ will never unson you, nor unpouse you: no, nor yet, as touching your justification and eternal salvation, will he love you ever a whit the less, though you commit ever so many or great sins; for this is a certain truth, that as no good either in you, or done by you, did move him to justify you, and give you eternal life, so no evil in you, or done by you, can move him to take it away from you, being once given.³²⁷ And, therefore, believe it whilst you live, that as the Lord

326 Exact and perfect, comparatively, not absolutely.

327 The author speaks expressly of the love of God, touching believers' justification, and eternal salvation, which, according to the Scripture, he reckons to be given them already. And he asserts, That as no good in them, or done by them, did move him to love them, so as to justify them, and give them eternal life, so no evil in them or done by them, shall lessen that love, as to their justification and eternal salvation; that is, as himself explains it, move him to take eternal life [which includes justification] away from them, being once given. This is most firm truth; howbeit, the more and the greater the sins of a believer are, he may lay his account with the more and the greater effects of God's fatherly indignation against him; and the corruption of human nature makes the adding of such a clause in such a case very necessary. What our author here advances, is evident from the

first loved you freely, so will he hereafter "heal your backslidings, and still love you freely," (Hosea 14:4). Yea, "he will love you unto the end," (John 12:1). And although the Lord does express the fruits of his anger towards you, in chastising and afflicting of you, yet do not imagine that your afflictions are penal, proceeding from hatred, and vindictive justice; and so as payment and satisfaction for sins; and so as the beginning of eternal torments in hell; for you being, as you have heard, freed from the law of works, and so consequently from sinning against it, must needs likewise be freed from all wrath, anger, miseries, calamities,

holy Scripture, (Psa 89:30-34), "If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments, if they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments, then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes: nevertheless, my loving-kindness will I not utterly take from him; nor suffer my faithfulness to fail; my covenant will I not break; nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips." And to deny it, is in effect to affirm that God loves believers, as touching their justification and eternal salvation, for their holiness; contrary to Titus 3:5, "Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy, he saved us."—(Rom 6:23), "The wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life, through Jesus Christ our Lord"; and that that love of his to them changeth according to the variations of their frame and walk; contrary to Romans 11:29, "The gifts and calling of God are without repentance." But while the doctrine of the perseverance of the saints stands, viz: That true believers can neither fall away totally, nor finally, neither from relative grace, nor from inherent grace, our author's doctrine on this point must stand also; and the sins of believers, how great or many soever they be, can never be of that kind which is inconsistent with a state of grace, nor of another than that of infirmities. And how low soever grace is brought in the soul of a believer at any time, through the prevalence of temptation, yet can he never altogether lose his inherent holiness, nor can he at any time "live after the flesh." For, according to the Scripture, that is not the spot of God's children; but he who so lives, neither is, nor ever was, one of them. (Rom 6:2,14), "How shall we that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? Sin shall not have dominion over you, for ye are not under the law but under grace."—(8:1), "Them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit." See verse 4; (1 John 3:9), "Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him, and he cannot sin, because he is born of God." "God foresaw what infirmities thou wouldst have, before he gave Christ this commission; and Christ foresaw them before his acceptance of the charge. If their prescience could not stop God in his gift, nor cool Christ in his acceptance, why should it now? While they do continue, the love of God to thee is not hindered by them." Charnock, vol. 2, p. 749. "Observe a twofold distinction: 1st. Between God's love in itself, and the manifestation of it to us. That is perpetual and one, without change, increase, or lessening; but the manifestation of his love is variable, according to our more or less careful exercise of piety. 2d. Between God's love to our persons, and God's love to our qualities and actions. A distinction which God well knows how to make. Parents, I am sure, are well skilled in putting this difference between the vices and persons of their children; those they hate, these they love. The case is alike between God and the elect; his love to their persons is from everlasting the same. Nor doth their sinfulness lessen it, nor their sanctity increase it; because God in loving their persons, never considered them otherwise than as most perfectly holy and unblamable in Christ," Pemble's Works, p. 23.

afflictions, yea, and from death itself, as³²⁸ fruits and effects of any transgression against that covenant.

And therefore you are never to confess your sins unto the Lord, as though you conceived them to have been committed against the law of works: and so making you liable to God's everlasting wrath, and hell- fire; neither must you crave pardon and forgiveness for them, that thereupon you may escape that penalty; neither do you either fast, or weep, or mourn, or humble yourself, from any belief that you shall thereby satisfy the justice of God, and appease his wrath, either in whole or in part, and so escape his everlasting vengeance. For if you be not under the law of works, and if the Lord see not sin in you as a transgression of that law, and be neither angry with you, nor afflict you for any sin, as it is a transgression of that law, then consequently you have no need either to confess your sins, or crave pardon for them, or fast, or weep, or mourn, or humble yourself for your sins, as conceiving them to be any transgression of the law of works.

Neo. Well, sir, you have fully satisfied me in this point; and therefore, I pray you, proceed to show what is that reward which the law of Christ promises, which you said I might hope for, in case of my obedience thereunto.

Evan. Why, the reward which I conceive the law of Christ promises to believers, and which they may hope for, answerably to their obedience to it,³²⁹ is a comfortable being in the enjoyment of sweet communion with God and Christ, even in the time of this life, and a freedom from afflictions, both spiritual and corporeal, so far forth as they are fruits and effects of sin, as it is any transgression of the law of Christ.³³⁰ For you know, that so long as a child does yield obedience to his father's commands, and does nothing that is displeasing to him, if he love his child, he will carry himself lovingly and kindly towards him, and suffer him to be familiar with him, and will not whip nor scourge him for his disobedience. Even so, if you unfeignedly desire and endeavour to be obedient unto the will and mind of your Father in Christ; in doing that which he commands, and in avoiding that which he forbids, both in your general and particular calling; and to the end that you may please him; then, answerably as you do so, your Father will smile upon you, when you shall draw near to him in prayer, or any other of his own ordinances; and manifest his sweet presence and loving favour towards you; and exempt you from all outward calamities except in case of trial of your faith and patience, or the like; as it was written, (2 Chron 15:2), "The Lord is with you, while ye are with him; and if ye seek him, he will be found of you." And so the apostle James says, (James 4:8), "Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you." And "Oh," says the

328 They are.

329 Though not for their obedience, but for Christ's obedience.

330 I read the last word of this sentence, Christ, not works, judging it plain, that the latter is a press error. See the last clause of Neophytus' speech above, and the reason here immediately following.

Lord, "that my people had hearkened unto me, and Israel had walked in my ways! he should have fed them with the finest of the wheat, and with honey out of the rock should I have satisfied thee," (*Psa 81:13,16*). And this may suffice to have shown you what you may hope for, answerably to your obedience to the law of Christ.

Neo. Then, sir, I pray you, proceed to show what is the penalty which the law of Christ threatens, and which I am to fear, if I transgress that law.

Evan. The penalty which the law of Christ threatens to you, if you transgress the law of Christ, and which you are to fear, is the want of near and sweet communion with God in Christ, even in the time of this life, and a liableness to all temporal afflictions, as fruits and effects of the transgressing of that law.³³¹

331 An awful penalty, if rightly understood, as comprehending all manner of strokes and afflictions on the outward and inner man, called by our author "temporal and spiritual afflictions on the outward man"; not to speak of the reproach, disgrace and contempt, successful labour and toil, poverty, misery, want, and the like, which the believer is liable to for his disobedience, as well as others. His sins lay him open to the whole train of maladies, pains, torments, sores, diseases, and plagues, incident to sinful flesh; by which he may become a burden to himself and others. And these may be inflicted on him, not only by the hand of God, but by the hand of the devil; as appears in the case of Job. Yea, and the Lord may, in virtue of this penalty annexed to his law, pursue the controversy with the offending believer, even to death; so that his natural life may go in the cause of his transgression, (1 Cor 11:30,32). To this may be added the marks of God's indignation against his sin, set upon his relations; witness the disorders, mischiefs, and strokes on David's family, for his sin in the matter of Uriah, more bitter than death, (2 Sam 12:10-14, chapter 13,14). In the inner man, by virtue of the same penalty, he is liable for his transgression, to be deprived of the comfort, sense, exercise, and some measure of his graces; of his sense of God's love, his peace, joy, actual communion with God, and access to him in duties; to be brought under desertion, hiding of God's face, withdrawing the light of the Lord's countenance: and left to walk in darkness, to go mourning without the sun, and to cry and shout while the Lord shutteth out his prayer; to be thrown into agonies of conscience, pierced with the arrows of the Almighty in his spirit, compassed about and distracted with the terrors of God, seized with the fearful apprehensions of God's revenging wrath against him, and thereby brought unto the brink of absolute despair. Besides all this, he is liable to the buffetings of Satan, and horrid temptations; and, for the punishment of one sin, to be suffered to fall into another. And all these may, in virtue of the penalty annexed to the law in the hand of Christ, meet in the case of the offending believer, together and at once. Thus, howbeit God no where threatens to cast believers in Christ into hell, yet he both threatens and often executes the casting of a hell into them, for their provocations. Only the revenging wrath and curse of God are no part of the penalty to believers in Christ, according to the truth and our author. But whether or not this penalty, as it is without these, leaves the most holy and awful law of the great God, and our Saviour Jesus Christ, most base and despicable, the sober-minded reader will easily judge for himself. "The one, viz: justification doth equally free all believers from the revenging wrath of God, and that perfectly in this life." Larger Cat. q. 77.—"They can never fall from the state of justification, yet they may, by their sins, fall under God's fatherly displeasure, and not have the light of his countenance restored unto them, until they humble

Wherefore, whensoever you shall hereafter transgress any of the ten commandments, you are to know that you have thereby transgressed the law of Christ, and that the Lord sees it and is angry with it, with a fatherly anger; and, if need be, will chastise you, (1 Peter 1:6), either with temporal or spiritual afflictions, or both. And this our heavenly Father will do in love to you; either to bring your sins to remembrance, as he did the sins of Joseph's brethren, (Gen 42:21), and as the widow of Zarephath confesseth concerning herself, (1 Kings 17:18), or else "to purge or take away your sins," according to that which the Lord says, (Isa 27:9), "By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged, and this is all the fruit, even the taking away of sin." "For indeed," says Mr. Culverwell, "afflictions, through God's blessing, are made special means to purge out that sinful corruption which is still in the nature of believers; and therefore are they, in Scripture, most aptly compared to medicines, for so they are indeed to all God's children, most sovereign medicines to cure all their spiritual diseases." And indeed we have all of our great need thereof; for as Luther, on the Galatians, p. 66, truly says, "We are not yet perfectly righteous; for whilst we remain in this life, sin dwells still in the flesh, and this remnant of sin God purgeth."—"Wherefore," says the same Luther in another place,³³² "When God hath remitted sins, and received a man into the bosom of grace, then doth he lay on him all kind of afflictions, and doth scour and renew him from day to day." And to the same purpose, Tindal truly says, "If we look on the flesh, and into the law, there is no man so perfect that is not found a sinner; nor no man so pure, that hath not need to be purged. And thus doth the Lord chastise believers to heal their natures, by purging out the corruption that remains therein."

And therefore, whensoever you shall hereafter feel the Lord's chastening hand upon you, let it move you to take the prophet Jeremiah's counsel, that is, to "search and try your ways, and turn unto the Lord," (Lam 3:40), and confess your sins unto him, saying, with the prodigal, (Luke 15:21), "Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son"; and beg pardon and forgiveness at his hands, as you are taught in the fifth petition of the Lord's prayer, (Matt 6:12). Yet do not you crave pardon and forgiveness at the hands of the Lord, as a malefactor doth at the hands of a judge, that feareth condemnation and death, as though you had sinned against the law of works, and

themselves, confess their sins, beg pardon, and renew their faith and repentance." Westm. Confess. chap. 11, art. 5.—"They may fall into grievous sins, and for a time continue therein, whereby they incur God's displeasure, and grieve his holy Spirit, come to be deprived of some measure of their graces and comforts, have their hearts hardened, and their consciences wounded; hurt and scandalize others, and bring temporal judgments upon themselves." Ibid. chap. 17. art. 3.—"The threatenings of it serve to show what even their sins deserve; and what afflictions, in this life, they may expect for them, although freed from the curse thereof threatened in the law." Ibid. chap. 19. art. 6.

332 Chos. Sermons, Sermon of the Kingdom of God, page 120.

therefore feared hell and damnation; but do you beg pardon and forgiveness as a child doth at the hands of his loving father; as feeling the fruits of his fatherly anger, in his chastising hand upon you; and as fearing the continuance and augmentation of the same, if your sin be not both pardoned and subdued.³³³ and therefore do you also beseech your loving Father to subdue your iniquities, according to his promise, ([Micah 7:19](#)). And if you find not that the Lord hath heard your prayers, by your feeling your iniquities subdued,³³⁴ then join with your prayers, fasting and weeping, if you can; that so you may be the more seriously humbled before the Lord, and more fervent in prayer. And this, I hope, may be sufficient to have showed you what is the penalty which the law of Christ threatens.

Neo. O, but, sir, I should think myself a happy man, if I could be so obedient to the law of Christ, that he might have no need to inflict this penalty upon me.

Evan. You say very well; but yet, whilst you carry this body of sin about you, do the best you can, there will be need that the Lord should, now and then, give you some fatherly corrections: but yet, this let me tell you, the more perfect your obedience is, the fewer lashes you shall have; "for the Lord doth not afflict willingly, nor grieve the children of men," ([Lam 3:33](#)). And therefore, according to my former exhortation, and your resolution, be careful to exercise your faith, and use all means to increase it; that so it may become effectual³³⁵ working by love. ([1 Thess 1:3](#), [Gal 5:6](#)) For, according to the measure of your faith, will be your true love to Christ and to his commandments; and according to your love to them, will be your delight in them, and your aptness and readiness to do them. And hence it is that Christ himself says, ([John 14:15](#)), "If ye love me, keep my commandments": and "this is the love of God," says that loving disciple, "that we keep his commandments, and his commandments are not grievous," ([1 John 5:3](#)). Nay, the truth is, if you have this love in your hearts, it will be grievous unto you, that you cannot keep them as you would. Oh, if this love do abound in your heart, it will cause you to say with godly Joseph, in case you be tempted as he was, "How can I do this great wickedness, and so sin against God?" How can I do that which I know will displease so gracious a Father, and so merciful a Saviour? No, I will not do it; no, I cannot do it: no, you will rather say with the Psalmist, "I delight to do thy will, O my God! yea, thy law is within my heart," ([Psa 40:8](#)).

Nay, let me tell you more, if this love of God in Christ be truly, and in any good measure, rooted in your heart; then, though the chastising hand of the Lord be not upon you, nay, though the Lord do no way express any anger towards you, yet if you but consider the Lord's

333 ([Matt 6:9,12](#)), "After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven; forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors."

334 The subduing of sin is the mark of God's hearing prayer for the pardon of it; if one feels not his iniquity subdued, he cannot find that God hath heard his prayers for pardon.

335 To the producing of holy obedience, according to the measure and degree of it.

ways towards you, and your ways towards him, you will mourn with a gospel- mourning, reasoning with yourself after this manner: Was I under the law of works by nature, and so, for every transgression against any of the ten commandments, made liable to everlasting damnation? and am I now, through the free mercy and love of God in Christ, brought under the law of Christ, and so subject to no other penalty for my transgressions, but fatherly and loving chastisements, which tend to the purging out of that sinful corruption that is in me? Oh what a loving Father is this! Oh what a gracious Saviour is this! Oh what a wretched man am I, to transgress the laws of such a good God, as he hath been to me! Oh the due consideration of this will even, as it were, melt your heart, and cause your eyes to drop with the tears of godly sorrow! yea, the due consideration of these things will cause you to "loathe yourself in your own sight for your transgressions", ([Eze 36:31](#)), yea, not only to loathe yourself for them, but also to leave them, saying with Ephraim, "What have I to do any more with idols?" ([Hosea 14:8](#)) and to "cast them away as menstruous cloth, saying unto them, Get ye hence," ([Isa 30:22](#)). And truly you will desire nothing more, than that you might so live, as that you might never sin against the Lord any more. And this is that "goodness of God which," as the apostle says, "leadeth to repentance"; yea, this is that goodness of God which will lead you to a free obedience. So that if you do but apply the goodness of God in Christ to your soul, in any good measure, then will you answerably yield obedience to the law of Christ, not only without having respect either to what the law of works either promiseth or threateneth; but also without having respect to what the law of Christ either promiseth or threateneth; you will do that which the Lord commandeth, only because he commandeth it, and to the end that you may please him; and you will forbear when he forbids, only because he forbids it to the end that you may not displease him.³³⁶ And this obedience is like unto that which our Saviour exhorts his disciples unto, ([Matt 10:8](#)), saying, "Freely ye have received, freely give." And this is to "serve the Lord without fear" of any penalty, which either the law of works or the law of Christ threateneth, "in holiness and righteousness

336 The author doth here no otherwise exhort the believer to yield free obedience, without respect to what either the law of works, or the law of Christ, promises or threatens, than he exhorts him to perfection of obedience, which, in the beginning of this answer, he told him not to be attainable in this life. And the truth is, neither the one nor the other is the design of these words. But he had exhorted him before, to use all means to increase his faith; and for his encouragement, he tells him here, that if he by faith applied the goodness of God in Christ to his own soul, in any good measure, then he would, answerably, yield obedience, without respect to what either the law of works, or the law of Christ promises or threatens, and only because God commands or forbids. The freeness of obedience is of very different degrees; and believers' obedience is never absolutely free, till it be absolutely perfect in heaven; but the freeness of their obedience will always bear proportion to the measure of their faith, which is never perfect in this life; thus, the more faith, the more freeness of obedience, and the less faith, the less of that freeness.

all the days of your life," according to that saying of Zacharias,³³⁷ (Luke 1:74,75). And this is to "pass the time of your sojourning here, in fear" of offending the Lord, by sinning against him: as the apostle Peter exhorts, (1 Peter 1:17). Yea, and this is to "serve God acceptably, with reverence and godly fear": as the author to the Hebrews exhorts, (Heb 12:28). And thus, my dear friend, Neophytus, I have endeavoured, according to your desire, to give you my judgment and direction in these points.

Neo. And truly, sir, you have done it very effectually; the Lord enable me to practise according to your direction!

Chapter III, Section 12

That distinction a mean betwixt legalism and Antinomianism.

Nom. Sir, in this your answer to his question, you have also answered me, and given me full satisfaction in divers points, about which my friend Antinomista and I have had

337 "The believer obeys with an angel-like obedience; then the Spirit seems to exhaust all the commanding awesomeness of the law, and supplies the law's imperious power, with the strength and power of love." Rutherford's Spirit. Antichrist, p. 318.—"The more of the Spirit, because the Spirit is essentially free, (Psa 51:12, 2 Cor 3:17), the more freeness; and the more freeness, the more renewed will in the obedience; and the more renewed will, the less constraint, because freeness exhausteth constraint." Ibid. "When Christ's blood is seen by faith to quiet justice, then the conscience becomes quiet also, and will not suffer the heart to entertain the love of sin, but sets the man on work to fear God for his mercy, and obey all his commandments, out of love to God, for his free gift of justification, by grace bestowed upon him; for 'this is the end of the law' indeed, whereby it obtaineth of a man more obedience than any other way." Pract. Use of Sav. Knowledge, tit. The Third Thing Requisite, &c. fig. 7. Promises and threatenings are not, by this doctrine, annexed to the holy law in vain, even with respect to believers; for the law of God is, in his infinite wisdom, suited to the state of the creature, to whom it is given: and therefore, howbeit the believer's eternal happiness is unalterably secured from the moment of his union with Christ by faith; yet, since sin dwells in him still while in this world, the promises of fatherly smiles, and threatenings of fatherly chastisements, are still necessary. But it is evident that this necessity is entirely founded on the believer's imperfection; as in case of a child under age. And, therefore, although his being influenced to obedience by the promises and threatenings of the law of Christ, is not indeed slavish, yet it is plainly childish, not agreeing to the state of a perfect man, of one come unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ. And, in the state of perfection, he shall yield such free obedience as the angels do in heaven, without being moved thereto by any promises or threatenings at all: and the nearer he comes in his progress to that state of perfection, the more will his obedience be of that nature. So by the doctrine here advanced, the author doth no more disown the necessity of promises to influence and encourage the believer's obedience, nor say that he ought not to have regard to promises and threatenings, than one is to be reckoned to say, that a lame man has no need of, and should not have regard unto the crutches provided for him: when he only says, That the stronger his limbs grow, he will have less need of them, and will lean the less on them.

many a wrangling fit. For I used to affirm with tooth and nail, [as men use to say,] that believers are under the law, and not delivered from it; and that they do sin, and that God sees it, and is angry with them, and doth afflict them for it, and that, therefore, they ought to humble themselves, and mourn for their sins, and confess them, and crave pardon for them; and yet truly I must confess, I did not understand what I said, nor whereof I affirmed; and the reason was, because I did not know the difference betwixt the law, as it is the law of works, and as it is the law of Christ.

Ant. And believe me, sir, I used to affirm, as earnestly as he, that believers are delivered from the law, and, therefore, do not sin; and, therefore, God can see no sin in them; and, therefore, is neither angry with them, nor does afflict them for sin; and, therefore, they have no need either to humble themselves, or mourn, or confess their sins, or beg pardon for them; the which I believing to be true, could not conceive how the contrary could be true also. But now I plainly see that by means of your distinguishing betwixt the law, as it is the law of works, and as it is the law of Christ, there is a truth in both. And, therefore, friend Nomista, whensoever either you, or any man else, shall hereafter affirm, that believers are under the law and do sin; and God sees it, and is angry with them, and does chastise them for it; and that they ought to humble themselves, mourn, weep, and confess their sins, and beg pardon for them: if you mean only, as they are under the law of Christ, I will agree with you, and never contradict you again.

Nom. And truly, friend Antinomista, if either you, or any man else, shall hereafter affirm, that believers are delivered from the law, and do not sin, and God sees no sin in them, nor is angry with them, nor afflicts them for their sins, and that they have no need either to humble themselves, mourn, confess, or crave pardon for their sins; if you mean it only as they are not under the law of works, I will agree with you, and never contradict you again.

Evan. I rejoice to hear you speak these words each to other: and truly, now I am in hope that you two will come back from both your extremes, and meet my neighbour Neophytus in the golden mean; having, as the apostle says, "the same love, being of one accord, and of one mind."

Nom. Sir, for my own part, I thank the Lord I do now plainly see, that I have erred exceedingly, in seeking to be justified, "as it were, by the works of the law."³³⁸ And yet could I never be persuaded to it before this day; and indeed should not have been persuaded to it now, had not you so plainly and fully handled this threefold law. And truly, sir, I do now

338 This Scriptural phrase is here aptly used, to intimate how men deceive themselves, thinking they are far from seeking to be justified by the works of the law, because they are convinced they cannot do good works in the perfection which the law requires: meanwhile, since God is merciful, and Christ hath died, they look for the pardon of their sins, and acceptance with God, upon the account of their own works, though attended with some imperfections: that is, "as it were, by the works of the law," ([Rom 9:32](#)).

unfeignedly desire to renounce myself, and all that ever I have done, and by faith to adhere only to Jesus Christ; for now I see that he is all in all. Oh, that the Lord would enable me so to do! And I beseech you, sir, pray for me.

Ant. And truly, sir, I must needs confess, that I have erred as much on the other hand; for I have been so far from seeking to be justified by the works of the law, that I have neither regarded law nor works. But now I see mine error; I purpose, God willing, to reform it.

Evan. The Lord grant that you may.

Chapter III, Section 13

How to attain to assurance.

But how do you, neighbour Neophytus; for methinks you look very heavily.

Neo. Truly, sir, I was thinking of that place of Scripture, where the apostle exhorts us "to examine ourselves whether we be in the faith or no," (2 Cor 13:5); whereby it seems to me, that a man may think he is in the faith, when he is not. Therefore, sir, I would gladly hear how I may be sure that I am in the faith.

Evan. I would not have you to make any question of it, since you have grounded your faith upon such a firm foundation as will never fail you; for the promise of God in Christ is of a tried truth, and never yet failed any man, nor ever will.³³⁹ Therefore I would have you to close with Christ in the promise, without making any question whether you are in the faith or no; for there is an assurance which rises from the exercise of faith by a direct act, and that is, when a man, by faith, directly lays hold upon Christ, and concludes assurance from thence.³⁴⁰

339 This answer proceeds upon taking Neophytus to speak, not of the grace but of the doctrine of faith; namely, the foundation of faith, or ground of believing; as if he had desired to know whether the foundation of his faith was the true foundation of faith, or not. This is plain from the two following paragraphs. And upon the supposition that he had grounded his faith on the promise of the gospel, the tried foundation of faith, the author tells him, he would not have him make a question of that, having handled that question already at great length, and answered all his and Nomista's objections on the head, where Neophytus declared himself satisfied. And there is no inconsistency betwixt the author's advice in this case given to Neophytus, and the advice given in the text last cited unto the Corinthians, unreasonably and peevishly demanding a proof of Christ speaking in the apostle. Whether, with several judicious critics and commentators, we understand that text concerning the doctrine of faith, as if the apostle put them to try whether they retained the true doctrine or not; or, which is the common, and, I think, the true understanding of it, concerning the grace of faith; I see nothing here determining our author's opinion, as to the sense of it; but whether he seems here to be against self-examination, especially after he had urged that duty on Antinomista, and answered his objections against it, let the candid reader judge.

340 See the note on the Definition of Faith. "The assurance of Christ's righteousness is a direct act of faith, apprehending imputed righteousness: the evidence of our justification we now speak of, is the reflex light, not

Neo. Sir, I know that the foundation whereon I am to ground my faith remains sure; and I think I have already built thereon; but yet, because I conceive a man may think he has done so when he has not, therefore, would I fain know how I may be assured that I have so done?³⁴¹

Evan. Well, now I understand you what you mean; it seems you do not want a ground for your believing, but for your believing that you have believed.³⁴²

Neo. Yea, indeed, that is the thing I want.

Evan. Why, the next way to find out and know this is to look back and reflect upon your own heart, and consider what actions have passed through there; for indeed this is the benefit that a reasonable soul has, that it is able to return upon itself, to see what it has done; which the soul of a beast cannot do. Consider, then, I pray you, that you have been convinced in your spirit that you are a sinful man, and, therefore, have feared the Lord's wrath and eternal damnation in hell; and you have been convinced that there is no help for you at all in yourself, by anything that you can do; and you heard it plainly proved, that Jesus Christ alone is an all-sufficient help; and the free and full promise of God in Christ has been made so plain and clear to you, that you had nothing to object why Christ did not belong to you in particular;³⁴³ and you have perceived a willingness in Christ to receive you, and to embrace you as his beloved spouse; and you have thereupon consented and resolved to take Christ, and to give yourself unto him, whatsoever betides you; and I am persuaded you have thereupon felt a secret persuasion in your heart, that God in Christ doth bear a love to you; and answerably your heart hath been inflamed towards him in love again, manifesting itself in an unfeigned desire to be obedient and subject to his will in all things, and never to displease him in anything. Now tell me, I pray you, and truly, whether you have not found these things in you, as I have said?

Neo. Yea, indeed, I hope I have in some measure.

by which we are justified, but by which we know that we are justified." Rutherford's *Christ Dying and Drawing*, p. 111.—"We had never a question with Antinomians touching the first assurance of justification, such as is proper to the light of faith. He might have spared all his arguments to prove, that we are first assured of our justification by faith, not by good works, for we grant the arguments of one sort of assurance, which is proper to faith; and they prove nothing against another sort of assurance, by signs and effects, which is also divine." *Ibid.* p. 110.

341 A good reason why this assurance, in or by the direct act of faith, is to be tried by marks and signs. There is certainly a persuasion that "cometh not of him that called us"; which obliges men to examine their persuasion, whether it be of the right sort or not.

342 This is called assurance by a reflex act.

343 In virtue of the deed of gift and grant. See the note on the definition of faith, fig. 1.

Evan. Then I tell you truly, you have a sure ground to lay your believing that you have believed upon; and, as the apostle John says, "Hereby you may know that you are of the truth, and may assure your heart thereof before God," (1 John 3:19).

Neo. Surely, sir, this I can truly say, that heretofore, when I have thought upon my sins, I have conceived of God and Christ, as of a wrathful judge that would condemn all unrighteous men to eternal death: and, therefore, when I have thought upon the day of judgment, and hell torments, I have even trembled for fear, and have, as it were, even hated God. And though I have laboured to become righteous, that I might escape his wrath, yet all that I did, I did it unwillingly. But since I have heard you make it so plain, that a sinner that sees and feels his sins is to conceive of God, as of a merciful, loving, and forgiving Father in Christ, that hath committed all judgment to his Son, who came not to condemn men but to save them; methinks I do not now fear his wrath, but do rather apprehend his love towards me; whereupon my heart is inflamed towards him with such love, that, methinks, I would willingly do or suffer anything that I knew would please him; and would rather choose to suffer any misery than I would do anything that I knew were displeasing to him.

Evan. We read in the seventh chapter of Luke's gospel, that when that sinful yet believing woman did manifest her faith in Christ by her love to him, in "washing his feet with her tears, and wiping them with the hairs of her head," (verse 38), he said unto Simon the Pharisee, (verse 47), "I say unto thee, her sins, which are many, are forgiven her, for she loved much"; even so I may say unto you, Nomista, in the same words concerning our neighbour Neophytus. And to you yourself, Neophytus, I say, as Christ said unto the woman, (verse 48-50), "Thy sins are forgiven thee, thy faith hath saved thee, go in peace."

Ant. But I pray you, sir, is to this his reflecting upon himself to find out a ground to lay his believing that he hath believed upon, a turning back from the covenant of grace to the covenant of works, and from Christ to himself?

Evan. Indeed, if he should look upon these things in himself, and thereon conclude, that because he has done this, God had accepted of him, and justified him, and will save him, and so make them the ground of his believing; this were to turn back from the covenant of grace to the covenant of works, and from Christ to himself. But if he look upon these things in himself, and thereupon conclude, that because these things are in his heart, Christ dwells there by faith, and therefore he is accepted of God, and justified, and shall certainly be saved, and so make them an evidence of his believing, or the ground of his believing that he has believed; this is neither to turn back from the covenant of grace to the covenant of works, nor from Christ to himself. So that these things in his heart being the daughters of faith, and the offspring of Christ, though they cannot at first produce, or bring forth their mother, yet may they in time of need nourish her.

Chapter III, Section, 14

Marks and evidences of true faith.

Nom. But, I pray you, sir, are there not other things besides these, that he says he finds in himself, that a man may look upon as evidences of his believing, or, as you call them, as grounds to believe that he has believed?

Evan. Yea, indeed, there are divers other effects of faith, which if a man have in him truly, he may look upon them as evidences that he hath truly believed; and I will name three of them unto you:

Whereof the first is, when a man truly loves the word of God, and makes a right use of it; and this a man does, First, when he hungers and thirsts after the word, as after the food of his soul, desiring it at all times, even as he does his "appointed ³⁴⁴ food," ([Job 23:12](#)). Secondly, when he desires and delights to exercise himself therein day and night, that is, constantly, ([Psa 1:2](#)). Thirdly, when he receives the word of God as the word of God, and not as the word of man, ([1 Thess 2:13](#)); setting his heart, in the time of hearing or reading it, as in God's presence: and being affected with it, as if the Lord himself should speak unto him being most affected with that ministry, or that portion of God's word, which shows him his sins, and searches out his most secret corruptions; denying his own reason and affections: yea, and his profits and pleasures, in anything when the Lord shall require it of him. Fourthly, This a man does, when he makes the word of God to be his chief comfort in the time of his afflictions; finding it, at that time, to be the main stay and solace of his heart, ([Psa 119:49,50](#)).

The second evidence is, when a man truly loves the children of God, ([1 John 5:1](#)); that is, all godly and religious persons, above all other sorts of men; and that is, when he loves them not for carnal respects, but for the graces of God which he sees in them, ([2 John 1:2](#), [3 John 1](#)). And when he delights in their society and company, and makes them his only companions, ([Psa 119:63](#)), and when his well-doing [to his power] extends itself to them, ([Psa 16:3](#)). In being pitiful and tender-hearted towards them, and in gladly receiving of them, and communicating to their necessities with a ready mind, ([Phile 7](#), [1 John 3:17](#)). And when he has not the glorious faith of Christ in "respect of persons," ([James 2:1,2](#)), but can make himself equal to them of the lower sort, ([Rom 12:16](#)); and when he loves them at all times, even when they are in adversity, as poverty, disgrace, sickness, or otherwise in misery.

The third evidence is, when a man can truly love his enemies, ([Matt 6:14](#)). And that he does, when he can pray heartily for them, and forgive them their particular trespasses against him; being more grieved for that they have sinned against God than for that they have wronged him; and when he can forbear them, and yet could be revenged of them, either by

344 So the Margin reads it.

bringing shame and misery upon them, (1 Peter 3:9, Rom 12:14); and when he strives to overcome their evil with goodness, being willing to help them, and relieve them in their misery, and do them any good in soul or body; and, lastly, when he can freely and willingly acknowledge his enemy's just praise, even as if he were his dearest friend.

Chapter III, Section 15

How to recover lost evidences.

Neo. But, sir, I pray you, let me ask you one question more touching this point; and that is, suppose that hereafter I should see no outward evidences, and question whether I had ever any true inward evidences, and so whether ever I did truly believe or no, what must I do then?

Evan. Indeed it is possible you may come to such a condition; and therefore you do well to provide beforehand for it. Now then, if ever it shall please the Lord to give you over to such a condition, first, let me warn you to take heed of forcing and constraining yourself to yield obedience to God's commandments, to the end you may so get an evidence of faith again, or a ground to lay your believing, that you have believed, upon; and so forcibly to hasten your assurance before the time:³⁴⁵ for although this be not to turn quite back to the covenant of works, [for that you shall never do,] yet it is to turn aside towards that covenant, as Abraham did, who, after that he had long waited for the promised seed, though he was before justified by believing the free promise, yet, for the more speedy satisfying of his faith, he turned aside to go in to Hagar, who was, as you have heard, a type of the covenant of works. So that you see, this is not the right way; but the right way for you, in this case, to get your assurance again, is, when all other things fail, to look to Christ; that is, go to the word and promise, and leave off and cease awhile to reason about the truth of your faith; and set your heart on work to believe, as if you had never yet done it; saying in your heart, Well, Satan, suppose my faith has not been true hitherto, yet now will I begin to endeavour after true faith; and therefore, O Lord, here I cast myself upon thy mercy afresh, for in thee the fatherless find mercy, (Hosea 14:3). Thus, I say, hold to the word; go not away, but keep you here, and you shall bring forth fruit with patience,³⁴⁶ (Luke 8:15).

345 This forcing one's self to yield obedience, which the author warns Christians against, when they have lost sight of their evidences, and would fain recover them, is by pressing to yield obedience, without believing, till once by their obedience they have recovered the evidence of their having faith. To advise a Christian to beware of taking this course, in this case, is not to favour laxness, but to guard him against beginning his work at the wrong end, and so labouring in vain; for obeying, indeed, must still spring from believing, since "without faith it is impossible to please god," (Heb 11:6). And "whatsoever is not of faith, is sin," (Rom 14:23). The following advice sets the matter in full light.

346 Namely, obedience, whereby you shall recover dence.

Chapter III, Section 16

Marks and signs of union with Christ.

Neo. Well, sir, you have fully satisfied me concerning that point: but as I remember, it follows in the same verse, "Know ye not your own selves, how that Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates"? ([2 Cor 13:5](#)). Wherefore, I desire to hear how a man may know that Jesus Christ is in him.

Evan. Why, if Christ be in a man, he lives in him: as says the apostle, "I live not but Christ liveth in me."

Neo. But how, then, shall a man know, that Christ lives in him?

Evan. Why, in what man soever Christ lives according to the measure of his faith, he executes his threefold office in him, viz: his prophetic, priestly, and kingly office.

Neo. I desire to hear more of this threefold office of Christ; and therefore, I pray you, sir, tell me, first, how a man may know that Christ executes his prophetic office in him?

Evan. Why, so far forth as any man hears and knows that there was a covenant made betwixt God and all mankind in Adam; and that it was an equal covenant, and that God's justice must needs enter,³⁴⁷ upon the breach of it; and that all mankind, for that cause, were liable to eternal death and damnation; so that if God had condemned all mankind, yet had it but been the sentence of an equal and just judge, seeking rather the execution of his justice, than man's ruin and destruction; and thereupon takes it home, and applies it particularly to himself, ([Job 5:27](#)), and so is convinced that he is a miserable, lost, and helpless man; I say, so far forth as a man does this, Christ executes his prophetic office in him, in teaching him, and revealing unto him the covenant of works. And, so far forth as any man hears and knows that God made a covenant with Abraham, and all his believing seed in Jesus Christ, offering him freely to all to whom the sound of the gospel comes, and giving him freely to all that receive him by faith; and so justifies them, and saves them eternally; and thereupon has his heart opened to receive this truth, not as a man takes an object or a theological point into his head, whereby he is only made able to discourse: but as an habitual and practical point, receiving it into his "heart by the faith of the gospel," ([Phil 1:27](#)), and applying it to himself, and laying his eternal state upon it; and so setting to his seal, that God is true: I say, so far forth as a man does this, Christ executes his prophetic office in him, in teaching him and revealing to him the covenant of grace. And so far forth as any man hears and knows, that "this is the will of God, even his sanctification," ([1 Thess 4:3](#)), and thereupon concludes, that it is his duty to endeavour after it; I say, so far forth as a man does this, Christ executes his prophetic office in him, in teaching and revealing his law to him. And this I hope is sufficient for answer to your first question.

347 Demanding satisfaction.

Neo. I pray you, sir, in the second place, tell me, how a man may know that Christ executes his priestly office in him?

Evan. Why, so far forth as any man hears and knows that Christ has given himself, as that only absolute and perfect sacrifice for the sins of believers, ([Heb 9:26](#)), and joined them unto himself by faith, and himself unto them by his Spirit, and so made them one with him; and is now "entered into heaven itself, to appear in the presence of God for them," ([Heb 9:24](#)); and hereupon is emboldened to go immediately to ³⁴⁸ God in prayer, as to a father, and meet him in Christ, and present him with Christ himself, as with a sacrifice without spot or blemish; I say, so far forth as any man does this, Christ executes his priestly office in him.

Neo. But sir, would you have a believer to go immediately unto God? How then does Christ make intercession for us at God's right hand, as the apostle says he does? ([Rom 8:34](#))

Evan. It is true indeed, Christ, as a public person, representing all believers, appears before God his Father; and willeth according to both his natures, and desires as he is a man, that God would, for his satisfaction's sake, grant unto them whatsoever "they ask according to his will." But yet you must go immediately to God in prayer for all that. ³⁴⁹

You must not pitch your prayers upon Christ, and terminate them there, as if he were to take them, and present them to his Father; but the very presenting place of your prayers must be God himself in Christ. Neither must you conceive, as though Christ the Son were more willing to grant your request than God the Father, for whatsoever Christ willeth, the same also the Father, being well pleased with him, willeth. In Christ, therefore, I say, and no where else, must you expect to have your petitions granted; and as in Christ and no place else, so for Christ's sake, and nothing else. And therefore I beseech you to beware you forget not Christ when you go unto the Father to beg anything you desire, either for yourself or others; especially when you desire to have any pardon for sin, you are not to think, that when you join with your prayers, fasting, weeping, and afflicting of yourself, that for so doing you shall prevail with God to hear you, and grant your petitions; no, no, you must meet God in Christ, and present him with his sufferings; your eye, your mind, and all your confidence, must be therein; and in that be as confident as possible you can; yea, expostulate the matter, as it were, with God the Father, and say, "Lo; here is the person that has well deserved it; here is the person that wills and desires it; in whom thou hast said thou art well pleased; yea, here is the person that has paid the debt, and discharged the bond for all my sins; and, therefore, O Lord! now it stands with thy justice to forgive me." And thus, if you do, why, then you may be assured that Christ executes his priestly office in you.

348 That is, even unto.

349 But you yourself were not to come near unto him, nay, we must "come unto God by Christ," ([Heb 7:25](#)).

Neo. I pray you, sir, in the third place, show me how a man may know that Christ executes his kingly office in him?

Evan. Why, so far forth as any man hears and knows "that all power is given unto Christ, both in heaven and on earth," ([Matt 28:18](#)); both to vanquish and to overcome all the lusts and corruptions of believers, and to write his law in their hearts; and hereupon takes occasions to go unto Christ for the doing of both in him; I say, so far forth as he does this, why Christ executes his kingly office in him.

Neo. Why then, sir, it seems that the place where Christ executes his kingly office, is in the hearts of believers?

Evan. It is true indeed; for Christ's kingdom is not temporal or secular over the natural lives or civil negotiations of men; but his kingdom is spiritual and heavenly, over the souls of men, to awe and over-rule the hearts, to captivate the affections, to bring into obedience the thoughts, and to subdue and pull down strong holds. For when our father Adam transgressed, he and we, all of us, forsook God, and chose the devil for our lord and king; so that every mother's child of us is, by nature, under the government of Satan; and he rules over us, till Christ come into our hearts, and dispossess him; according to the saying of Christ himself, ([Luke 11:21,22](#)), "When a strong man armed keepeth his palace, his goods are in peace": that is, says Calvin, Satan holds them that are in subjection to him in such bonds and quiet possession, that he rules over them without resistance; but when Christ comes to dwell in any man's heart by faith; according to the measure of faith, he dispossesses him, and seats himself in the heart, and roots out, and pulls down all that withstands his government there; and, as a valiant captain, he stands upon his guard, and enables the soul to gather together all its forces and powers, to resist and withstand all its and his enemies, and so set itself in good earnest against them, when they at any time offer to return again; and he doth especially enable the soul to resist, and set itself against the principal enemy, even that which does most oppose Christ in his government; so that whatsoever lust or corruption is in a believer's heart or soul as most predominant, Christ enables him to take that into his mind, and to have most revengeful thoughts against it, and to make complaints to him against it, and to desire power and strength from him against it, and all because it most withstands the government of Christ, and is the rankest traitor to Christ; so that he uses all the means he can to bring it before the judgment-seat of Christ, and there he calls for justice against it, saying, "O Lord Jesus Christ, here is a rebel and a traitor, that does withstand thy government in me, wherefore, I pray thee, come and execute thy kingly office in me, and subdue it; yea, vanquish and overcome it." Whereupon Christ gives the same answer that he gave to the centurion, "Go thy way, and as thou hast believed, so be it done unto thee,"³⁵⁰ ([Matt 8:13](#)).

³⁵⁰ Namely, believed the promise of sanctification, ([Eze 36:27](#), [Micah 7:19](#)), which belief brings always along with it the use of the means, that are of divine institution, for that end.

And as Christ doth thus suppress all other governors but himself in the hart of a believer, so doth he raze out and deface all other laws, and writes his own there, according to his promise, ([Jer 31:33](#)), and makes them pliable and willing to do and suffer his will; and that because it is his will. So that the mind and will of Christ, laid down in his word, and manifested in his works, is not only the rule of a believer's obedience, but also the reason of it, as I once heard a godly minister say in the pulpit; so that he does not only do that which is Christ's will, but he does it because it is his will.

Oh that man, which hath the law of Christ written in his heart! according to the measure of it, he reads, he hears, he prays, he receives the sacrament, he keeps the Lord's day holy, he exhorts, he instructs, he confers, and does all the duties that belong to him in his general calling, because he knows it is the mind and will of Christ he should do so! yea, he patiently suffers, and willingly undergoes afflictions for the cause of Christ, because he knows it is the will of Christ; yea, such a man does not only yield obedience, and perform the duties of the first table of the law, by virtue of Christ's command, but of the second also. Oh that husband, parent, master, or magistrate, that has the law of Christ written in his heart! he does his duty to his wife, child, servant, or subject, willingly and uprightly, because Christ requires it and commands it. And so that wife, child, servant, or subject, that has the law of Christ written in his or her heart, they do their duties to husband, parent, master, or governor, freely and cheerfully, because their Lord Christ commands it. Now, then, if you find these things in your heart, you may conclude that Christ rules and reigns there, as Lord and King.

Chapter IV, OF THE HEART'S HAPPINESS, OR SOUL'S REST.

Section 1, No rest for the soul till it come to God.

Neo. Sir, be pleased to give me leave to tell you some part of my mind, and then I will cease to trouble you any more at this time. The truth is, I have, ever since I could remember, felt a kind of restless discontentedness in my spirit, and for many years together, I fed myself with hopes of finding rest and content in persons and things here below, scarce thinking of the state and condition of my soul, or of any condition beyond this life, until, as I told you before, the Lord was pleased to visit me with a fit of sickness; and then I began to bethink myself of death, judgment, hell, and heaven, and to take care and seek rest for my soul, as well as for my body; but, alas! I could never find rest for it before this day; because, indeed, I sought it not by faith, but, as it were, by the works of the law; or, in plain terms, because I sought it not in Christ but in myself. But now, I bless God, I see that Christ is all in all; and therefore, by the grace of God, I am resolved no longer to seek rest and content, neither in any earthly thing, nor in mine own righteousness, but only in the free love and favour of God, as he is in his Son Jesus Christ; and, God willing, there shall be my soul's rest. And I beseech you, sir, pray for me, that it may be so; and I have done.

Evan. This point, concerning the heart's happiness, or soul's rest, is a point very needful for us to know; and indeed, it is a point that I have formerly thought upon; and therefore, though my occasions do now begin to call me away from you, yet, nevertheless, since you have begun to speak of it, I shall, if you please, proceed on, if you shall, or any of you, give occasion, and as the Lord shall enable me.

Ant. With a very good will, sir; for indeed it is a point that I much desire to hear of.

Evan. First, then, I would entreat you to consider with me, that when God at first gave man an elementish body,³⁵¹ he did also infuse into him an immortal soul of a spiritual substance; and though he gave his soul a local being in his body, yet he gave it a spiritual well-being in himself; so that the soul was in the body by location and at rest in God by union and communication; and this being of the soul in God at first was man's true being, and his true happiness. Now man falling from God, God in his justice left man, so that the actual union and communion that the soul of man had with God at first is broken off; God and man's soul are parted; and it is in a restless condition. Howbeit, the Lord having seated in man's soul a certain character of himself, the soul is thereby made to re-aspire towards

351 That is an elementary body, made up, as it were, of the four elements, as they are called, namely, fire, air, earth, and water.

that summum bonum, that chief good, even God himself, and can find rest no where, till it come to him.³⁵²

Nom. But stay, sir, I pray you; how can it be said that man's soul doth re-aspire towards God the Creator, when it is evident that every man's soul naturally is bent towards the creature, to seek a rest there?

Evan. For answer hereunto I pray you consider, that naturally man's understanding is dark and blind; and therefore is ignorant what his own soul does desire and strongly aspire unto. It knoweth, indeed, that there is a want in the soul; but till it be enlightened, it knoweth not what it is which the soul wanteth. For, indeed, the case standeth with the soul as with a child new born, which child, by natural instinct, doth gape and cry for nutriment; yea, for such nutriment as may agree with its tender condition; and if the nurse, through negligence or ignorance, either give it no meat at all, or else such as it is not capable of receiving, the child refuses it, and still cries, in strength of desire, after the breast; yet does not the child, in this estate, know by any intellectual power and understanding what itself desires. Even so man's poor soul doth cry to God as for its proper nourishment;³⁵³ but his understanding, like a blind, ignorant nurse, not knowing what it cries for, offers to the heart a creature instead of a Creator; thus, by reason of the blindness of the understanding, together with the cor-

352 The soul of man has a natural desire of happiness: nothing can make it happy but what is commensurable to its desires, or capable of affording it a full satisfaction. Nothing less than an infinite good is such: and God himself only is an infinite good, in the enjoyment of which the soul can rest, as fully satisfied, desiring no more. Now, since by reason of the vast capacity of the soul, nothing but God himself can indeed satisfy this its desire of happiness, the which is so woven into the very nature of the soul, that nothing but the destruction of the very being of the soul can remove it; it is evident, that it is impossible the soul of man can ever find true rest, until it return to God, and take up its rest with him; but must still be in quest of, or desiring its chief good and happiness, wherein it may rest, and this in reality is God himself only; though the practical understanding being blinded, knows not that, and the perverse will and affections carry away the soul from him, seeking the desired good and happiness in other things. This is what the author calls the soul's re-aspiring towards the chief good, even God himself; and it is so consistent with the total depravation of man's nature, that it will remain for ever in the damned in hell; a chief part of whose misery will lie in that this desire shall ever be rampant in them, but never in the least satisfied; they shall never be freed from this scorching thirst there, nor yet get a drop of water to cool the tongue.

353 Man's poor soul, before it is enlightened, naturally cries to God, as the "young ravens cry to him," (Job 38:41), not knowing to whom: and it cries for him as its proper nourishment, as the new born infant for the breast, not knowing for what. Only it feels a want, desires supply proper for filling it up, and can never get kindly rest till it be supplied accordingly, that is, till it come to the enjoyment of God: then it rests, as the infant set to the full breast. (Isa 66:11), "That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations."

ruption of the will, and disorder of the affections, man's soul is kept by violence ³⁵⁴ from its proper centre, even God himself.

Chapter IV, Section 2

How the soul is kept from rest in God.

Oh, how many souls are there in the world that are hindered, if not quite kept, from rest in God, by reason that their blind understanding presents unto their sensual appetites varieties of sensual objects!

Is there not many a luxurious person's soul hindered, if not quite kept, from true rest in God, by that beauty which nature hath placed in feminine faces,³⁵⁵ especially when Satan secretly suggests into such feminine hearts a desire of an artificial dressing, from the head to the foot; yea, and sometimes painting the face, like their mother Jezebel?

And is there not many a voluptuous epicure's soul hindered, if not quite kept, from rest in God, by beholding the colour, and tasting the sweetness of dainty delicate dishes, his wine red in the cup and his beer of amber colour in the glass? In the Scripture we read of a "certain man that fared deliciously every day," as if there had been no more than one so ill disposed; but in our times, there are certain hundreds, both of men and women, that do not only fare deliciously, but voluptuously, twice every day, if not more.

And is there not many a proud person's soul hindered, if not quite kept, from rest in God, by the harmonious sound of popular praise which, like a loadstone, draws the vain-glorious heart to hunt so much the more eagerly, to augment the echo of such vain windy reputation?

And is there not many a covetous person's soul hindered, if not quite kept, from rest in God, by the cry of great abundance, the words of wealth, and the glory of gain?

And is there not many a musical mind hindered, if not quite kept, from sweet comfort in God, by the harmony of artificial concord upon musical instruments?

And how many perfumed fools are there in the world, who, by smelling their sweet apparel, and their sweet nosegays, are kept from soul sweetness in Christ? And thus does Satan, like a cunning fisher, bait his hook with a sensual object, to catch men with: and having gotten it into their jaws, he draws them up and down in sensual contentments, till he has so drowned them therein, that the peace and rest of their souls in God is almost forgotten. And hence it is that the greatest part of man's life, and in many their whole life, is spent in seeking satisfaction to the sensual appetite.

354 Namely, violence done to its natural make and constitution [if I may so express it] by the blindness, corruption, and disorder, that have seized its faculties.

355 That is, women's faces.

Nom. Indeed, sir, this which you have said, we may see truly verified in many men, who spend their days about these vanities, and will afford no time for religious exercises; no, not upon the Lord's day, by their good will.

Evan. You say the truth; and yet let me tell you withal, that a man by the power of natural conscience, may be forced to confess that his hopes of happiness are in God alone, and not in these things; yea, and to forsake profits and pleasures, and all sensual objects, as unable to give his soul any true contentment, and fall to the performance of religious exercises, and yet rest there, and never come to God for rest. And if we consider it, either in the rude multitude of sensual livers, or in the more seemingly religious, we shall perceive that the religious exercises of men do strongly deceive, and strangely delude many men of their heart's happiness in God.

For the first sort,³⁵⁶ though they be such as make their belly their best god, and do no sacrifice but to Bacchus, Apollo, or Venus;³⁵⁷ though their conscience do accuse them that these things are naught, yet in that they have the name of Christians put upon them in their baptism, and forasmuch as they do often repeat the Lord's prayer, the apostles' creed, and the ten commandments, and in that, it may be, they have lately accustomed themselves to go to church, to hear divine service, and a preaching now and then, and in that they have divers times received the sacrament; they will not be persuaded but that God is well pleased with them; and a man may as well persuade them that they are not men and women, as that they are not in a good condition.

And for the second sort,³⁵⁸ that ordinarily have more human wisdom and human learning than the former sort, and seem to be more holy and devout than the former sort of sensual ignorant people; yet how many are there of this sort, that never pass further than the outward court of bodily performances: feeding and feasting themselves, as men in a dream; supposing themselves to have all things, and yet indeed have nothing but only a bladder-full, or rather a brain-full, of wind and worldly conceptions?

Are there not some who give themselves to more special searching and seeking out for knowledge in Scripture learnedness and clerk-like skill, in this art, and that language, till they come to be able to repeat all the historical places in the Bible; yea, and all those texts of Scripture that they conceive do make for some private opinion of theirs concerning ceremonies, church-government, or other such circumstantial points of religion, touching which points they are very able to reason and dispute, and to put forth such curious questions as are not easily answered?

356 Namely, sensual livers, who yet perform religious exercises.

357 That is, give up themselves to drunkenness, music, and lasciviousness.

358 Namely, the more seemingly religious.

Are not some of these men³⁵⁹ called sect-makers, and begetters or devisers of new opinions in religion; especially in the matter of worshipping God, as they use to call it, wherein they find a beginning, but hardly an end? For this religious knowledge is so variable, through the multiplicity of curious wits and contentious spirits, that the life of man may seem too short to take a full view of this variety; for though all sects say they will be guided by the word of truth, and all seem to bring Scripture, which, indeed, is but one, as God is but one; yet, by reason of their several constructions and interpretations of Scripture, and conceits of their own human wisdom, they are many.

And are there not others of this sort of men that are ready to embrace any new way of worship, especially if it come under the cloak of Scripture learning, and have a show of truth, founded upon the letter of the bible, and seem to be more zealous and devout than the former way? especially if the teacher of that new way can but frame a sad and demure countenance, and with a grace lift up his head and his eyes towards heaven, with some strong groan, in declaring of his newly conceived opinion; and that he frequently use this phrase of—the glory of God! Oh, then, these men are, by-and-by, of another opinion! supposing to themselves that God has made known some further truth to them; for by reason of the blindness of their understanding, they are not able to reach any supernatural truth, although they do, by literal learning, and clerk-like cunning, dive ever so deep into the Scriptures; and therefore they are ready to entertain any form of religious exercises, as shall be suggested unto them.

And are there not a third sort, much like to these men, that are excessive and mutable in the performance of religious exercises? Surely St. Paul perceived that this was the very God of some men in his time, and therefore he willeth Timothy to instruct others, that "bodily exercise profiteth little," or, as some read it, "nothing at all"; and doth oppose thereunto "godliness," as being another thing than "bodily exercise," and says that it "is profitable," &c.

And do not you think that there are some men at this day that know none other good than bodily exercise, and can hardly distinguish betwixt it and godliness? Now these bodily exercises are mutable and variable, according to their conceits and opinions; for all sects have their several services, as they call them yet all bodily, and for the most part, only bodily; the which they perform to establish a rest to their souls, because they want rest in God. And hence it is that their peace and rest are up and down, according to their working better or worse. So many chapters must be read, and so many sermons must be heard, and so many times they must pray in one day, and so many days in the week, or in the year, they must fast, &c., or else their souls can have no rest. But mistake me not, I pray, in imagining that

359 Namely, of those spoken of in the paragraph immediately preceding, whom he begins to distribute here into three classes or sorts; all belonging to the second sort, viz: the more seemingly religious.

I speak against the doing of these things, for I do them all myself, but against resting in the doing of them, the which I desire not to do.

And thus you see that men's blind understanding doth not only present unto the sensual appetite sensual objects, but also to the rational appetite rational objects; so that man's poor soul is not only kept from rest in God by means of sensuality, but also by means of formality. If Satan cannot keep us from rest in God by feeding our senses with our mother Eve's apple, then he attempts to do it by blinding our eyes, and so hindering us from seeing the paths of the gospel. If he cannot keep us in Egypt by the flesh-pots of sensuality, then will he make us wander in the wilderness of religious and rational formality: so that if he cannot hinder us more grossly, then he attempts to do it more closely.

Nom. But sir, I am persuaded that there be many men that are so religiously exercised, and do perform such duties as you have mentioned, and yet rest not in them but in God.

Evan. Questionless there be some Christians that look upon such exercises as means ordained of God both to beget and increase faith, and all other graces of his Spirit, in the hearts of his people; and therefore, to the intent that their faith, and love, and other graces, may increase, they are careful to wait upon God, in taking all convenient opportunities to exercise themselves therein, and yet have their soul's rest in God, and not in such exercises.

But, alas! I fear the number of such men is very few, in comparison of them that do otherwise. For do not the most part of men that are so religiously exercised, rather conceive, that as they have offended and displeased God by their former disobedience, so they must pacify and appease him by their future obedience? And therefore they are careful to exercise themselves in this way of duty, and that way of worship, and all to that end; yea, and they conceiving that they have corrupted and defiled, and polluted themselves, by their falling into sin, they must also purge, cleanse, and purify themselves, by rising out of sin, and walking in new obedience:³⁶⁰ and so all the good they do, and all the evil they eschew, is to pacify God, and appease their own consciences. And if they seek rest to their souls this way, why, it is the way of the covenant of works, where they shall never be able to reach God; nay, it is the way to come to God out of Christ, where they shall never be able to come near him, he being a "consuming fire."

Nom. But, sir, I pray you, would you not have our senses to be any longer exercised about any of their objects? would you have us no longer to take comfort in the good things of this life?

360 Neglecting to wash, by faith, in the blood of Christ, the "Fountain opened for sin, and for uncleanness," (Zech 13:1).—"The blood of Jesus Christ, his Son, cleanseth us from all sin," (1 John 1:17).—"How much more shall the blood of Christ purge your conscience from dead works?" (Heb 9:14).—"Purifying their hearts by faith," (Acts 15:9).

Evan. I pray you, do not mistake me; I do not speak as though I would have you stoically to refuse the lawful use of any of the Lord's good creatures, which he shall be pleased to afford you, neither do I prohibit you from all comfort therein; but this is it which I do desire, namely, that you would endeavour to attain to such a peace, rest, and content in God, as he is in Christ, that the violent cry of your heart may be restrained, and that your appetites may not be so forcible, nor so unruly as they are naturally, but that the unruliness thereof may be brought into a very comely decorum and order: so that your sensual appetites may, with much more easiness and contentedness, be denied the objects of their desires, yea, and contented [if occasion be] with that which is most repugnant to them, as with hunger, cold, nakedness, yea, and with death itself. For such is the wonderful working of the heart's quiet and rest in God, that although a man's senses be still exercised in and upon their proper objects, yet may it be truly said, that such a man's life is not sensual. For indeed his heart taketh little contentment in any such exercises, it being for the most part exercised in a more transcendent communion with God, as he is in Christ. So that indeed the man that has this peace and rest in God may be truly said to "use this world as though he used it not," in that he receives no cordial contentment from any sensual exercise whatsoever, and that because his heart is withdrawn from them. Which withdrawing of the heart is not unaptly pointed at, in the speech of the spouse, (*Cant 5:2*), "I sleep," says she, "but my heart waketh." Even so may it be said, that such a man is sleeping, looking, hearing, tasting, smelling, eating, drinking, feasting, &c., but his heart is withdrawn from the creature, and rejoicing in God his Saviour, and his soul is magnifying his Lord; so that in the midst of all sensual delights, his heart secretly says, Aye, but my happiness is not here.

Nom. But, sir, I pray you, why do you call rational and religious exercises a wilderness?

Evan. For two reasons; first, Because that as the children of Israel, when they were got out of Egypt, did yet wander many years in the wilderness, before they came into the land of Canaan; even so do many men wander long in rational and religious exercises, after they have left a sensual life, before they come to rest in God, whereof the land of Canaan was a type.³⁶¹ Secondly, Because, as in a wilderness men often lose themselves, and can find no way out, but supposing, after long travel, that they are nearer the place whither they would go, are in truth, farther off; even so fareth it with many, yea, with all such as walk in the way of reason;³⁶² they lose themselves in the woods and bushes of their works and doings; so that the longer they travel, the farther they are from God, and true rest in him.

361 Such a wanderer our author himself had been for a dozen of years. See his Preface, and compare that heavy word, (*Eccl 10:15*), "The labour of the foolish wearith every one of them, because he knoweth not how to go to the city."

362 Namely, of reason, as the judge and rule in religion. The holy Scripture is the rule, and the Spirit of God therein speaking is the judge; it is the business of our reason to discern what they teach, and to submit thereto without reserve.

Nom. But, sir, you know that the Lord hath endowed us with reasonable souls; would you not then have us to make use of our reason?

Evan. I pray you, do not mistake me: I do not contemn nor despise the use of reason; only I would not have you to establish it to³⁶³ the chief good; but I would have you to keep it under; so that, if with Hagar, it attempt to bear rule, and lord it over your faith, then would I have you, in the wisdom of God, like Sarah, to cast it out from having dominion. In few words, I would have you more strong in desire than curious in speculation, and to long more to feel communion with God than to be able to dispute of the genus or species of any question, either human or divine; and press hard to know God by powerful experience. And though your knowledge be great, and your obedience surpassing many, yet would I have you to be truly nullified, annihilated, and made nothing and become fools in all fleshly wisdom; and glory in nothing, but only in the Lord.³⁶⁴ And I would have you, with the eye of faith, sweetly to behold all things extracted out of one thing; and in one to see all.³⁶⁵ In a word, I would have in you a most profound silence, contemning all curious questions and discourses; and to ponder much in your heart, but prate little with your tongue. "Be swift to hear," but "slow to speak," and "slow to wrath," as the apostle James advises you, ([James 1:19](#)); and by this means will your reason be subdued, and become one with your faith, for then is reason one with faith, when it is subjugated unto faith; and then will reason keep its true lists and limits, and you will become ten times more reasonable than you were before. So that I hope you now see that the heart's farewell from the sensual and rational life is not to be considered absolutely, but respectively; it does not consist in a going out of either, but in a right use of both.

Chapter IV, Section 3

God in Christ the only true rest for the soul.

Nom. Then, sir, it seems to me, that God in Christ, apprehended by faith, is the only true rest for man's soul.

Evan. There is the true rest indeed; there is the rest which David invites his soul unto, when he says, "Return unto thy rest, O my soul! for the Lord hath dealt bountifully with thee," ([Psa 116:7](#)).—"For we which have believed," says the author to the Hebrews, "have entered into his rest,"³⁶⁶ ([Heb 4:3](#)).—And "Come unto me," says Christ, "all ye that labour,

363 That is, for, or to be.

364 (2 Cor 12:11), "Though I be nothing."—(1 Cor 3:18), "Let him become a fool, that he may be wise."—(1:31), "He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord."

365 According to that saying of our Lord, (Matt 19:17), "There is none good but one, that is God."

366 "Do enter into rest," or that rest, viz: "his rest." He means, that we even now enter into that rest by faith. Compare verse 10.

and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest,"³⁶⁷ (Matt 11:28). And truly, my neighbours and friends, believe it, we shall never find a heart's happiness, and true soul's rest, until we find it here. For howsoever a man may think, if he had this man's wit, and that man's wealth, this man's honour and that man's pleasure, this wife, or that husband, such children, and such servants, his heart would be satisfied, and his soul would be contented; yet which of us hath not, by our own experience, found the contrary? For, not long after that we have obtained the thing we did so much desire, and wherein we promised ourselves so much happiness, rest, and content, we have found nothing but vanity and emptiness in it. Let a man but deal plainly with his own heart, and he shall find, that, notwithstanding he hath many things, yet there is ever one thing wanting: for indeed man's soul cannot be satisfied with any creature, no, not with a world of creatures. And the reason is, because the desires of man's soul are infinite, according to that infinite goodness which it once lost in losing God. Yea, and man's soul is a spirit; and therefore cannot communicate with any corporal

367 This is one of the most solemn gospel offers to be found in all the New Testament; and our author seems here to point at what I conceive to be the true and genuine sense of it. The words "labour and heavy laden," do not restrict the invitation and offer to such as are sensible of their sins, and longing to be rid of them, though indeed none but such will really accept; but they denote the restlessness of the sinful soul of man; a qualification [if it is so called] to be found in all that are out of Christ, whether they have, or have not, any notable law work on their consciences. I say notable, to distinguish it from that which is common to all men, even to heathens, (Rom 11:15). Our father Adam led his whole family away out of their rest in God; and so left them with a conscience full of guilt, and a heart full of unsatisfied desires. Hence his children soon find themselves like the horse-leech, having "two daughters, crying, Give, give"; namely, a restless conscience, and a restless heart; and to each of these the poor soul must needs say, as Naomi said to Ruth, "My daughter, shall I not seek rest for thee?" so the blinded soul falls a labouring for rest to them. And it labours in the barren region of the fiery law for a rest to the conscience, and in the empty creation, for a rest to the heart: but, after all, the conscience is still heavy laden with guilt, whether it has any lively feeling thereof, or not; and the heart is still under a load of unsatisfied desires; so neither the one nor the other can find rest indeed. This is the natural case of all men. And to souls thus labouring, and laden, Jesus Christ here calls, that they may "come to him, and he will give them rest"; namely, a rest for their consciences, under the covert of his blood; and a rest to their hearts, in the enjoyment of God through him. This is most agreeable to the Scripture phraseology, (Eccl 10:15), "The labour of the foolish wearieth every one of them, because he knows not how to go to the city."—(Hab 2:13), "The people shall labour in the very fire, and the people shall weary themselves for very vanity."—(Isa 55:2), "Wherefore do ye spend your labour for that which satisfieth not?" The prophet laments over a people more insensible than the ox or the ass, saying, "Ah, sinful nation! a people laden with iniquity," (Isa 1:3,4). And the apostle speaks of "silly women laden with sins, led away with divers lusts, ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth," (2 Tim 3:6,7).

thing; so that all creatures, not being that infinite and spiritual fullness which our hearts have lost, and towards the which they do still re-aspire; they cannot give it full contentment.

Nay, let me say more; howsoever a man may, in the midst of his sensual fullness, be convinced in his conscience that he is at enmity with God, and therefore in danger of his wrath and eternal damnation; and be thereupon moved to reform his life and amend his ways, and endeavour to seek peace and rest to his soul; yet this being in the way of works, it is impossible that he should find it; for his conscience will ever be accusing him, that this good duty he ought to have done, and has not done it; and this evil he ought to have forborne, and yet he has done it; and in the performance of this duty he was remiss, and in that duty very defective; and many such ways will his soul be disquieted.

But when a man once comes to believe, that all his sins both past, present, and to come, are freely and fully pardoned,³⁶⁸ and God in Christ graciously reconciled unto him, the Lord doth thereupon so reveal his fatherly face unto him in Christ, and so make known that incredible union betwixt him and the believing soul, that his heart becomes quietly contented in God, who is the proper element of its being; for hereupon there comes into the soul such peace, flowing from the God of peace, that it fills the emptiness of his soul with true fullness, in the fullness of God, so that now the heart ceases to molest the understanding and reason, in seeking either variety of objects, or augmentation of degrees, in any comprehensible thing; and that because the restless longing of the mind which did before cause unquietness and disorder, both in the variety of mental projects, and also in the sensual and beastly exercises of the corporal and external members, is satisfied and truly quieted. For when a man's heart is at peace in God, and is become truly full in that peace and joy passing understanding, then the devil hath not that hope to prevail against his soul as he had before; he knows right well that it is in vain to bait his hook with profits, pleasures, honour, or any other such like seeming good, to catch such a soul that is thus at quiet in God; for he hath all fullness in God, and what can be added to fullness but it runneth over? Indeed, empty hearts, like empty hogsheads, are fit to receive any matter which shall be put into them; but the heart of the believer being filled with joy and peace in believing, doth abhor all such base allurements; for that it hath no room in itself to receive any such seeming contentments. So that, to speak as the truth is, there is nothing that doth truly and unfeignedly root wickedness out of the heart of man, but only the true tranquility of the mind, or the rest of the soul in God. And, to say as the thing is, this is such a peace, and such a rest to the creature in the Creator, that, according to the measure of its establishment by faith, no created comprehensible thing can either add to it, or detract from it; the increase of a kingdom cannot augment it, the greatest losses and crosses in worldly things cannot diminish it; a believer's good works do all flow

368 Namely, in respect of the guilt of eternal wrath.

from it, and ought not to return to it;³⁶⁹ neither ought human frailties to molest it.³⁷⁰ However, this is most certain, neither sin nor Satan, law nor conscience, hell nor grave, can quite extinguish it; for it is the Lord alone that gives and maintains it. "Whom have I in heaven but thee?" says David, "and there is none upon earth that I desire besides thee." (Psa 73:25) It is the pleasant face of God in Christ that puts gladness into his heart, (Psa 4:7). And when that face is hid, then he is troubled, (Psa 30:7). But, to speak more plainly, though the peace and joy of true believers may be extenuated or diminished, yet doth the testimony of their being in nature³⁷¹ remain so strong, that they could skill to say, yea, even when they have felt God to be withdrawing himself from them,— "My God! my God! why hast thou forsaken me?" (Psa 22:1); yea, and in the night of God's absence to remain confident, that though sorrow be over night, yet joy will come in the morning, (Psa 30:5); nay, though the Lord should seem to kill them with unkindness, "yet they will put their trust in him," (Job 13:15); knowing that for all this "their Redeemer liveth," (Job 19:25); so strong is "the joy of their Lord," (Neh 8:10). These are the people that are kept in perfect peace, because their minds are stayed in the Lord, (Isa 26:3).

Wherefore, my dear friends and loving neighbours, I beseech you to take heed of deeming any estate happy, until you come to find this true peace and rest to your souls in God. Oh, beware, lest any of you do content yourselves with a peace rather of speculation than of power! Oh, be not satisfied with such a peace as consists either in the act of oblivion or neglect of examination! nor yet in any brain- sick supposition of knowledge, theological or divine; and so frame rational conclusions, to protract time and still the cries of an accusing conscience. But let your hearts take their last farewell of false felicities, wherewith they have been, all of them, more or less, detained and kept from their true rest. Oh, be strong in resolution! and bid them all farewell; for what have your souls to do any longer among these gross, thick, and bodily things here below, that you should set your love upon them, or see happiness in them? your souls are of a higher and purer nature; and therefore their well-being must be sought in something that is higher and purer than they, even in God himself.

369 Namely, to be any part of the fountain of it, for the time to come: as the rivers return unto the sea, whence they came, making a part of the store for their own fresh supply; nay, it is the Lord alone that gives and maintains it, as our author afterwards expresses it.

370 For these we are never free from in this life. And true repentance, and gospel mourning for sin, are so consistent with it, that they flow from it, according to the measure thereof. (Psa 65:3), "Iniquities prevail against me; as for our transgression, thou shalt purge them away."—(Zech 12:10), "They shall look upon me, whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn."

371 That is, the evidence, that they [viz: the peace and joy of believers] are still in being [in rerum natura] and not quite extinct.

True it is, that we are all of us, indeed, too unclean to touch God in immediate unity; but yet there is a pure counterpart of our natures,³⁷² and that pure humanity is immediately knit to the purest Deity; and by that immediate union you may come to a mediate union; for the Deity and that humanity being united, make one Saviour, head, and husband of souls. And so you being married to him, that is, God in him, you come also to be one with God: he one by a personal union, and you one by a mystical. Clear up then your eye, and fix it on him, as on the fairest of men, the perfection of a spiritual beauty, the treasure heavenly joy, the true object of most fervent love. Let your spirits look, and long, and seek after this Lord: let your souls cleave to him, let them hang about him, and never leave him, till he be brought into the chambers of your souls; yea, tell him resolutely, you will not leave him, till you hear his voice in your souls, saying, "My well-beloved is mine, and I am his"; yea, and tell him, you are "sick of love." Let your souls go, as it were, out of your bodies and out of the world, by heavenly contemplations; and treading upon the earth with the bottom of your feet, stretch your souls up, to look over the world, into that upper world, where her treasure is,³⁷³ and where her beloved dwelleth.

And when any of your souls shall thus forget her own people, her father's house, Christ her King shall so desire her beauty, (Psa 45:10,11), and be so much in love with her, that, like a loadstone, this love of his shall draw the soul in pure desire to him again; and then, "as the hart panteth after the rivers of waters, so will your soul pant after God," (Psa 42:1).

And then, according to the measure of your faith, your souls shall come to have a real rest in God, and be filled with joy unspeakable and glorious.

Wherefore, I beseech you, set your mouths to this fountain Christ, and so shall your souls be filled with the water of life, with the oil of gladness, and with the new wine of the kingdom of God; from him you shall have weighty joys, sweet embracements, and ravishing consolations. And how can it be otherwise, when your souls shall really communicate with God, and by faith have a true taste, and by the spirit have a sure earnest of all heavenly preferments; having, as it were, one foot in heaven, whilst you live upon earth? Oh then, what an eucharistical love³⁷⁴ will arise from your thankful hearts, extending itself first towards God, and then towards man for God's sake! and then, according to the measure of your faith, will be your willing obedience to God, and also to man for God's sake; for obedience being the kindly fruit of love, a loving soul bringeth forth this fruit as kindly as a good tree bringeth forth her fruit; for the soul, having tasted Christ in a heavenly communion, so loves him, that to please him is a pleasure and delight to herself: and the more Christ Jesus comes

372 Namely, the pure and spotless human nature of Christ.

373 Your soul's.

374 A love of thanksgiving, bearing thankfulness in its nature.

into the soul by his Spirit, the more spiritual he makes her; and turns her will into his will, making her of one heart, mind, and will, with him.

So that, for a conclusion, this I say, that if the everlasting love of God in Jesus Christ be truly made known to your souls, according to the measure thereof, you shall have no need to frame and force yourselves to love and do good works, for your souls will ever stand bound³⁷⁵ to love God, and to keep his commandments, and it will be your meat and drink to do his will. And truly this love of God will cut down self-love and love of the world, for the sweetness of Christ's Spirit will turn the sweetness of the flesh into bitterness, and the sweetness of the world into contempt. And if you can behold Christ with open face, you shall see and feel things unutterable, and be changed from beauty to beauty, from glory to glory, by the Spirit of this Lord, and so be happy in this life, in your union with happiness, and happy hereafter in the full fruition of happiness:³⁷⁶ whither the Lord Jesus Christ bring us all in his due time. Amen.

375 Or constrained by the force of that love.

376 That is, of God himself in Christ.

Conclusion.

"And now, brethren, I commend you to God and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified," ([Acts 20:32](#)).

Neo. Well, sir, at this time I will say no more, but that it was a happy hour wherein I came to you, and a happy conference that we have had together. Surely, sir, I never knew Christ before this day. Oh, what cause have I to thank the Lord for my coming hither, and my two friends as a means of it! and, sir, for the pains that you have taken with me, I pray the Lord to requite you; and so beseeching you to pray the Lord to increase my faith, and to help my unbelief, I humbly take my leave of you, praying, "the God of love and peace to be with you."

Nom. And truly, sir, I do believe that I have cause to speak as much in that case as he has; for though I have outstript him in knowledge, and it may be also in strict walking, yet do I now see, that my actions were neither from a right principle, nor to a right end; and, therefore, have I been in no better a condition than he. and truly, sir, I must needs confess, I never heard so much of Christ and the covenant of grace, as I have done this day.³⁷⁷ The Lord make it profitable to me; and I beseech you, sir, pray for me.

Ant. And truly, sir, I am now fully convinced that I have gone out of the right way, in that I have not had regard to the law, and the works thereof, as I should; but, God willing, I shall hereafter [if the Lord prolong my days] be more careful how I lead my life, seeing the ten commandments are the law of Christ; and I beseech you, sir, remember me in your prayers. And so, with many thanks to you for your pains, I take my leave of you, beseeching the "grace of our Lord Jesus Christ to be with your spirit." Amen.

Evan. "Now, the very God of peace that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, make you perfect in every good work, to do his will, working in you that which is well-pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen." ([Heb 13:20,21](#))—([John 8:36](#)), "If the Son make you free, you shall be free indeed."—([Gal 5:1,13](#)), "Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free. Only use not your liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another."—([6:16](#)), "And as many as walk according to this rule, peace be upon them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of God."—([Matt 11:25](#)), "I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them to babes."—([1 Cor](#)

³⁷⁷ This is here fitly put into the mouth of Nomista, vailing of legal principles and practices among professors being much owing to legal preaching; the success whereof is not to be wondered at, since it is rowing with the stream of nature.

15:10), "I laboured more abundantly than they all, yet not I, but the grace of God that was with me."—(Psa 36:11), "Let not the foot of pride come against me."

THE MARROW OF MODERN DIVINITY.

PART SECOND.

"We know that the law is good, if a man use it lawfully," ([1 Tim 1:8](#)).

TO THE RIGHT HON.

JOHN WARNER,

LORD MAYOR OF THE MOST RENOWNED CITY OF LONDON.

E. F. wisheth a most plentiful increase of spiritual wisdom, and all necessary graces for the discharge of his duty, to the glory of God, and the good of his people.

RIGHT HONOURABLE,

The rod of God's judgments hath been now long upon us, which we by our manifold sins have procured, according as it is said concerning Jerusalem, (Jer 4:18), "Thy way and thy doings have procured these things unto thee." And have we any just ground to hope, that till the cause be taken away, the effect will cease? Can we expect that the Lord will turn away his judgments, till we turn away from our sins? And can we turn away from our sins before we know them? And can we come to know our sins any otherwise than by the law? Doth not one apostle say, that "sin is the transgression of the law"? (1 John 3:4). And doth not another apostle therefore say, that "by the law is the knowledge of sin"? (Rom 3:20). Surely, then, a treatise, wherein is shown what is required, and what is forbidden, in every commandment of the law, and so consequently what is sin, must needs be for this cause, and at this time, very seasonable. But yet, alas! that although there be ever so many treatises written, or ever so many sermons preached upon this subject, yet do they either remain willfully ignorant of their sins, or else, though they know them, they will not forego them, but rather choose willfully to wallow on in the mire of iniquity, so sweet and dear are their sins unto them. But what, then, must they be suffered to go on without restraint? No; God forbid. Such persons as the law and love of God will not constrain, such must the execution of justice restrain; upon such must the penalty of the law of the land, being grounded upon God's laws, be by the civil magistrate inflicted. And for this cause it is that the king is required, "When he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, to write him a copy of the law of God in a book," (Deut 17:18). And for this cause it is that the civil magistrate is called "the keeper of both tables"; for says Luther, on Galatians, p. 151, "God hath ordained magistrates, and other superiors, and appointed laws, bounds, and all civil ordinances, that if they can do no more, yet at least they may bind the devil's hands, that he rage not in his bond slaves after his own lusts." And hence it is that the apostle, speaking of the civil magistrate, says, "If thou do that which is evil, be afraid, for he beareth not the sword in vain," (Rom 13:4). Wherefore, Right Honourable, God having called you to wield the sword of authority in the most famous city of this kingdom, I, a

poor inhabitant thereof, the author of the ensuing Dialogue, have, through the advice and persuasion of some godly ministers, and through the consideration of the suitableness of the subject with our place, been moved to take the boldness to offer this work to your worthy name and patronage; not that I do conceive your Honour is ignorant of your duty, nor yet that I see you to neglect your duty, for your Christian integrity in your place, and your zealous forwardness to reform things amiss, by punishing of evil doers, doth to me witness the contrary; but rather to encourage your Honour to continue your godly course in the ways of well-doing, and to advance forward in paths of piety, being more swift in your motion now towards the end of your race—your year I mean, that so your Master, Christ, may have cause to say concerning you, as he once did concerning the church of Thyatira, "I know thy works, and charity, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last to be more than the first," (Rev 2:19). Yea, and that it also may be said concerning you, "Well done, thou good and faithful servant, thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things, enter thou into the joy of thy Lord," ([Matt 25:21](#)).

And so most humbly begging of your Honour that these my poor labours may be accepted, and that under your Honour's name, they may go forth into the world, and praying the Lord of power, and the God of all grace, to multiply his Spirit upon your Honour, with all the blessed fruits of the same, I take my leave, and rest your Honour's most humble servant to be commanded,

Edward Fisher

THE AUTHOR TO THE WELL-AFFECTED READER.

GOOD READER:

I do confess there are so many godly and learned expositions upon the ten commandments already extant, that it may seem needless to add any more unto that number. Nevertheless, I pray thee, do not think it impossible but that God may, by such a weak instrument as I myself am, show his power in doing something more, touching this subject, than hath yet been done. I do confess, I have had good helps from the labours of others, and have made much use thereof, especially for matter, yet have I not confined my discourse within the compass of what I have found in other books, but have, from the warrant of the word of God, taken the boldness to enlarge it, both as touching the matter and manner, and especially touching the application, wherein I have endeavoured to give both believers and unbelievers their distinct proportion, by distinguishing betwixt the ten commandments, as they are the law of works, having the promise of eternal life, and the threatening of eternal death annexed to them, and so applying them to the unbeliever; and as they are the law of Christ, having the promise of eternal life, and the threatening of eternal death separated from them, and so applying them to the believer. I have not denied, but acknowledged, yea, and proved, that the law of the ten commandments, truly expounded, is to be a perpetual rule of life to all mankind, yea, to believers themselves; for though the Spirit of Jesus Christ do, according to his promise, write this law in their hearts, as their inward rule, yet, in regard that whilst they live in this world, it is done but in part, they have need of the ten commandments to be unto them as an outward rule: for though the Spirit have begotten in them a love to this law, and wrought in them a willing disposition to yield obedience thereunto, yet have they need of the law to be unto them as a glass, wherein they may see what the will of God is, and as a rule to direct them how to actuate their love and willingness, so that, as a precious godly minister of Jesus Christ truly says, the Spirit within, and the law without, "is a lamp unto their feet, and a light unto their path," ([Psa 119:105](#)). But yet I do conceive, that expositors on the commandments should not only endeavour to drive on their designs to that end, and there terminate their endeavours, as if there were no further use to be made of the law, neither in believers nor in unbelievers; but they should aim at a further end—an end beyond this, especially in unbelievers, and that is to discover to them how far short they come of doing that which the law requireth, that so they may not take up their rest in themselves, but hasten out of themselves to Jesus Christ; and that believers, by beholding their own imperfections, should take occasion to humble

themselves, and cleave the more close unto him by faith.

For when, by way of exposition, it is only declared what is required, and what is forbidden in every commandment, with exhortations, motives, and means to do thereafter, it has been observed that divers both profane and mere civil honest people, upon the hearing or reading of the same, have concluded with themselves, that they must either alter their course of life, and strive and endeavour to do more than they have done, and better than they have done, or else they shall never be saved; and hereupon they have taken up a form of godliness, in hearing, reading, and praying, and the like, and so have become formal professors, and therein have rested, coming far short of Jesus Christ, yea, and believers themselves have sometimes taken occasion thereby, to conceive that they must do something towards their own justification and salvation.

Wherefore I, yet not I by any power of my own, but by the grace of God that is with me, have endeavoured not only to show what is required, and what is forbidden in every commandment, but also that it is impossible for any man, whether he be an unbeliever or a believer, to keep any one commandment perfectly, yea, or to do any one action or duty perfectly, that so by the working of God's Spirit in the reading of the same, men may be moved; not only to turn from being profane, or mere civil honest men, to be formal professors, but that they may be driven out of all their own works and performances unto Jesus Christ, and so become Christians indeed, and that those who are Christians indeed, may thereby

do I now resolve, by the help of God, very speedily to fall about that work; and I hope I shall then make it appear unto you that the ten commandments are but an epitome or an abridgment of the law of God, and that the full exposition thereof is to be found in the books of the prophets and apostles, called the Old and New Testament.

Neo. Indeed, sir, I have told him that we must not stick upon the bare words of any of the ten commandments, nor rest satisfied with the bare literal sense, but labour to find out the full exposition and true spiritual meaning of every one of them, according to other places of Scripture.

Evan. If you told him so, you told him that which is most true; for he that would truly understand and expound the commandments must do it according to these six rules.

First, He must consider that every commandment has both a negative and affirmative part contained in it; that is to say, where any evil is forbidden, the contrary good is commanded; and where any good is commanded, the contrary evil is forbidden; for, says Ursinus' Catechism, page 329, "The lawgiver does in

an affirmative commandment comprehend the negative; and contrariwise, in a negative he comprehends the affirmative."

Secondly, He must consider that under one good action commanded, or one evil action forbidden, all of the same kind or nature are comprehended, yea, all occasions and means leading thereunto; according to the saying of judicious Virel, "The Lord minding to forbid divers evils of the same kind, he comprehendeth them under the name of the greatest."

Thirdly, He must consider that the law of God is spiritual, reaching to the very heart or soul, and all the powers thereof, for it charges the understanding to know the will of God; it charges the memory to retain, and the will to choose the better, and to leave the worse; it charges the affections to love the things that are to be loved, and to hate the things that are to be hated, and so binds all the powers of the soul to obedience, as well as the words, thoughts, and gestures.

Fourthly, He must consider, that the law of God must not only be the rule of our obedience, but it must also be the reason of it; we must not only do that which is there commanded, and avoid that which is there forbidden, but we must also do the good, because the Lord requires it, and avoid the evil, because the Lord forbids it; yea, and we must do all that is delivered and prescribed in the law, for the love we bear to God, the love of God must be the fountain, the impulsive, and efficient cause of all our obedience to the law.

Fifthly, He must consider, that as our obedience to the law must arise from a right fountain, so must it be directed to a right end, and that is, that God alone may be glorified by us; for otherwise it is not the worship of God, but hypocrisy, says Ursinus' Catechism; so that according to the saying of another godly writer, the final cause or end of all our obedience must be, God's glory, (1 Cor 10:13); or, which is all one, that we may please him, for in seeking to please God, we glorify him, and these two things are always co-incident.

Sixthly, He must consider, that the Lord does not only take notice of what we do in obedience to this law, but also after what manner we do it; and therefore we must be careful to do all our actions after a right manner, viz: humbly, reverently, willingly, and zealously.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, if you can spare so much time, let us have some brief exposition of some, if not all the ten commandments before we go hence, according to these rules.

Evan. What say you, neighbour Nomologista, do you desire the same?

Nom. Yea, sir, with all my heart, if you please.

Evan. Well, then, although my occasions at this time might justly plead excuse for me; yet, seeing that you do both of you desire it, I will for the present dispense

with all my other business, and endeavour to accomplish your desires, according as the Lord shall be pleased to enable me: and therefore, I pray you understand and consider, That in the first commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words: "Thou shalt have none other gods before my face." And an affirmative part included in these words: "But thou shalt have me only for thy God"; for if we must have none other for our God, it implies strongly, that we must have the Lord for our God.

Neo. I pray you, sir, begin with the affirmative part, and first tell us what the Lord requireth of us in this commandment.

COMMANDMENT I

Evan. In this first commandment, "The Lord requireth the duty of our hearts or souls," ([Prov 23:26](#)); that is to say, of our understandings, wills, and affections, and the effects of them.

Neo. And what is the duty of our understandings?

Evan. The duty of our understandings is to know God, ([2 Chron 28:9](#)). Now the end of knowledge is but the fullness of persuasion, even a settled belief, which is called faith, so that the duty of our understandings is, so to know God, as to believe him to be according as he has revealed himself to us in his word and works, ([Heb 11:6](#)).

Neo. And how has the Lord revealed himself to us in his word?

Evan. Why, he has revealed himself to be "most wise," ([Rom 16:27](#)); "most mighty," ([Deut 7:21](#)); "most true," ([Deut 32:4](#)); "most just," ([Neh 9:33](#)); and "most merciful," ([Psa 145:8](#)).

Neo. And how has he revealed himself to us in his works?

Evan. He has revealed himself in his works to be "the Creator of all things," ([Exo 20:11](#)); and "the Preserver of all things," ([Psa 26:6](#)); and "The Governor of all things," ([Psa 135:6](#)); and "the Giver of every good gift," ([James 1:17](#)).

Neo. And how must our knowledge of God, and our belief in him, be expressed by their effects?

Evan. We must express, that we know and believe God to be according as he has revealed himself in his word and works, by our remembering and acknowledging him whensoever there is occasion for us so to do.

As, for example; when we read or hear those judgments that the Lord in his word has threatened to bring upon us for our sins, ([Deut 28:16](#)), we are to express that we do remember and acknowledge him to be most mighty, true, and just, by our fearing and trembling thereat, ([Psa 119:120](#), [Hab 3:16](#)). And when we read or hear of blessings, that the Lord in his word has promised to bestow upon us for our obedience, ([Deut 28:2](#)), then we are to express, that we do remember and acknowledge him to be more true, and merciful, by our obedience unto him, and by our trusting in him, and relying upon him, ([Gen 32:9](#)). And when we behold the excellent frame of heaven and earth, and the creatures contained therein, then we are to express, that we do remember and acknowledge the Lord to be the Creator and Maker of them all, by our praising and magnifying his name, ([Psa 106:5](#), [139:14](#)). And when the Lord does actually inflict any judgment upon us, then we are to express that we do remember and acknowledge him to be the Governor of all things, and most mighty, wise, and just, by humbling ourselves under his mighty hand, ([1 Peter 5:6](#)). And by judging ourselves worthy to be

destroyed, for our iniquities, ([Eze 36:31](#)). And by bearing the punishment thereof, ([Lev 36:41](#)), with willing, patient, contented submission to his will and pleasure, ([Psa 39:9](#)). And when the Lord does actually bestow any blessing upon us, then we are to express, that we do remember, and acknowledge him to be the most merciful Giver of every good gift, by our humble acknowledging that we are unworthy of the least of his mercies, ([Gen 32:10](#)); and "in giving him thanks for all things," ([1 Thess 5:18](#)). And thus have I showed unto you what is the duty of our understandings.

Neo. I pray you, sir, let us, in the next place, hear what is the duty of our wills.

Evan. The duty of our wills is to choose the Lord alone for our portion, ([Psa 16:5](#), [119:57](#)).

Neo. And how must we express that we have chosen the Lord for our portion?

Evan. "By our loving him with all our hearts, with all our souls, and with all our might," ([Deut 5:6](#)).

Neo. And how must we express that we do thus love the Lord?

Evan. We must express that we do thus love the Lord by the acting of our other affections, as by our desire of most near communion with him, ([Phil 1:23](#)), and by our delighting most in him, ([Psa 37:4](#)); and by our rejoicing most in him, ([Phil 4:4](#)); and by our fearing most to offend him, ([Matt 10:28](#)); and by our sorrowing most for offending him, ([Luke 22:62](#)); and by being most zealous against sin, and for the glory of God, ([Rev 3:19](#)). And thus have I showed you what the Lord requires in the affirmative part of this commandment.

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the negative part, and show us what the Lord forbids in this commandment.

Evan. In this first commandment is forbidden, "ignorance of God," ([Jer 4:22](#)); so also is unbelief, or doubting of the truth of God's word, ([Isa 7:9](#)). And so also is the want of fearing the threatenings of God, ([Deut 28:58](#)), and the fearing the threatenings of men, either more, or as much as the threatenings of God, ([Isa 51:12,13](#)); and so also is the want of trusting unto or relying upon the promises of God, ([Luke 12:29](#)), and the trusting or relying upon ourselves, men's promises, or any other thing, either more, or as much as we do upon God, ([Jer 17:5](#), [Luke 12:20](#)). And so also is the want of acknowledging the hand of God, in the time of affliction, ([Isa 26:11](#)); and acknowledging that the rod can smite without the hand of God, ([Job 19:11](#)); and so also is the want of humbling ourselves before the Lord, ([Dan 5:22](#)); and pride of heart, ([Prov 16:5](#)). And so also is impatience and discontentedness under the chastising hand of God, ([Exo 17:2](#)); and not returning unto him that smiteth us, ([Isa 9:13](#)); and so also is our forgetfulness of God in not acknowledging his merciful and bountiful hand in reaching forth all good things

unto us in the time of prosperity, ([Psa 78:11](#), [Deut 32:18](#)); and so also is our sacrificing to our own nets, ([Hab 1:16](#)), in ascribing the coming in of our riches to our own care, pains, and diligence in our callings, ([Deut 8:17](#)); and so also is unthankfulness to the Lord for his mercies, ([Rom 1:21](#)); and so also is our want of love to God, ([1 Cor 16:22](#)); and our loving any creature either more than God, or equal with God, ([Matt 10:37](#)); and so also is our want of desiring his presence, ([Job 21:14](#)); and our desiring the presence of any creature either more or so much as God, ([Prov 6:25](#)); and so also is our want of rejoicing in God, ([Deut 28:47](#)); and our rejoicing either more, or as much in anything as in God, ([Luke 10:20](#)); and so also is our want of fearing to offend God, ([Jer 5:22](#)); and our fearing to offend any mortal man, either more or as much as to offend God, ([Prov 29:25](#)); and so also is our want of sorrow and grief for offending God, ([1 Cor 5:2](#)); and our sorrowing more, or as much, for any worldly loss or cross, as for our sinning against God, ([1 Thess 4:15](#)); and so also is our want of zeal, or our lukewarmness in the cause of God and his truth, ([Rev 3:16](#)); and our corrupt, blind, and indiscreet zeal, ([Luke 9:55](#)). And thus have I showed unto you what the Lord requires, and what he forbids in this commandment. And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, tell me whether you think you keep it perfectly or no. Nom. Sir, before I tell you that, I pray you tell me how you prove that the Lord in this commandment requires all these duties, and forbids all these sins. Evan. First, I know that the Lord in this commandment requires all these duties, because no man can truly have the Lord for his God, except he have chosen him for his portion; and no man can truly choose the Lord for his portion, before he truly know him; and he that does truly know God, does truly believe both his threatenings and his promises; and he that does truly believe the Lord's threatenings, must needs fear and tremble at them; and he that does believe the Lord's promises, must needs truly love him, for faith always produces and brings forth love; and whosoever does truly love God, must needs desire near communion with him; yea, and rejoice in communion with him; yea, and fear to offend him; yea, and sorrow for offending him; yea, and be zealous for his glory. Secondly, I know that all these sins are forbidden in this commandment, because that whatsoever the mind, will, and affections of a man are set upon, or carried after, either more or as much as after God, that is another god unto him; and therefore, if a man stand in fear of any creature, or fear the loss of any creature, either more than God, or equal with God, he makes that creature his god: and if he trust unto, and put confidence in any creature, either more than God, or equal with God, that creature is his god; and hence it is that the covetous man is called an idolater, ([Eph 5:5](#)); for that he makes his god his hope, and says to the fine

gold, "Thou art my confidence," ([Job 31:24](#)). And if any man be proud of any good thing he has, and do not acknowledge God to be the free giver and bestower of the same, or if he be impatient and discontented under the Lord's correcting hand, he makes himself a god; and if a man so love any creature as that he desires it being absent, or delights in it being present, either more than God, or equal with God, that creature is another god unto him. And hence it is, that voluptuous men are said to make their belly their god, ([Phil 3:19](#)). In a word, whatsoever the mind of man is carried after, or his heart and affections set upon, either more, or as much as upon God, that he makes his god. And therefore we may undoubtedly conclude, that all the sins before mentioned, are forbidden in this commandment.

Nom. Then believe me, sir, I must confess that I come far short of keeping this commandment perfectly.

Evan. Yea, and so we do all of us, I am confident; for has not every one of us sometimes questioned in our hearts, whether there be a God or no? and as touching the knowledge of God, may we not all three of us truly say with the apostle, ([1 Cor 13:9](#)), "We know in part"? And which of us has so feared and trembled at the threatenings of God, and at the shaking of his rod, as we ought? Nay, have we not feared the frowns, threats, and power of some mortal man more than the frowns, threats, and power of God? It is well if it have not appeared by our choosing to obey man rather than God: and which of us has so trusted unto, and relied upon the promises of God in time of need, as he ought? nay, have we not rather trusted unto and relied upon men and means, than upon God? Has it not been manifested by our fearing of poverty, and want of outward things, when friends, trading, and means begin to fail us; though God has said, "I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee"? ([Heb 13:5](#)). And which of us has so humbled ourselves under the chastening and correcting hand of God as we ought: nay, have we not rather expressed abundance of pride, by our impatience and discontentedness, and want of submitting to the will of God; and by our quarrelling and contending with his rod? And which of us has so acknowledged God in the time of prosperity, and been so thankful unto him for his blessings, as we ought? Nay, have we not rather at such times forgotten God, and sacrificed to our own nets, saying in our hearts, if not also with our mouths, "I may thank mine own diligence, care, and pains-taking, or else it had not been with me as it is"? And which of us hath so manifested our love to God, by our desire of near communion with him in his ordinances, and by our desire to be dissolved and to be with him, as we ought? Nay, have we not rather expressed our great want of love to him, by our backwardness to prayer, reading, and hearing his word, and

receiving the sacrament, and by our little delight therein, and by our unwillingness to die? Nay, have we not manifested our greater love to the world, by our greater desires after the profits, pleasures, and honours of the world, and by our greater delight therein than in God? Or which of us have so manifested our love to God, by our sorrow and grief for offending him, as we ought? Nay, have we not rather manifested our greater love to the world, by our sorrowing and grieving more for some worldly loss or cross, than for offending God by our sins? Or which of us have so manifested our love to God, by being so zealous for his glory as we ought? Nay, have we not rather expressed greater love to ourselves, in being more hot and fiery in our own cause than in God's cause? And thus have I endeavoured to satisfy your desires concerning the first commandment.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, proceed to do the like concerning the second commandment, and first tell us how the first and second commandments differ the one from the other.

COMMANDMENT II.

Evan. Why, as the first commandment teaches us to have the true God for our God, and none other; so the second commandment requireth that we worship this true God alone, with true worship: and in this commandment likewise, there is a negative part expressed in these words, "Thou shalt not make to thyself any graven image," &c. And an affirmative part included in these words, "But thou shalt worship me only and purely, according to my will, revealed in my word." Neo. I pray you then, sir, begin with the affirmative part, and tell us what be the means of God's worship, prescribed in his word.

Evan. If we look into the word of God, we shall find that the ordinary means and parts of God's worship, are invocations upon the name of God, ministry and hearing of the word of God, administration and receiving the sacraments, with all helps and furtherances to the right performance of the same.

But to declare this more particularly, First of all, prayer both public and private is required in God's word, as you may see, (1 Tim 2:8, Acts 2:21,22, Dan 6:10).

Secondly, Reading the word, or hearing it read, both publicly and privately, is required in God's word, as you may see, (Rev 1:3, Deut 5:6). Thirdly, Preaching, and hearing of the word preached, is required in the word of God, as you may see, (2 Kings 4:2, 1 Thess 2:13). Fourthly, The administration and receiving the sacrament is required in the word of God, as you may see, (Matt 3:6, 26:26, 1 Cor 10:16). Fifthly, Praising of God, in singing of psalms, both publicly and privately, is required in the word of God, as you may see, (Col 3:16, James 5:13). Sixthly, Meditation on the word of God is required in the word of God, as you may see, (Psa 1:2, Acts 17:11). Seventhly, Conference about the word of God is required in the word of God, as you may see, (Mal 3:16). And, Lastly, For the better fitting and stirring us up to the right performance of these duties, religious fasting, both in public and in private, is required in the word of God, as you may see, (Joel 1:14, 2:15). And so also is a religious vow or free promise made to God, to perform some outward work, or bodily exercise for some end, as you may see, (Eccl 5:3,4). And thus have I shown you what be the means of God's worship which he hast prescribed in his word.

Neo. I pray you, sir, then proceed to the negative part, and tell us what the Lord forbiddeth in this commandment.

Evan. Well then, I pray you understand, that in this commandment is forbidden, neglecting of prayer, as you may see, (Psa 14:4). And so also is absenting ourselves from the hearing of the word preached, or any other ordinance of God, when the Lord calls us thereunto, as you may see, (Luke 14:18-20). And so also is our rejecting the sacrament of baptism, as you may see, (Luke 7:30). And so

also is our slighting the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, as you may see, (2 Chron 30:10). And so also is the slighting and omitting any of the other forenamed duties, as you may see, (Psa 10:4, John 3:31, Isa 22:12-14). And so also is praying to saints and angels, as you may see, (Isa 63:16, Rev 19:10). And so also is the making of images for religious uses, as you may see, (Lev 19:4). And so also is the representing God by an image, as you may see, (Exo 32:8,9). And so also are all carnal imaginations of God in his worship, as you may see, (Acts 17:29). And so also is all will worship, or the worshipping of God according to our own fancy, as you may see, (1 Sam 9:10,13, Col 2:23). And thus have I shown unto you both what the Lord requireth, and what he forbiddeth in this commandment, and now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, tell me whether you keep it perfectly or no.

Nom. Yea, sir, I am persuaded that I go very near it. But, I pray you, sir, tell me how you prove that all these duties are required, and all these sins forbidden in this commandment?

Evan. For the proof of this, I pray you consider, that the worshipping of false gods is flatly forbidden in the negative part of this commandment, in these words, "Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve, nor worship them," (Exo 20:5). And the worshipping of the true God is implied and expressed in these words, (Matt 4:10), "Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve."

Nom. But sir, how do you prove that these duties which you have named are parts of God's worship?

Evan. For answer hereunto, I pray you consider, that to worship God, is to tender up that homage and respect that is due from a creature to a Creator; now, in prayer we are said to tender up this homage unto him, and to manifest our profession of dependence upon him for all the good we have, and acknowledge him to be the Author of all good; and indeed prayer is such a great part of God's worship, that sometimes, in Scripture, it is put for the whole worship of God. "He that calls upon the name of the Lord shall be saved," (Rom 10:13); that is, he that worships God aright: (Jer 10:25), "pour out thy wrath upon the heathen that know thee not, and on the families that call not upon thy name," that do not pray, that do not worship God.

And that hearing the word is a part of God's worship is manifest; because that in hearing we do manifest our dependence upon God, for knowing his mind, and the way to eternal life, every time we come to hear the word of God, if we know what we do, we do thus much, we profess that we depend upon the Lord God for the knowing of his mind, and the way and rule to eternal life; and besides, herein

we also come to wait upon God in the way of ordinance, to have that good conveyed unto us by way of an ordinance, beyond what the thing itself is able to do, and therefore this is worship. And that the receiving the sacrament is a part of God's worship, is manifest, in that when we come to receive these holy signs and seals, we come to present ourselves before God, and come to God for a blessing, in communicating unto us some higher good than possibly those creatures that we have to deal with, are able of themselves to convey to us; we come to God to have communion with him, and that we might have the blessing of the covenant of grace conveyed unto us through these things: and therefore when we come to be exercised in them, we come to worship God. The like we might say of the rest of the duties before mentioned, but I hope this may suffice to satisfy you that they are parts of God's worship.

Nom. But, sir, you know that in this commandment there is nothing expressly forbidden but the making and worshipping of images, and therefore I question whether all those other sins that you have named be likewise forbidden.

Evan. But thou must know, that when the Lord condemneth the chief, or greatest and most evident kind of false worship, namely, the worship of God at, or by images, it is manifest that he forbids also the other kinds of false worship, seeing this is the head and fountain of all the rest; wherefore, whatsoever worships are instituted by men or do any way hinder God's true worship, they are contrary to this commandment.

Nom. Well, sir, though that these things be so, yet for all that, I am persuaded I go very near the keeping of this commandment; for I do constantly perform the most of these duties, and am not guilty of doing the contrary.

Evan. But thou must know, that for the worshipping of God aright, it is not only required that we do the good which he commands, and avoid the evil which he forbids, but also, that we do it in obedience to God, to show that we acknowledge him alone to be the true God, who has willed this worship to be thus done unto him; so that, as I told you before, the word of God must not only be the rule of our actions, but also the reason of them: we must do all things which are delivered and prescribed in the ten commandments, even for the love we bear to God, and for the desire we have to worship him: for except we so do them, we do them not according to the sentence and prescript of the law, neither do we please God therein. Wherefore though you have prayed and heard the word of God, and received the sacrament, and done all the rest of the forenamed duties, yea, and though you have not done the contrary, yet if all this has been either because the laws of the kingdom require it, or in mere obedience to any superior, or to gain the praise and esteem of men, or if you have any way made yourself your highest

end, you have not obeyed nor worshipped God therein; for, says a judicious writer, "If any man shall observe these things in mere obedience to the king's laws, or thereby to please holy men, and not through an immediate reverence of that heavenly Majesty who has commanded them, that man's obedience is non-obedience; his keeping these laws is no keeping them"; because the main thing here intended is neglected, which is the setting up God in his heart; and that which is most of all abhorred is practised, viz: the "fear of God taught by the precepts of men," ([Isa 29:13](#)). And to this purpose that worthy man of God has this saying, "Take heed, says he, that the praises of men be not the highest end that thou aimest at; for if it be, thou worshippest men, thou dost make the praise of men to be thy god; for whatsoever thou dost lift up in the highest place, that is thy god, whatsoever it be; wherefore, if thou liftest up the praise of men, and makest that thy end, thou makest that thy god, and so thou art a worshipper of men, but not a worshipper of God." [Mayer's Catechism.]

Again, says he, "Take heed of making self thy end. That is, take heed of aiming at thine own peace, and satisfying thine own conscience in the performance of duties." It is true, says he, when we perform duties of God's worship, we may be encouraged thereunto by the expectations of good to ourselves, yet we must look higher, we must look at the honour and praise of God; it is not enough to do it merely to satisfy conscience; thy main end must be, that thou mayest, by the performance of the duty, be fitted to honour the name of God, otherwise we do them not for God but for ourselves, which the Lord condemns, ([Zech 7:5,6](#)). And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, let me ask you once again, whether you think you keep this commandment perfectly or no.

Nom. No, believe me, sir, I do now begin to fear I do not.

Evan. If you make any question of it, I would entreat you to consider with yourself, whether you have not gone to the church on the Lord's day to hear the word of God, and to receive the sacrament, and do other duties, because the laws of the kingdom require it, or because your parents or masters have required it, or because it is a custom to do so, or, because you conceive it to be a credit for you to do so. And I pray you also to consider, whether you have not abstained from worshipping of images, and other such idolatrous and superstitious actions which the Papists use, merely because the laws of the land wherein you live do condemn such things. And I pray you also consider whether you have not been sometimes zealous in prayer in the presence and company of others, to gain their praise and approbation; have you not desired that they should think you to be a man of good gifts and parts? And have you not in that regard endeavoured to enlarge yourself? And have you not sometimes performed duties merely because

otherwise conscience would not let you be quiet? And have you not sometimes fasted and prayed, and humbled yourself, merely or chiefly in hopes that the Lord would, for your so doing, prevent or remove some judgment from you, or grant you some good thing which you desire? Now, I beseech you, answer me truly and plainly, whether you do not think you have done so.

Nom. Yea, believe me, sir, I think I have.

Evan. Then have you in all these things honoured and worshipped your parents, your masters, your magistrates, your neighbours, your friends, and yourself, as so many false gods, instead of the true God; and therein have been guilty of a breach of the second commandment.

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to speak of the third commandment, as you have done of the first and second; and first, tell us how the second and third commandments differ.

The Marrow of Modern Divinity - Part Second

COMMANDMENT III.

Evan. Why, as the Lord in the second commandment doth require that we worship him alone by true means, so does he in the third commandment require that we use the means of his worship after a right manner, that so they may not be used in vain, ([Matt 15:9](#)). And in this commandment likewise, there is a negative part expressed in these words, "Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain." And that is, thou shalt not profane it, by using my titles, attributes, ordinances, works, ignorantly, irreverently, or after a formal, superstitious manner. And an affirmative part, included in these words, "But thou shalt sanctify my name," ([Isa 8:13](#)); by using my titles, attributes, ordinances, works, and religion, with knowledge, reverence, and after a spiritual manner, ([John 4:24](#)).

Neo. I pray you, sir, begin with the affirmative part, and first tell us what the Lord requires in this commandment.

Evan. The Lord in this commandment doth require, that we sanctify his name in our hearts, with our tongues, and in our lives, by thinking, conceiving, speaking, writing, and walking, so as becomes the excellency of his titles, attributes, ordinances, works, and religion.

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord in regard to his titles?

Evan. By thinking, conceiving, speaking, and writing holily, reverently, and spiritually of his titles, Lord and God, ([Deut 28:58](#)). And this we do when we meditate on them, and use them in our speeches and writings with an inward spiritual fear and trembling, to the glory of God and good of men, ([Jer 5:22](#)).

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord, in regard of his attributes?

Evan. By thinking, conceiving, speaking, and writing holily, reverently, and spiritually of his power, wisdom, justice, mercy, and patience, ([Psa 104:1, 103:6,8](#)). And this we do when we think, speak, and write of them after a careful, reverent, and spiritual manner, and apply them to such good uses for which the Lord has made them known, ([Psa 37:30](#)).

Neo. And in which of God's ordinances are we to sanctify his name?

Evan. In every one of his ordinances, and especially in the three great ordinances, prayer, preaching, and hearing the word, and administering and receiving the sacraments.

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord in prayer?

Evan. In prayer we are to sanctify the name of the Lord in our hearts, and with our tongues, in calling upon his name after a holy, reverent, and spiritual manner;

and this we do when our prayers are the speech of our souls, and not of our mouths only; and that is, when in prayer we lift up our hearts unto God, (Psa 25:1); and pour them out unto him, (Psa 62:8); and when we pray with spirit, and with understanding also, (1 Cor 14:15); and with humility, (Gen 18:27, 32:10, Luke 18:13); and with fervency of spirit, (James 5:16); and out of a sense of our own wants, (James 1:5) and with a special faith in the promises of God, (Matt 21:22).

Neo. And how are you ministers to sanctify the name of the Lord in preaching his word?

Evan. We are to sanctify the name of the Lord in our hearts, and with our tongues, in preaching after a holy, reverent, and spiritual manner; and this we do when the word is preached, not only outwardly, by the body, but also inwardly with the heart and soul: when the heart and soul preaches, then is the ministry of the word, on the minister's part, used after an holy and spiritual manner, and that is, when we preach in demonstration of the Spirit, (1 Cor 2:4); and in sincerity, (2 Cor 2:17); and faithfully without respect of persons, (Deut 33:9); and with judgment and discretion, (Matt 24:49); and with authority and power, (Matt 7:29); and with zeal to God's glory, (John 7:18); and with a desire of the people's salvation, (2 Cor 11:2).

Neo. And how are we hearers to sanctify the name of the Lord in hearing his word?

Evan. In hearing it after an holy, reverent, and spiritual manner; and this you do when your heart and soul hears the word of God; and that is when you set yourselves in the presence of God, (Acts 10:33); and when you look upon the minister as God's messenger or ambassador, (2 Cor 5:20), and so hear the word as the word of God, and not as the word of man, (1 Thess 2:13); with reverence and fear, (Isa 66:2); and with a ready desire to learn, (Acts 17:11); and with attention, (Acts 8:6); and with alacrity, without wearisomeness or sleepiness, (Acts 20:9).

Neo. And how are you ministers to sanctify the name of the Lord in administering the sacraments?

Evan. By administering them after an holy, reverent, and spiritual manner; and that is, when we administer them with our hearts or souls, according to Christ's institution, (Matt 26:26); to the faithful in profession at least, (1 Cor 10:16); and with a hearty desire that may become profitable to the receivers.

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord in receiving the sacraments?

Evan. This we do when we rightly and seriously examine ourselves aforehand, (1

Cor 11); and rightly and seriously mind and consider of the sacramental union of the sign, and the thing signified, and do in our hearts perform those inward actions which are signified by the outward actions. ([Acts 8:37,38](#), [1 Cor 10:6](#))

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord in regard of his works?

Evan. In thinking and speaking of them after a wise, reverent, and spiritual manner; and this we do when we meditate and make mention, in our speeches and writings, of the inward works of God's eternal election and reprobation, with wonderful admiration of the unsearchable depths thereof, ([Rom 11:33,34](#)); and when we meditate in our hearts of the works of God's creation and administration, and make mention of them in our words and writings, so as that we acknowledge therein his wisdom, power, and goodness, ([Rom 1:19,20](#), [Psa 19:1](#)); and acknowledging the workmanship of God therein, do speak honourably of the same, ([Psa 139:14](#), [Gen 1:31](#)).

Neo. And how are we to sanctify the name of the Lord in regard of his religion?

Evan. By holy profession of his true religion, and a conversation answerable thereunto, to the glory of God, the good of ourselves and others, ([Matt 5:16](#), [1 Peter 2:12](#)).

Neo. And, sir, are we not also to sanctify the name of God by swearing thereby?

Evan. Yea, indeed, that was well remembered; we are to sanctify the name of the Lord in our hearts, and with our tongues in swearing thereby, after a holy, religious, and spiritual manner; and this we do when the magistrate requires an oath of us by the order of justice, that is, not against piety or charity, ([Gen 43:3](#), [1 Sam 24:21,22](#)); and when we swear in truth, ([Jer 4:2](#)); that is, when we are persuaded in our conscience the thing we swear is truth, and swear simply and plainly, without fraud or deceit, ([Psa 15:4](#), [24:4](#)); and when we swear in judgment, that is, when we swear with deliberation, well considering both the nature and greatness of an oath, viz: that God is thereby called to witness the truth, and judge and punish us if we swear falsely, ([Gal 1:20](#), [2 Cor 1:23](#)); and when we swear in righteousness, that is, when the thing we swear is lawful and just, and when our swearing is, that God may be glorified, ([Josh 7:19](#)); our neighbour satisfied, controversies ended, ([Heb 6:16](#)); our own innocency cleared, ([Exo 22:11](#)); and our duty discharged, ([1 Kings 8:31](#)).

Neo. Well, sir, now I pray you, proceed to the negative part, and tell us what the Lord forbiddeth in this commandment.

Evan. As the Lord in the affirmative part of this commandment doth require that we sanctify his name in our hearts, with our tongues, and in our lives, by thinking, conceiving, speaking, writing, and walking, so as becomes the excellency of his titles, attributes, ordinances, and religion; so doth he in the negative part thereof

forbid the profanation of his name, by doing the contrary.

Neo. Well then, sir, I pray you first tell us how the titles of God are profanely abused.

Evan. They are profanely abused divers ways; as first, by thinking irreverently of them, or using them in our common talk, or in our writings, after a rash, careless and irreverent manner, ([Psa 50:22](#), [Rom 1:21](#)); as when in foolish admiration we say, Good God! Good Lord! Lord have mercy on us, what a thing is this? and the like; or when by the way of idle wishes or imprecations we say, "The Lord be my judge!" ([Gen 16:5](#)); or, I pray God I may never stir, if such a thing be not so, and the like; or when by way of vain swearing, we mingle our speeches, and fill up our sentences with needless oaths, as, Not so, by my faith! and the like, ([Matt 5:34](#), [James 5:12](#)); or when by way of jesting, or after a formal manner we say, God be thanked, God speed, God's name be praised, and the like, ([2 Sam 23:21](#)).

Neo. And I pray you, sir, how are the attributes of God profanely abused?

Evan. The attribute of God's power is profanely abused, either by calling it into question, ([2 Kings 7:2](#)), or by thinking, speaking, or writing of it carnally, carelessly, or contemptuously, ([Psa 12:4](#), [Exo 5:2](#)). And the attribute of God's providence is abused either by murmuring thereat in our hearts, ([Deut 15:9](#)), or by speaking grudgingly against it under the name of fortune or chance, in saying, What a misfortune was this! What a mischance was that! and the like. ([Deut 1:27](#), [1 Sam 6:9](#)) And the attribute of God's justice is profanely abused, either by thinking or saying, that God likes sin or wicked sinners, ([Psa 50:21](#), [Mal 3:15](#)). And the attribute of God's mercy is profanely abused, either in presuming to sin, upon hopes that God will be merciful, or by speaking basely and contemptuously thereof, as when we say, speaking of some trifling thing, It is not worth God-a-mercy. And the attribute of God's patience is profanely abused by thinking or saying upon occasion of his forbearance to punish for a time, that he will neither call us to an account, nor punish us for our sins. ([Rom 2:4](#))

Neo. Now, sir, I pray you proceed to show how God's name is profanely abused in his ordinances; and first of all begin with prayer.

Evan. God's name is profanely abused in prayer, either by praying ignorantly, without the true knowledge of God and his will, ([Acts 17:23](#), [Matt 20:22](#)); or when we pray with the mouth only, and not with the desires of our hearts agreeing with our words, ([Hosea 3:14](#), [Psa 78:36](#)); and when we pray drowsily and heavily without fervency of spirit, ([Matt 26:41](#)); and when we pray with wandering worldly thoughts, ([Rom 12:12](#)); and when we pray with any conceit of our own worthiness, ([Luke 18:9,11](#)); and when we pray without faith in the promises of God, ([James 1:6](#)).

Neo. And how is God's name profanely abused in hearing or reading his word?

Evan. God's name is hereby abused, when we hear it or read it, and do not understand it, ([Acts 8:30](#)); and when we hear it only with the outward ears of our bodies, and not also with the inward ears of our heart and soul; and this we do when we read it or hear it with our hearts full of wandering thoughts, ([Eze 33:30](#)); and we read it, or hear it with dull, drowsy, and sleepy spirits; and when in hearing of it we rather conceive it to be the word of a mortal man that delivers it; than the word of the great God of heaven and earth, ([1 Thess 2:13](#)); and when we do not with our hearts believe every part and portion of that word which we read or hear, ([Heb 4:2](#)); and when we do not humbly and heartily subject ourselves to what we read or hear, ([2 Kings 22:19](#), [Isa 62:2](#)).

Neo. And how is the Lord's name profanely abused in receiving the sacrament of the Lord's supper?

Evan. This we do when we either through want of knowledge cannot examine ourselves, or through our own negligence do not examine ourselves, before we eat of that bread, and drink of that cup, ([1 Cor 11:28](#)); and when we, in the act of receiving, do not mind the spiritual signification of the sacrament, but do either terminate our thoughts in the elements themselves, or else suffer them to rove and run out to some other object, ([Luke 22:19](#)); and when, after receiving, we do not examine ourselves what communion we have had with Christ in that ordinance, nor what virtue we have found flowing out from Christ into our own souls, by means of that ordinance, ([2 Cor 13:5](#)).

Neo. And how is the name of the Lord profanely abused in taking of an oath?

Evan. This we do, when we call the Lord to be a witness of vain and frivolous things, by our usual swearing in our common talk, ([Hosea 4:2](#), [Jer 23:10](#)); and when we call God to be a witness of our furious anger and wicked purpose, as when we swear we will be revenged on such a man, and the like, ([1 Sam 14:39](#), [25:34](#)); and when we call God to be a witness to our swearing falsely, ([Lev 19:12](#), [Zech 5:4](#)); and when we swear by the mass, or by our faith, or troth, or by the rood, or by anything else that is not God, ([Jer 5:7](#), [Matt 5:34-37](#)).

Neo. And how is the name of God profanely abused as touching his works?

Evan. When we either take no notice of his works at all, or when we think and speak otherwise of them than we have warrant from his word to do; as when we do not speak of the inward works of God's election and reprobation, and are called thereunto, and when we murmur and cavil thereat, ([Rom 9:20](#)); and when we either do not at all mind the works of his creation and administration, or do not take occasion thereby to glorify the name of God, ([Psa 19:1](#), [Rom 1:21](#)).

Neo. And how is the name of God profanely abused in respect of his religion?

Evan. When our conversation is not agreeable to our profession, ([2 Tim 3:5](#)); and that either when in respect of God it is but hypocrisy, or in respect of men we walk offensively; for if we live scandalously in the profession of religion, we cause the name of God to be profaned by them that are without, ([Rom 2:24](#)), and become stumbling blocks to our weak brethren, ([Rom 14:13](#)).

And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, tell me whether you think you keep this commandment perfectly or no.

Nom. Sir, to tell you the truth, I had not thought that the name of God had signified any more than his titles, Lord and God.

Evan. Aye, but you are to know that the name of God in Scripture signifies all those things that are affirmed of God, or any thing whatsoever it is, whereby the Lord makes himself known to men.

Nom. Then believe me, sir, I have come far short of keeping this commandment perfectly, and so does every man else, I am persuaded.

Evan. I am of your mind, for where is the man that hath and doth so meditate on God's titles, and use them in his speeches and writings, with such reverence, fear and trembling, as he ought? Or what man is he that can truly say, he never in all his life thought on them, or used them in his common talk, either rashly, carelessly, or irreverently? I am sure, for my own part, I cannot say so; for, alas! in the time of mine ignorance, I used many times to say, by way of foolish admiration, Good Lord! Good God! Lord have mercy on me, what a things is this? Yea, and I also many times used to say, I pray God I may never stir if such a thing be not so! Yea, and I have divers times said, The Lord be with you, and speed you! and, The Lord's name be praised! after a formal cursory manner, my thoughts being exercised about something else all the while.

And where is the man that has always thought, conceived, spoken, and written so holily, reverently, and spiritually, of the Lord's power, wisdom, justice, mercy, and patience, as he ought? Nay, what man is he that can truly say, he never in all his life called the attribute of the Lord's power into question, nor ever murmured at any act or passage of God's providence, nor ever presumed to sin, upon hopes that God would be merciful unto him? I am sure I cannot truly say so.

And where can we find the man that can truly say, he has always read and heard the word of God after a holy, reverent, and spiritual manner? Nay, where is the man that has not sometimes both heard it and read it after a formal, cursory, and unprofitable manner? Is there any man that can truly say he has always perfectly understood whatsoever he has read and heard—and that has not sometimes heard more with the outward ears of his body, than with the inward ears of his heart and soul—and that was never dull and drowsy, if not sleepy, in the time of

hearing and reading—and that had never a worldly, nor wandering thought to come in at that time—and that never had the least doubting or questioning the truth of what he had read or heard? I am sure, for my own part, I have been faulty many of these ways.

And is it possible to find a man that can truly say, he has always called upon the name of the Lord after a holy, reverent, and spiritual manner, or has not rather many times prayed after a carnal, unholy, or sinful manner? Where is the man that has always had a perfect knowledge of God and of his will in prayer, and whose heart has always gone along with his words in prayer, and that never was drowsy nor heavy, never had wandering thoughts in prayer, and that never had the least conceit that God would grant him anything for his prayer's sake, and that never had the least doubting or question in his heart, whether God would grant him the thing he asked in prayer. I am sure, for my own part, I can scarce clear myself from any of these.

And can any man truly say he has always received the sacrament after a holy, reverent, and spiritual manner? Nay, has not every man rather cause to acknowledge the contrary? Is there a man to be found that has always seriously and rightly examined himself beforehand, and that has always, rightly, with his heart, performed all those inward actions that are signified by the outward; or has not every man and woman rather cause to confess, that either for want of knowledge, or through their own negligence, they have not so examined themselves as they ought, nor so actuated their faith, nor minded the spiritual signification of the outward elements, in the time of receiving the sacrament as they ought, nor so examined themselves, after receiving, what benefit they have got to their soul thereby? I am sure I have cause to confess all this.

And where shall we find a man that has always sanctified the name of the Lord in his heart, and with his tongue, by swearing after a holy, religious, and spiritual manner; or rather, have not most men that have been called to take an oath, profaned the name of the Lord, either by swearing ignorantly, falsely, maliciously, or from some base and wicked end? And I think it is somewhat hard to find a man that never in all his life did swear, either by his faith, or by his troth, by the mass, or by the rood. I am sure I am not the man; and he is a rare man that can truly say, he has always sanctified the name of God in his heart, and with his tongue, by admiring and acknowledging the wisdom, power, and goodness of God manifested in his works, for it is to be feared that most men do either take no notice at all of the works of God, or else do think and speak of them otherwise than the word of God warrants them to do. I am sure I am one of these most. And he is a precious man that has always so sanctified the name of the Lord, by a

holy and unblamable conversation as he ought; for, alas! many professors of religion, by their fruitless and offensive walking, do either cause the enemies of God to speak evil of the way of God, or else do thereby cause their weak brother to stumble: it is well if I never did so: and thus have I also endeavoured to satisfy your desires concerning the third commandment.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, proceed to speak of the fourth commandment as you have done of the other three.

COMMANDMENT IV.

Evan. Well, then, I pray you consider, that as the Lord in the third commandment doth prescribe the right manner how he will be worshipped, so doth he in the fourth commandment, set down the time when he will be most solemnly worshipped, after the right manner; and in this commandment there is an affirmative part, expressed in these words, "Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy," &c.: that is, remember that the seventh day in every week be set apart from worldly things and business, and be consecrated to God by holy and heavenly employments; and a negative part, expressed also in these words, "In it thou shalt not do any work," &c. That is, thou shalt not on that day do any such thing or work as doth any way hinder thee from keeping an holy rest unto God.

Neo. I pray you, sir, begin with the affirmative part, and first tell us what the Lord requires of us in this commandment.

Evan. In this fourth commandment the Lord requires that we finish all our works in the space of six days, ([Deut 5:13](#)), and think on the seventh day before it come, and prepare for it, ([Luke 23:54](#)), and rise early on that day in the morning, ([Psa 92:2](#), [Mark 1:35,38,39](#)). Yea, and the Lord requires that we fit ourselves for the public exercises by prayer, reading, and meditation, ([Eccl 5:1](#), [Isa 7:10](#)); and that we join with the minister and people publicly assembled, with assent of mind, and fervency of affection in prayer, ([Acts 2:42](#)); in hearing the word read and preached, ([Acts 13:14,15,44](#)); in singing of Psalms, ([1 Cor 14:15,16](#), [Col 3:16](#)); in the sacrament of baptism, ([Luke 1:58,59](#)); and in the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, so often as it shall be administered in that congregation whereof we are members, ([1 Cor 11:26](#)).

Then afterwards, when we come home, the Lord requires that we seriously meditate on that portion of the word of which we have heard, ([Acts 17:11](#)), and repeat it to our families, ([Deut 6:7](#)), and confer of it with others, if there be occasion, ([Luke 24:14,17](#)); and that we crave his blessing when we have done all this, ([John 17:17](#)).

Neo. And is this all that the Lord requires us to do on that day?

Evan. No; the Lord also requires that we do works of mercy on that day, as to visit the sick, and do them what good we can, ([Neh 8:12](#), [Mark 3:3-5](#)), and relieve the poor and needy, and such as be in prison, ([Luke 13:16](#)), and labour to reconcile those that be at variance and discord, ([Matt 5:9](#)).

And the Lord doth permit us to do works of instant necessity on that day, as to travel to places of God's worship, ([2 Kings 4:23](#)); to heal the diseased, ([Hosea 6:6](#), [Matt 12:7,12](#)); to dress food for the necessary preservation of our temporal lives, ([Exo 1:1](#)); to tend and feed cattle, ([Matt 12:11](#)); and such like.

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the negative part, and tell us what the Lord forbiddeth in this commandment.

Evan. In this commandment the Lord forbiddeth idleness or sleeping more on the Lord's day in the morning, than is of necessity, ([Matt 20:6](#)); and he also forbiddeth us to labour in our particular callings, ([Exo 16:28-30](#)); and he also forbiddeth us to talk about our worldly affairs and business on that day, ([Amos 8:5](#), [Isa 58:13](#)); and he also forbiddeth us to travel any journey about our worldly business on that day, ([Matt 24:20](#)); or keep any fairs or markest on that day, ([Neh 13:16,17](#)); or to labour in seed time and harvest on that day. In a word, the Lord on that day forbiddeth all worldly works and labours, except works of mercy and instant necessity, which were mentioned before. And thus have I also declared, both what the Lord requires and what he forbids in the fourth commandment. And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you tell me, whether you think you keep it perfectly or no.

Nom. Indeed, sir, I must confess, there is more both required and forbidden in this commandment than I was aware of; but yet I hope I go very near the observing and doing of all.

Neo. But, sir, is the bare observing and doing of these things sufficient for keeping of this commandment perfectly?

Evan. Oh no! the first commandment must be understood in all the rest, that is, the obedience to the first commandment must be the motive and final cause of our obedience to the rest of the commandments, otherwise it is not the worship of God, but hypocrisy, as I touched before; wherefore, neighbour Nomologista, though you have done all the duties the Lord requires in this commandment, and avoided all the sins which he forbids, yet, if all this has been from such grounds, and to such ends, as I told you of in the conclusion of the second commandment, and not for the love you bear to God, and the desire you have to please him, you come short of keeping this commandment perfectly.

Neo. Sir, whatsoever he does, I am sure I come far short not only in this point, but in divers others; for though it is true, indeed, I am careful to finish all my worldly business in the space of six days, yet, alas! I do not so seriously think on and prepare for the seventh day as I ought; neither do I many times rise so early on that day as I ought; neither do I so thoroughly fit and prepare myself by prayer and other exercises beforehand as I ought; neither do I so heartily join with the minister and people, when I come to the assembly, as I ought, but am subject to many wandering worldly thoughts and cares even at that time. And when I come home, if I do either meditate, repeat, pray, or confer, yet, alas! I do none of these with such delight or comfort as I ought; neither have I been so mindful nor careful

to visit the sick, and relieve the poor, as I ought: neither can I clear myself from being guilty of doing more worldly works or labours on that day, than the works of mercy and instant necessity. The Lord be merciful unto me! I pray you, sir, proceed to speak of the fifth commandment, as you have done of the rest. But first of all, I pray, tell us what is meant by father and mother.

The Marrow of Modern Divinity - Part Second

COMMANDMENT V.

Evan. By father and mother is meant, not only natural parents, but others also that are our superiors, either in age, in place, or in gifts, ([2 Kings 5:13](#), [6:21](#), [13:14](#)).

Neo. And why did the Lord use the name of father and mother to signify and comprehend all other superiors?

Evan. Because the government of fathers is the first and most ancient of all others; and because the society of father and mother is that from whom all other societies do come.

Neo. And are the duties of inferiors towards their superiors only here intended?

Evan. No, but also of superiors towards their inferiors, and of equals amongst themselves; so that the general duty required in the affirmative part of this fifth commandment, "Honour thy father and thy mother," &c., is, that every man, woman, and child, be careful to carry themselves as becomes them in regard to that order God hath appointed amongst men, and that relation they have to others, either as inferior, superior, or equal.

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the particular handling of these things; and first tell us what is the duty of children towards their parents.

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that children do reverence their parents, by thinking and esteeming highly of them, ([Gen 31:35](#)); and by loving them dearly, ([Gen 46:29](#)); and by fearing them in regard of their authority over them, ([Lev 19:3](#)). And this inward reverent esteem of them is to be expressed by their outward reverent behaviour towards them, ([Gen 48:12](#)). And this outward reverent behaviour is to be expressed in giving them reverent titles, ([Gen 31:35](#)), and by bowing their bodies before them, ([1 Kings 2:19](#)), and by embracing their instructions, ([Prov 1:8](#)), and by submitting patiently to their corrections, ([Heb 12:9](#)), and by their succouring and relieving of them in case of want and necessity, ([Gen 47:12](#)), and by making their prayers unto God for them, ([1 Tim 2:12](#)).

Neo. And, sir, what be the duties of parents towards their children?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment does require, that parents be careful to bring their children, with all convenient speed, in due order, to be admitted into the visible church of God by baptism, ([Luke 1:59](#)); and that they, according to their ability, do yield and give unto their children such competent food, clothing, and other necessaries, as are fit for them, ([Matt 7:9,12](#), [1 Tim 5:8](#)).

And that they train them up in learning, instruct them in religion, and endeavour to sow the seeds of godliness in their hearts, so soon as they be able to speak, and

have the use of reason and understanding, ([Deut 4:10](#), [6:7,20,21](#)). And that they be careful to check and rebuke them when they do amiss, ([Prov 31:2](#)); and that they be careful seasonably to correct their faults, ([Prov 13:24](#), [19:18](#)); and that they be careful in time to train them in some honest calling, ([Gen 4:2](#)); and that they be careful to bestow them in marriage in due time, ([Jer 29:6](#), [1 Cor 7:36,38](#)); and that they be careful to lay up something for them, as their ability will suffer, ([Prov 19:14](#), [2 Cor 12:14](#)); and that they be earnest with God in prayer, for a blessing upon their children's souls and bodies, ([Gen 48:15,16](#)).

Neo. And what be the duties of servants towards their masters?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that servants have an inward, high, and reverent esteem of their masters, ([Eph 6:5- 7](#)); yea, and that they have in their hearts a reverent awe and fear of them, ([1 Peter 2:18](#)); and this reverence and fear they are to express by their outward reverent behaviour towards them, both in word and deed, as by giving them reverent titles, ([2 Kings 5:23,25](#)), and by an humble, submissive countenance and carriage, either when their masters speak to them, or they speak to their masters, ([Gen 24:9](#), [Acts 10:7](#)); and by yielding of sincere, faithful, willing, painful, and single- hearted service to their masters in all they go about, ([Col 3:22](#), [Titus 2:10](#)); and by a meek and patient bearing of those checks, rebukes, and corrections which are given to them, or laid upon them by their masters, without grudging stomach, or sullen countenance, though the master do it without just cause, or exceed in the measure, ([1 Peter 2:18,20](#)); and by being careful to maintain their master's good name, in keeping secret those honest intents which he would not have disclosed; and, as much as may be, to hide and cover their master's wants and infirmities, not blazing them abroad, ([2 Sam 15:13](#), [2 Kings 6:11](#)).

Neo. And what is the duty of masters towards their servants?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that masters be careful to choose unto themselves religious servants, ([Psa 101:6](#)); and that they do instruct them in religion and the ways of godliness, ([Gen 18:19](#)); and that they be careful to bring them to the public exercises, ([Josh 24:15](#)); and that they do daily pray with them and for them, ([Jer 10:24](#)); and that they do yield and give unto them meat, drink, and apparel fitting for them, ([Deut 24:14,15](#)); and that they see to them that they follow the works of their callings with diligence, ([Prov 31:27](#)); and that they be careful to instruct them, and give them direction therein, ([Exo 35:34](#)); and that they be careful to give them just reproof and correction for their faults, ([Prov 29:29](#), [19:29](#)); and that they look carefully unto them when they are sick, ([Matt 8:5,6](#)).

Neo. And what is the duty of wives towards their husbands?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that wives do carry in their hearts an inward opinion and esteem for their husbands, (Eph 5:33); the which they are to express in their speeches, by giving them reverent titles and terms, (1 Peter 3:6); and in their countenance and behaviour, by their modesty, shamefacedness, and sobriety, (1 Tim 2:9); and in being willing to yield themselves to be commanded, governed and directed by their husbands in all things honest and lawful, (Gen 31:4,16,17, 2 Kings 4:22); and they are also required to love their husbands, (Titus 2:4), and to express their love by their chastity and faithfulness to their husbands, both in body and mind, (Titus 2:5, 1 Tim 3:11); and by their using the best means they can to keep their husbands' bodies in health, (Gen 27:9). They are also required to be helpful to them in the government of the family, and to be provident for their estate, by exercising themselves in some profitable employment, (Prov 31:13,15,19); and they are also required to stir up their husbands to good duties, and join with them in the performance of them, (2 Kings 4:9,10); and to pray for them, (1 Tim 2:12).

Neo. And what is the duty of husbands towards their wives?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment requires that husbands be careful to choose religious wives, (2 Cor 6:14); and that they dwell with them as men of knowledge, (1 Peter 3:7); and that they cleave unto them with true love and affection of heart, (Col 3:19); yea, and that they content themselves only with the love of their own wives, and keep themselves only to them both in mind and body, (Prov 5:19,20); they are also to be careful to maintain their authority over them, (Eph 5:23); and to live cheerfully and familiarly with them, (Prov 5:19); and to be careful to provide all things needful and fitting for their maintenance, (1 Tim 5:8); and to teach, instruct, and admonish them, as touching the best things, (1 Sam 1:8); and to pray with them and for them, (1 Peter 3:7); and to endeavour to reform and amend what they see amiss in them, by seasonable and loving admonition and reproof, (Gen 30:2); and wisely and patiently to bear with their natural infirmities, (Gal 6:2).

Neo. And what is the duty of subjects towards their magistrates?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that subjects do think and esteem reverently of their magistrates, (2 Sam 10:16,17); and that they carry in their hearts a reverent awe and fear of them, (Prov 24:21); the which they are to express by their outward reverent behaviour towards them, both in word and deed, (2 Sam 9:6,8); and by an humble, ready, and willing submitting of themselves to their commands, either to do, or to suffer, (1 Peter 2:13); and by yielding a loyal and sound-hearted love to them, in not shrinking from them when they have need, but defending them with their goods, bodies, and lives, if

occasion require, (2 Sam 18:3, 21:27); also they are required to make their prayers unto God for them, (1 Tim 2:12).

Neo. And what is the duty of magistrates towards their subjects?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that magistrates be careful to establish good laws in their kingdoms, and good orders among their subjects, (2 Kings 18:4, Rom 12:17); and that they be careful to see them duly and impartially executed, (Jer 38:4,6, Rom 13:3,4); and that they be careful to provide for the peace, safety, quietness, and outward welfare of their subjects, (Rom 13:4, 1 Tim 2:2), and not to oppress them with taxations and grievances, (1 Kings 12:14).

Neo. And what duties are people to perform towards their minister?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that the people have their minister in reverent account and estimation, (1 Cor 4:1); and that they humbly and willingly yield themselves to be taught and directed in their spiritual affairs by him, (Heb 13:17); and that they pray for him, that the Lord would enable him to do his duty, (Rom 15:30,31); and that they do their best to defend him against the wrongs of wicked men, (Rom 16:4); and that they yield unto him double honour, that is, both singular love for their work's sake, and sufficient maintenance, both in regard of his person and calling, (1 Tim 5:17,18, Gal 4:15).

Neo. And what is the duty of a minister towards the people?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that ministers do diligently and faithfully preach the pure word of God unto their people, both in season and out of season, (1 Cor 9:16, 2 Kings 4:2); and that they do so truly and plainly expound the same, that the people may understand it, and that they pour out their souls to God in prayer, for the spiritual good of the people, (1 Thess 1:2); and they go before the people, as a pattern of imitation to them, in all holiness of conversation, (Phil 4:9).

Neo. And what is the duty of equals?

Evan. Why, the Lord in this commandment doth require, that equals regard the dignity and worth of each other, and carry themselves modestly one towards another, and in giving honour to one before another, (Eph 5:21, Rom 12:10). And thus having showed you the duties required in this commandment, I pray you, Nomologista, tell me whether you think you have kept it perfectly or no.

Nom. Sir, though I have not kept it perfectly, yet I am persuaded I have gone very near it; for when I was a child, I loved and revered my parents, and was obedient unto them; and when I was a servant, I revered and feared my master, and did him faithful service; and since I became a man, I have, I hope, carried myself well towards my wife, and towards my servants; yea, and done my

duty both to magistrates and ministers.

Evan. Aye, but I must tell you, the Lord doth not only require you to do them, but also that you do them in obedience unto him; that is, in conscience to God's commandment, or for his sake, even because he requires it. Therefore, although you did your duty to your parents, when you were a child, and to your master when you were a servant, yet if you did it either for the praise of men, or for fear of their corrections, or to procure a greater portion, or greater wages, and not because the Lord says, ([Eph 6:4](#)), "Children, obey your parents in the Lord"; and because he says to servants, "Whatsoever you do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men," you have not in so doing kept this commandment; and though you have loved your wife, and every way carried yourself well towards her, yet if it have been either because she is come of rich parents, or because she is beautiful, or because she brought you a good portion, or because she some way serves and pleases you after the flesh, and not because the Lord says, ([Eph 5:25](#)), "Husbands, love your wives"; you have not therein kept this commandment: and though you have carried yourself ever so well towards your servants, yet if it have been that they might praise you, or to make them follow your business more diligently and faithfully, and not because the Lord says, "Masters, give unto your servants that which is just and equal," you have not therein kept this commandment: and though you have done your duty ever so well towards your magistrate, yet if it has been for fear of his wrath, and not for conscience sake, viz: because the Lord says, "Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers," you have not therein kept this commandment: and though you have given your minister his due maintenance, and invited him often to your table, and carried yourself ever so well towards him, yet if it have been that he or others might think you a good Christian, and a kind man, and not because the Lord says, ([Gal 6:6](#)), "Let him that is taught in the word, communicate unto him that teacheth, in all good things," you have not therein kept this commandment.

Neo. Well, sir, I cannot tell what my neighbour Nomologista hath done, but for mine own part, I am sure, I have come far short of doing my duty in any relation I have had to others; for when I was a child, I remember that I was many times stubborn and disobedient to my parents, and vexed if I might not have my will, and slighted their admonitions, and was impatient at their corrections, and sometimes despised and contemned them in my heart, because of some infirmity, especially when they grew old; neither did I pray for them, as it seems I ought to have done; and the truth is, if I did yield any obedience to them at all, it was for fear of their corrections, or some such by-respects, and not for conscience towards God. And when I was a servant, I did not think so reverently, nor esteem

so highly of my master and mistress as I should have done, but was apt to slight and despise them, and did not yield such humble, reverent, and cheerful obedience as I should have done; neither did I patiently and contentedly bear their checks and rebukes, but had divers times risings and swellings in my heart against them; neither was I so careful to maintain their good name and credit as I ought to have been; neither did I pray unto the Lord for them as I ought to have done; and the very truth is, all the obedience and subjection which I yielded unto them, was for fear of their reproofs and corrections, or for the praise of men, rather than in conscience to the Lord's commandment.

And when I entered into the married estate, I was not careful to choose a religious wife; no, I aimed at beauty more than piety; and I have not dwelt with my wife as a man of knowledge; no, I have expressed much ignorance and folly in my carriage towards her; neither have I loved her so as a husband ought to love his wife, for though it be true I have had much fond affection towards her, yet I have had but little true affection, as it hath been evident in that I have been easily provoked to anger and wrath against her, and have not carried myself patiently towards her; neither have I been careful to maintain mine authority over her, but have lost it by my childish and indiscreet carriage towards her; neither have I lived so cheerfully and delightfully with her as I ought to have done, but very heavily, discontentedly, and uncomfortably have I carried myself towards her; neither have I been careful to instruct and admonish her as I ought; and though I have now and then reprov'd her, yet for the most part it has been in a passion, and not with the spirit of meekness, pity, and compassion; neither have I prayed for her either so often or so fervently as I ought; and whatsoever I have done, that has been well done, I have been moved thereunto, in former times especially, rather by something in her, or done by her, than by the commandment of God. And since I became a father and a master, I have neither done my duty to my children nor servants as I ought, for I have not had such care, nor taken such pains for their eternal good, as I have done for their temporal. I have had more care, and taken more pains to provide food and raiment for them, than I have to admonish, instruct, teach, and catechize them; and if I have reprov'd or corrected them, it has been rather because they have some way offended me, than because they have offended God; and truly, I have neither prayed for them so often, nor so fervently as I ought. In a word, whatsoever I have done by way of discharging my duty to them, I fear me, it has been rather out of natural affection, or to avoid the blame, and gain the good opinion of men, than out of conscience to the Lord's will and commandment.

And if I have at any time carried myself well, or done my duty either to

magistrate or minister, it has rather been for fear or praise of men, than for conscience sake towards God; so far have I been from keeping this commandment perfectly: the Lord be merciful unto me!

Evan. Assure yourself, neighbour Neophytus, this is not your case alone, but the case of every man that has stood in all these relations to others, as it seems you have done, as I am confident any man that truly knows his heart will confess, yea, and any woman that is well acquainted with her own heart, I am persuaded, will confess, that she has not had such a reverent esteem and opinion of her husband as she ought, nor so willingly yielded herself to be commanded, governed, and directed by him as she ought, nor loved him so truly as she ought; nor been so helpful to him any way as she ought, nor prayed either so oft or so fervently for him as she ought; and I fear me, most women do all that they do rather for fear of their husband's frowns, or to gain his favour, than for conscience to the Lord's will and command.

And where is the magistrate that is so careful to establish in his dominions such good and wholesome laws as he ought, or to see them executed or put in practice as he ought, or that is so careful to uphold and maintain the truth of religion as he ought, or that is so careful to provide for the peace, safety, and welfare of his people as he ought? Or where is the magistrate that does not do what he does for some other cause, or some other end, rather than because God commands them, or to the end he may please him?

And where is the minister that does his duty so in his place as he ought? I am sure, for mine own part, I have neither so diligently nor faithfully preached the pure word of God as I ought; nor so fully nor truly expounded it and applied it to my hearers as I ought; nor so poured out my soul to God for them in prayer as I ought; neither have I gone before them as a pattern of imitation in holiness of life and conversation, as I ought: the Lord be merciful to me!

Neo. Well, sir, now I entreat you to proceed to speak of the sixth commandment as you have done of the rest.

The Marrow of Modern Divinity - Part Second

COMMANDMENT VI.

Evan. Well, then, I pray you consider, that in the sixth commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words: "Thou shalt do no murder." That is, thou shalt neither in heart, tongue, nor hand, impeach or hurt either the life of thine own soul or body, or the life of any other man's soul or body; and an affirmative part included in these words: "But thou shalt every way, by all good means, seek to preserve them both."

Neo. I pray you, sir, speak of these things in order, and first tell us what is forbidden in this commandment, as tending to the murdering of our own souls.

Evan. That we may not be guilty of the murdering of our own souls, in this commandment is forbidden all sinning against God, ([Prov 6:2](#)); and so also is the careless neglecting and willful rejecting of the means that God has ordained to salvation, ([Heb 2:3](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in this commandment, as tending to the murdering of other's souls?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of murdering the souls of others, in this commandment is forbidden all giving occasions to others to sin against God, either by provoking of them, ([1 Kings 21:25](#)), or by counselling of them, ([2 Sam 16:21](#)), or by evil example, ([Rom 14:15](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in this commandment, as tending to the murdering of our own bodies?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of murdering our own bodies, in this commandment is forbidden excessive worldly sorrow, ([1 Cor 7:10](#), [Prov 17:22](#)); and so also is the neglect of meat, drink, apparel, recreation, physic, or any such refreshments, ([Eccl 5:19](#), [6:2](#)); and so also is excessive eating and drinking, ([Prov 23:29,30](#), [Hosea 7:5](#)); and so also is laying violent hands upon ourselves, ([1 Sam 3:14](#), [Acts 16:28](#)).

Neo. Well, sir, now I pray you, tell us what is forbidden in this commandment as tending to the murdering of others' bodies; and, first, what is forbidden in respect of the heart?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of murdering others with our hearts, in this commandment is forbidden all hasty, rash, and unjust anger, ([Matt 5:22](#)); and so also is malice or hatred, ([Lev 19:18](#), [1 John 3:15](#)); and so also is envy, ([Psa 37:1](#), [Prov 24:1](#)); and so also is desire of revenge, ([Lev 19:18](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in respect of the tongue?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of murdering others with our tongues, in this commandment are forbidden all bitter and provoking terms, ([Eph 4:31](#)); and so

also are all wrangling and contentious speeches, ([Prov 15:1](#)); and so also is crying and unseemly lifting up of the voice, ([Eph 4:31](#)); and so also is railing or scolding, ([Prov 17:19](#), [1 Peter 3:19](#)); and so also are all reviling and threatening speeches, ([Matt 5:22](#)); and so also are all mocking, scoffing, and deriding speeches, ([2 Kings 2:23](#), [John 19:3](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in respect of the whole body, and more especially of the hand?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of murdering others with our hands, in respect of the other parts of the body, in this commandment is forbidden all disdainful, proud, and scornful carriage, ([Gen 4:5](#), [Prov 6:17](#)); and so also are all provoking gestures, as nodding of the head, gnashing with the teeth, and the like, ([Matt 27:39](#), [Acts 7:45](#)); and so also is all froward and churlish behaviour, ([1 Sam 25:17](#)); and so also is brawling and quarrelling, ([Titus 3:2](#)). And more especially in respect of the hand is forbidden striking and wounding, ([Exo 21:18,22](#)); and so also is all taking away of life, otherwise than in case of public justice, just war, and necessary defence, ([Exo 21:12](#), [Gen 9:6](#)).

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the affirmative part of this commandment, and first tell us what is required of us in respect of the life of our own souls.

Evan. In respect of the preservation of the life of our own souls is required a careful avoiding of all sorts of sin, ([Prov 11:19](#)); and so also is a careful use of all means of grace, and spiritual life in our souls, ([1 Peter 2:2](#)).

Neo. And what is required of us in respect of the preservation of the life of others' souls?

Evan. In respect of the preservation of the life of the souls of others, is required, that according to our place and calling, and as present occasion is offered, we teach and instruct others to know God and his will, ([Gen 18:19](#), [Deut 6:7](#)); and so also that we do our best to comfort others that are in distress of conscience, ([1 Thess 5:14](#)), and that we pray for the welfare and comfort of others' souls, ([Gen 43:29](#)); and that we give others good examples by our Christian-like walking, ([Matt 5:16](#)).

Neo. And what is required of us in respect of the preservation of the life of our own bodies?

Evan. In respect of the preservation of the life of our own bodies, is required in this commandment, that we be careful to procure unto ourselves the use of wholesome food, clothing, and lodging, and physic, when there is occasion, ([1 Tim 5:23](#), [Eccl 10:17](#), [2 Kings 20:7](#)); and also that we use honest and lawful mirth, rejoicing in an holy manner, ([Prov 17:22](#), [Eccl 3:4](#)).

Neo. And what is required of us in respect of the preservation of the life of the

bodies of others?

Evan. In respect of the preservation of the life of the bodies of others, in this commandment is required a kind and loving disposition, with tenderness of heart towards them, ([Eph 4:31,32](#)): and so also is a patient bearing of wrongs and injuries, ([Col 3:12,13](#)); and so also is the taking of all things in the best sense, ([1 Cor 13:5,7](#)); and so also is the avoiding of all occasions of strife, and parting with our own right sometimes for peace sake, ([Gen 13:8,9](#)); and so also are all such looks and gestures of the body as do express meekness and kindness, ([Gen 33:10](#)), and so also is the relieving the poor and needy, ([Job 31:16](#)); and so also is the visiting of the sick, ([Matt 25:36](#)). And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you tell me, whether you think you keep this commandment perfectly or no.

Nom. No, indeed, sir, I do not think I keep it perfectly, nor any man else, as you have expounded it.

Evan. Assure yourself, neighbour Nomologista, that I have expounded it according to the mind and will of God revealed in his word, for you see I have proved all by Scripture: I told you at the beginning, that the law is spiritual and binds the very heart and soul to obedience; and that under one vice expressly forbidden, all of the same kind, with all occasions and means leading thereunto, are likewise forbidden; and according to these rules have I expounded it.

Wherefore, I pray you, consider, that so many sins as you have committed, and so many times as you have carelessly neglected, and willfully rejected the means of salvation, so many wounds you have given your own soul.

And so many times as you have given occasion to others to sin, so many wounds you have given to their souls.

And so many fits of worldly sorrow as you have had, and so many times as you have neglected the moderate use either of meat, drink, apparel, recreation, or physic, when need hath required, so many wounds have you given your own body.

And so many times as you have been either unadvisedly angry with any, or have borne any malice or hatred towards any, or have secretly in your heart wished evil unto any, or borne envy in your heart towards any, or desired to be revenged upon any, then have you been guilty of murdering them in your heart. And if you have given others any wrangling and contentious speeches, or any reviling and threatening speeches, or have carried yourself frowardly and churlishly towards others, and have not borne injuries and wrongs patiently, and expressed pity and compassion towards others, then have you been guilty of murdering them with your tongue. And if you have quarrelled with any man, or stricken or wounded any man, then have you murdered them with your hand, though you have not

taken away their lives. And thus have I endeavoured to satisfy your desires concerning the sixth commandment.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, proceed to speak of the seventh commandment as you have done of the rest.

COMMANDMENT VII.

Evan. Well, then, I pray you, consider that in the seventh commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words, "Thou shalt not commit adultery"; that is, though shalt not think, will, speak, or do anything whereby thine own chastity or the chastity of others, may be hurt or hindered. And an affirmative part included in these words, "But thou shalt every way, and by all good means, preserve and keep the same."

Neo. I pray you, sir, begin with the negative part, and first tell us what is that inward uncleanness that is forbidden in this commandment.

Evan. That we may not be guilty of the inward uncleanness of the heart, in this commandment are forbidden all filthy imaginations, unchaste thoughts, and inward desires and motions of the heart to uncleanness, ([Matt 5:28](#), [Col 3:5](#)); with all causes and occasions of stirring up and nourishing of these in the heart.

Neo. And what are the causes and occasions of stirring up and nourishing these things in the heart which we are to avoid?

Evan. That we may not stir up and nourish inward uncleanness in our hearts, is forbidden in this commandment gluttony, or excess in eating and pampering of the belly with meats, ([Jer 5:8](#)); and so also is drunkenness, or excess in drinking, ([Prov 23:30,31,33](#)); and so also is idleness, ([2 Sam 11:12](#)); and so also is the wearing of lascivious, garish, and new fangled attire, ([Prov 7:10](#), [1 Tim 2:9](#)); and so also is keeping company with lascivious, wanton, and fleshly persons, ([Gen 39:10](#)); and so also is immodest, unchaste, and filthy speaking, ([Eph 4:29](#)); and so also is idle and curious looking of men on women, or women on men, ([Gen 6:2](#), [39:7](#)); and so also is the beholding of love matters, and light behaviour of men and women represented in stage plays, ([Eze 23:14](#), [Eph 5:3,4](#)); and so also is immoderate and wanton dancing of men and women together, ([Job 21:11,12](#), [Mark 6:21,22](#)); and so also is wanton kissing and embracing, with all unchaste touching and dalliance, ([Prov 7:13](#)).

Neo. And what is that outward actual uncleanness which is forbidden in this commandment?

Evan. The actual uncleanness forbidden in this commandment is fornication, which is a fleshly defilement of the body, committed between man and woman, being both of them single and unmarried persons, ([1 Cor 10:8](#)); and so also is adultery, which is a defilement of the body, committed between man and woman, being either one or both of them married persons, or at least contracted, ([1 Cor 6:9,18](#), [Hosea 13:4](#)).

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the affirmative part, and tell us what the Lord

requires in this commandment.

Evan. The Lord in this commandment requires purity of heart, (1 Thess 4:5); and he also requires speeches savouring of sobriety and chastity, (Col 4:6, Gen 4:1); and he also requires that we keep our eyes from beholding vanity and lustful objects, (Psa 119:37, Job 31:1); and he also requires that we be temperate in our diet, in our sleep, and in our recreations, (Luke 21:34); and he also requires that we possess our vessels in holiness and honour, (1 Thess 4:9); and if we have not the gift of chastity, he requires that we take the benefit of holy marriage, (1 Cor 7:29); and that the man and wife do in that estate render due benevolence each towards the other, (1 Cor 7:5). Thus have I also endeavoured to satisfy your desires concerning the seventh commandment; and now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you tell me whether you think you keep it perfectly or no.

Nom. Sir, I thank the Lord I am free from actual uncleanness, so that I am neither fornicator nor adulterer.

Evan. Well, but though you be free from the outward act, yet if you have had in your heart filthy imaginations, unchaste thoughts, or inward desires, or motions of the heart to uncleanness, you have notwithstanding transgressed this commandment; or if you have been guilty of gluttony, or drunkenness, or idleness, or delight to keep company with lascivious and wanton persons, or have with your tongue uttered any unchaste or corrupt communication, or have been a frequenter of stage plays, or have used immoderate dancing with women, or have used wanton dalliance with kissing and embracing, then have you broken this commandment.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, proceed to speak of the eighth commandment, as you have done of the rest.

COMMANDMENT VIII.

Evan. Well, then, I pray you consider, that in the eighth commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words, "Thou shalt not steal"; that is, though shalt by no unlawful way or means hurt or hinder the wealth and outward estate either of thyself or others: and an affirmative part included in these words, "But thou shalt by all good means preserve and further them both."

Neo. I pray you, sir, begin with the negative part, and first tell us what is forbidden in this commandment, as a hurt or hindrance of our own outward estate.

Evan. That we may not hurt or hinder our own outward estate, in this commandment are forbidden idleness, sloth, and inordinate walking, ([Prov 18:9](#), [2 Thess 3:11](#)); and so also are unthriftiness and carelessness, either in spending our goods, or in ordering our affairs and businesses, ([Prov 21:17](#), [1 Tim 5:8](#)); and so also is unadvised suretyship, ([Prov 11:15](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in this commandment, as tending to the hurt or hindrance of our neighbour's estate?

Evan. That we may not hurt or hinder our neighbour's outward estate, in this commandment is forbidden covetousness and discontentedness with our estate, ([Heb 13:5](#)); and so also is enviousness at the prosperity of others, ([Prov 24:1](#)); and so also are resolutions or hastening to be rich, as it were, whether the Lord afforded means or not, ([1 Tim 6:9](#), [Prov 28:20](#)); and so also is borrowing and not paying again, we being able, ([Psa 37:21](#)); and so also is lending upon usury, ([Exo 22:25](#)); and so also is the not restoring of things borrowed, ([Psa 37:21](#)); and so also is cruelty in requiring all our debts, without compassion or mercy, ([Isa 58:3](#)); and so also is the praising of any commodity we sell, contrary to our own knowledge, or the debasing of anything we buy, against our own conscience, ([Isa 5:20](#), [Prov 20:14](#)); and so also is the hoarding up, or withholding the selling of corn and other necessary commodities when we may spare them, and others have need of them, ([Prov 11:26](#)); and so also is the retaining of hireling's wages, ([James 5:4](#)); and so also is uncharitable inclosure, ([Isa 5:8](#)); and so also is the selling of any commodity by false weights or false measures, ([Lev 19:35](#)); and so also is the concealing of things found, and withholding them from the right owners when they are known; and so also is robbery, or the laying of violent and strong hands on any part of the wealth that belongs unto another, ([Zech 4:3,4](#)); and so also is pilfering and secret carrying away of the wealth that belongs to another, ([Josh 7:21](#)); and so also is the consenting to the taking away the goods of another, ([Psa 90:18](#)); and so also is the receiving or harbouring of stolen goods, ([Prov](#)

29:24).

Neo. Well, now, sir, I pray you proceed to the affirmative part of this commandment, and tell us what the Lord therein requires.

Evan. In this commandment is required contentedness of mind with that part and portion of wealth and outward good things which God, in his providence, has allotted unto us, ([Heb 13:5](#), [1 Tim 6:6-8](#)); and so also in resting by faith upon the promise of God, and depending upon his providence, without distrustful care, ([Matt 6:20,26](#)); and so also is a moderate desire of such things as are convenient and necessary for us, ([Matt 6:21](#), [Prov 30:8](#)); and so also is a moderate care to provide those things which are needful for us, ([Gen 30:30](#), [1 Tim 5:8](#)); and so also is an honest calling, ([Gen 4:2](#)); and so also is diligence, painfulness, and faithful labouring therein, ([Gen 3:19](#)); and so also is frugality or thriftiness, ([Prov 27:23,24](#), [John 6:12](#)); and so also is borrowing for need and good ends, what we are able to repay, and making payment with thanks and cheerfulness, ([Exo 22:14](#)); and so also is lending freely without compounding for gain, ([Deut 15:8](#), [Luke 6:35](#)); and so also is giving, or communicating outward things unto others, according to our ability and their necessity, ([Luke 11:41](#)); and so also is the using of truth, simplicity, and plainness in buying and selling, in hiring and letting, ([Lev 25:14](#), [Deut 25:13-15](#)); and so also is the restoring of things found, ([Deut 22:2,3](#)); and so also is the restoring of things committed to our trust, ([Eze 18:7](#)). And thus have I endeavoured to satisfy your desire concerning the eighth commandment; and now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, tell me whether you think you keep it perfectly or not.

Nom. I can say this truly, that I never in all my life took away, or consented to the taking away, of so much as a penny-worth of any other man's goods.

Evan. Though you did not, yet if there ever have been in your heart any discontentedness with your own estate, or any envious thoughts towards others in regard of their prosperity in the world, or any resolution to be rich, otherwise than by the moderate use of lawful means, or if ever you borrowed and paid not again, to the utmost of your ability, or if ever you lent upon usury, or if ever you did cruelly require any debt above the ability of your debtor, or if ever you praised anything you had to sell above the known worth of it, or if ever you did undervalue anything you were to buy, contrary to your own thoughts of it, or if ever you hoarded up corn in the time of dearth, or if ever you retained the hireling's wages in your hands, to his loss or hindrance, or if ever you did sell any commodity by false weights or measures, or if ever you did conceal anything found from the right owner, when you knew him; then have you been guilty of theft, and so have been a transgressor of this commandment.

And though you never have done any of these things, and it is strange if you have not, yet if ever you were guilty of idleness, sloth, or any way unwarrantably neglected your calling, or if ever you did unthriftilly misspend any of your own goods, or ever were negligent and careless in ordering your own affairs and business, or if ever you sustained any loss by your unadvised suretyship, or if ever you borrowed upon usury, except in case of extreme necessity, then have you been guilty of robbing yourself, and so have been a transgressor of this commandment.

Neo. Now, I pray you, sir, proceed to speak of the ninth commandment, as you have done of the rest.

COMMANDMENT IX.

Evan. Well, then I pray you consider, that in the ninth commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words: "Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour"; that is, thou shalt not think or speak anything contrary to truth, or that may tend to the hurt or hindrance either of thine own or thy neighbour's good name. And an affirmative part included in these words: "But thou shalt by all good means seek to maintain them both, according to truth and a good conscience."

Neo. Well, sir, I pray you, begin with the negative part; and first tell us what is forbidden in this commandment, in respect of our own good name.

Evan. That we may not be guilty of bearing false witness against ourselves, either by overvaluing or undervaluing ourselves, in this commandment is forbidden too high a conceit or esteem of ourselves, ([Luke 18:9-11](#)); and so also is too mean a conceit, in underweening the good things that are in ourselves, ([Exo 4:10,13](#)); and so also is the procuring of ourselves an evil name, by walking indiscreetly and offensively, ([Rom 2:24](#)); and so also is the unjust accusing of ourselves, when we, in a way of proud humility, say, "We have no grace, no wit, no wealth," &c. ([Prov 13:7](#)); and so also is the excusing of our faults by way of lying, ([Lev 19:11](#)).

Neo. And what is forbidden in this commandment, in respect to our neighbour's good name?

Evan. That we may not be guilty of bearing false witness against any other man, in this commandment is forbidden contemning or thinking basely of others, ([2 Sam 6:16](#)); and so also is wrongful suspicion, or evil surmising, ([2 Sam 10:3](#)); and so also is rash, uncharitable, unjust judging and condemning of others, ([Matt 7:1](#)); and so also is foolish admiring of others, ([Acts 12:22](#)); and so also is the unjust reviving the memory of our neighbour's crimes, which were in tract of time forgotten, ([Prov 17:9](#)); and so also is the forbearing to speak in the cause and for the credit of our neighbours, ([Prov 31:8,9](#)); and so also are all flattering speeches, ([Job 32:21,22](#)); and so also is tale-bearing, backbiting, and slanderous speeches, ([Lev 19:16](#), [Prov 20:19](#)); and so also is listening to tale-bearers, ([Prov 26:20](#), [25:23](#)); and so also is falsely charging some ill upon another before some magistrate, or in some open court, ([Amos 7:10](#), [Acts 25:2](#)).

Neo. I pray you, sir, proceed to the affirmative part of this commandment, and first tell us what the Lord requires of us for the maintenance of our own good name.

Evan. For the maintenance of our own good name, the Lord in this

commandment requires a right judgment of ourselves, (2 Cor 13:5); with a love to, and care of our own good name, (Prov 22:1).

Neo. And what does the Lord in this commandment require of us for the maintenance of our neighbour's good name?

Evan. For the maintenance of our neighbour's good name, in this commandment is required a charitable opinion and estimation of others, (1 Cor 13:7); and so also is a desire of, and rejoicing in the good name of others, (Rom 1:8, Gal 1:24); and so also is sorrowing and grieving for their infirmities, (Psa 119:136); and so also is the covering of others' infirmities in love, (Prov 17:9, 1 Peter 4:8); and so also is the hoping and judging the best of others, (1 Cor 13:5-7); and so is the admonishing of others before we bewray their faults, (Prov 25:9); and so also is speaking of the truth from our heart simply and plainly, upon any just occasion, (Psa 15:2, Zech 7:16); and so also is the giving of sound and seasonable reproofs for known faults, in love and with wisdom, (Lev 19:17); and so also is the praising and commending of those that do well, (Rev 2:23); and so also is the defending of the good name of others, if need so require. And thus have I also endeavoured to satisfy your desires concerning the ninth commandment: and now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you, tell me whether you think you keep it perfectly or not.

Nom. The truth is, sir, I did conceive that nothing tended to the breaking of this commandment, but falsely charging some ill upon another before some magistrate, or in some open court of justice: and that, thank God, I am not guilty of.

Evan. Though you have not been guilty of that, yet, if you have contemned or thought too basely of any person, or have had wrongful suspicions, or evil surmisings concerning them, or have rashly and unjustly judged and condemned them, or if you have foolishly admired them, or unjustly revived the memory of any forgotten crime, or have given them any flattering speeches, or have been a tale-bearer, or a backbiter, or a slanderer, or a listener to tale-bearers, you have borne false witness against your neighbour, and so have been guilty of the breach of this commandment.

Or if you have not had a charitable opinion of others, or have not desired and rejoiced in the good name of others, or have not sorrowed and grieved for their sinful infirmities, or have not covered them in love, or have not hoped and judged the best of them, or have not admonished them before you had discovered their faults to others, or have not given to others sound and seasonable reproof, or have not praised them that do well, then have you also been guilty of false witness-bearing against your neighbour, and so have transgressed this

commandment. And though you never have done any of these things, and it is strange if you have not, yet if you have had too high a conceit of yourself, or have after a proud humble manner unjustly accused yourself, or have procured yourself an evil name, by walking indiscreetly and offensively, or have excused any fault by way of lying, then have you borne false witness against yourself, and thereby have transgressed this commandment.

Neo. I beseech you, sir, proceed to speak of the last commandment as you have done of the rest.

COMMANDMENT X.

Evan. Well, then, I pray you consider, that in the tenth commandment there is a negative part expressed in these words, "Thou shalt not covet," &c.: that is, thou shalt not inwardly think on, nor long after, that which belongs to another, though it be without consent of will, or purpose of heart to seek after it; and an affirmative part included in these words, "But thou shalt be well contented with thine own outward condition, and heartily desire the good of thy neighbours." Neo. Well, sir, I pray you, begin with the negative part; and first tell us what the Lord forbids in this commandment.

Evan. I pray you take notice, and consider, that this tenth commandment was given to be a rule and level, according to the which we must take and measure our inward obedience to all the other commandments contained in the second table of God's law. For the Lawgiver having, in the rest of the commandments, dealt with those sins especially which stand in deeds, and are done of purpose, or with an advised consent of will, although there is no doubt but that the law of restraining concupiscence is implied and included in all the former commandments; now, last of all, in this last commandment deals with those sins which are called only concupiscences, and do contain all inward stirring and conceit in the understanding and affections against every commandment of the law, and are, as it were, rivers boiling out of the fountain of that original sin; for to covet, in this place, signifies to have a motion of the heart without any settled consent of will. Briefly, then, in this commandment is forbidden, not only the evil act and evil thought settled, and with full and deliberate consent of will, as in the former commandments, but here also is forbidden the very first motions and inclinations to every evil that is forbidden in any of the former commandments, as it is evident, ([Rom 7:7](#), [13:9](#)); for it is not said in this commandment, Thou shalt not consent to lust, but "Thou shalt not lust." It does not only command the binding of lust, but it also forbids the being of lust; which being so, who sees not that in this commandment is contained the perfect obedience to the whole law? for how comes it to pass, that we sin against every commandment, but because this corrupt concupiscence is in us, without which we should of our own accord, with our whole mind and body, be apt to do only good without any thought or desire at all to the contrary? And this is all I have to say touching the negative part of this commandment.

Neo. Well, then, sir, I pray you to proceed to the affirmative, and tell us what the Lord requires in this commandment.

Evan. Why, original justice or righteousness is required in this commandment,

which is a disposition and an inclination and a desire to perform unto God, and to our neighbour, for God's sake, all the duties which are contained both in the first and second table of the law; whence it does evidently appear, that it is not sufficient, though we forbear the evil, and do the good which is contained in every commandment, except we do it readily and willingly, and for the Lord's sake. As for example, to give you a few instances, it is not sufficient though we abstain from making images, or worshipping God by an image; no, though we perform all the parts of his true worship, as praying, reading, hearing, receiving the sacraments, and the like, if we do it unwillingly or in obedience to any law or commandment of man, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though we abstain from the works of our callings on the Lord's day, and perform never so many religious exercises, if it be unwillingly, and for form and custom's sake, or in mere obedience to any superior, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a child show never so much honour, love, and respect to his parents, if he do it by constraint and unwillingly, or to gain the praise of men, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a servant do his duty, and carry himself never so well, if it be for fear of correction, or for his own profit and gain, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a wife carry herself never so dutifully and respectfully towards her husband, both in word and deed, if it be unwillingly, for fear of his frowns, or to gain the applause of them that behold it, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a husband show much love and respect to his wife, if it be because she is amiable or profitable, or to gain the praise of men, and not for the Lord's sake. In a word, it is not sufficient, though any man or woman do all their duties, in all their relations, if they do them merely for their own sake, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a man abstain from killing, yea, and from striking, if it be for fear of the law, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though he bridle his anger, and abstain from expressing any wrath, if it be because he would be counted a patient man, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a man visit the sick, clothe the naked, feed the hungry, or in never so many ways seek to preserve the life of his neighbour, if it be for the praise of men, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though a man abstain from committing adultery, if it be for fear of the shame or punishment that will follow, and not for the Lord's sake. Nor though we also abstain from idleness, gluttony, and drunkenness, if it be for our own gain's sake, and not for the Lord's sake. Neither is it sufficient though we abstain from stealing, and labour diligently in our callings, if it be for the fear of shame or punishment, or for the praise of men. Neither is it sufficient though we have abstained from false

witness-bearing, and have spoken the truth, if it have been for fear of shame, or merely to do our neighbour a courtesy, and not because the Lord requires it. Thus might I have instanced in divers other particulars, wherein, though we have done that which is required, and avoided that which is forbidden, yet if it have been for our own ends, in any of the particulars before mentioned; yea, or if it have been merely or chiefly to escape hell and to obtain heaven, and not for the love we bear to God, and for the desire we have to please him, we have therein transgressed the Lord's commandments. And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you consider, whether you have gone near to the keeping of all the commandments perfectly or no.

Nom. But, sir, are you sure that the Lord requires that every man should keep all the ten commandments according as you have now expounded them?

THE USE OF THE LAW.

Evan. Yea, indeed he does; and if you make any question of it, I pray you, consider further, that one asking our Saviour, which is the "great commandment in the law?" he answered, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This," says he, "is the first and great commandment; and the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself," ([Matt 22:37-39](#)).

Whereupon, says a famous spiritual expositor, "God will have the whole heart"; all the powers of our souls must be bent towards him, he will have himself to be acknowledged and reckoned as our sovereign and supreme good; our love to him must be perfect and absolute: he requires, that there be not found in us the least thought, inclination, or appetite of anything which may displease him; and that we direct all our actions to this very end, that he alone may be glorified by us; and that for the love we bear unto God, we must do well unto our neighbour, according to the commandments of God. Consider, also, I pray you, that it is said, ([Deut 27:26](#), [Gal 3:10](#)), "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them." Now, if you do consider these things well, you shall perceive that the Lord requires that every man do keep all the ten commandments perfectly, according as I have expounded them, and concludes all those under the curse that do not so keep them.

Nom. Surely, sir, you did mistake in saying that the Lord requires that every man do keep all the ten commandments perfectly; for I suppose you would have said, the Lord requires that every man do endeavour to keep them perfectly.

Evan. No, neighbour Nomologista, I did not mistake, for I say it again, that the Lord requires of every man perfect obedience to all the ten commandments, and concludes all those under the curse that do not yield it; for it is not said, Cursed is every man that does not endeavour to continue in all things, but "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things," &c.

Nom. But, sir, do you think that any man continues in all things, as you have expounded them?

Evan. No, no; it is impossible that any man should.

Nom. And, sir, what is it to be under the curse?

Evan. To be under the curse, as Luther and Perkins do well agree, is to be under sin, the wrath of God, and everlasting death.

Nom. But, sir, I pray you, how can this stand with the justice of God, to require man to do that which is impossible, and yet to conclude him under the curse for not doing it?

Evan. You shall perceive that it does well stand with the justice of God, to deal so with man, if you do consider, that this law of God, or these ten commandments, which we have now expounded, are, as Ursinus' Catechism truly says, "A doctrine agreeing with the eternal and immortal wisdom and justice that is in God"; wherein, says Calvin, "God hath so painted out his own nature, that it doth in a manner express the very image of God." And we read, ([Gen 1:27](#)), that man at the first was created in the image or likeness of God; whence it must needs follow that this law was written in his heart, that is to say, God did engrave in man's heart such wisdom and knowledge of his will and works, and such integrity in his soul, and such a fitness in all the powers thereof, that his mind was able to conceive, and his heart was able to desire, and his body was able to put in execution, anything that was acceptable to God; so that in very deed he was able to keep all the ten commandments perfectly.

And, therefore, though God do require of man impossible things, yet is he not unjust, neither does he injure us in so doing, because he commanded them when they were possible, and though we have now lost our ability of performance, yet it being by our voluntary falling from the state of innocence in which we were at first created, God has not lost his right of requiring that of us which he once gave us.

Nom. But, sir, you know it was our first parents only that did fall away from God in eating the forbidden fruit, and none of their posterity; how then can it be truly said, that we have lost that power through our own default?

Evan. For answer to this, I pray you consider, that Adam, by God's appointment, was not to stand or fall as a single person only, but as a common public person, representing all mankind which were to come of him; and therefore, as in case of he had been obedient, and not eaten the forbidden fruit, he had retained and kept that power which he had by creation, as well for all mankind, as for himself; even so by his disobedience in eating that forbidden fruit, he was disrobed of God's image, and so lost that power, as well for all mankind as for himself.

Nom. Why then, sir, it should seem that all mankind are under sin, wrath, and eternal death!

Evan. Yea, indeed by nature they are so, "For we know," says the apostle, "that whatsoever the law saith, it saith to them that are under the law, that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God," ([Rom 3:19](#)); and again, says he, "We have proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin," ([Rom 3:9](#)). And in another place he says, "We were by nature children of wrath as well as others," ([Eph 2:3](#)); and, lastly, he says, "So death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned," ([Rom 5:12](#)).

Nom. But, sir, I pray you, tell me whether you think that any regenerate man keeps the commandments perfectly, according as you have expounded them.

Evan. No, not the most sanctified man in the world.

Nom. Why then, sir, it should seem, that not only natural men, but regenerate men also, are under the curse of the law. For if every one that keepeth not the law perfectly be concluded under the curse, and if regenerate men do not keep the law perfectly, then they also must needs be under the curse.

Evan. The conclusion of your argument is not true; for if by regenerate men you mean true believers, then they have fulfilled the law perfectly in Christ, or rather Christ has perfectly fulfilled the law in them, and was made a curse for them, and so has redeemed them from the curse of the law, as you may see, ([Gal 3:13](#)).

Nom. Well, sir, now do I understand you, and have ever been of your judgment in that point, for I have ever concluded this, that either a man himself, or Christ for him, must keep the law perfectly, or else God will not accept of him, and therefore have I endeavoured to do the best I could to keep the law perfectly, and wherein I have failed and come short, I have believed that Christ has done it for me.

Evan. The apostle says, ([Gal 3:10](#)), "So many as are of the works of the law, are under the curse." And truly, neighbour Nomologista, if I may speak it without offence, I fear me you are still of the works of the law, and therefore still under the curse.

Nom. Why, sir, I pray you, what is it to be of the works of the law?

Evan. To be of the works of the law, is for a man to look for, or hope to be justified or accepted in the sight of God, for his own obedience to the law.

Nom. But surely, sir, I never did so; for though by reason of my being ignorant of what is required and forbidden in every commandment, I had a conceit that I came very near the perfect fulfilling of the law, yet I never thought I did do all things that are contained therein; and therefore I never looked for, nor hoped that God would accept me for mine own obedience, without Christ's being joined with it.

Evan. Then it seems that you did conceive, that your obedience and Christ's obedience must be joined together, and so God would accept you for that.

Nom. Yea, indeed, sir, there has been my hope, and indeed there is still my hope.

Evan. Aye, but neighbour Nomologista, as I told my neighbour Neophytus and others not long since, so I tell you now, that as the justice of God requires a perfect obedience, so does it require that this perfect obedience be a personal obedience, that is, it must be the obedience of one person only. The obedience of two must not be put together to make up a perfect obedience: and indeed, to say

as the thing is, God will have none to have a hand in the justification and salvation of any man, but Christ only; for, says the apostle Peter, ([Acts 4:12](#)), "Neither is there salvation in any other, for there is none other name under heaven given among men whereby we may be saved." Believe it then, I beseech you, that Christ Jesus will either be a whole Saviour, or no Saviour; he will either save you alone, or not save you at all.

Nom. But, sir, if man's obedience to the law do not help to procure his justification and acceptance with God, then why did God give the law to the Israelites upon Mount Sinai, and why is it read and expounded by you that are ministers? I would gladly know of what use it is.

Evan. The apostle says, ([Gal 3:19](#)), "That the law was added because of transgression." That is, as Luther expounds it, "That transgressions might increase and be more known, and seen"; or as Perkins expounds it, "For the revealing of sin, and the punishment thereof; for by the law comes the knowledge of sin," as the same apostle says, ([Rom 3:20](#)); and therefore when the children of Israel conceived that they were righteous, and could keep all God's commandments perfectly, as it is manifested by their saying, ([Exo 19:8](#)), "All that the Lord commandeth we will do, and be obedient," the Lord gave them this law, to the intent they might see how far short they came of yielding that obedience which is therein required, and so, consequently, how sinful they were. And just so did our Saviour also deal with the young expounder of the law, ([Matt 19:16](#)), who, it seems, was sick of the same disease, "Good Master," says he, "what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?" "He does not," says Calvin, "simply ask, which way, or by what means he should come to eternal life, but what good he should do to get it." Whereby it appears, that he was a proud justiciary, one that swelled in fleshly opinion that he could keep the law, and be saved by it; therefore he is worthily sent to the law to work himself weary, and to see his need to come to Christ for remedy.

Now then, if you would know of what use the law is, why first let me tell you, it is of special use to all such as have a conceit that they themselves can do anything for the procuring of their own justification and acceptation in the sight of God; to let them see, as in a glass, that in that case they can do nothing. And, therefore, seeing that you yourself have such a conceit, I beseech you, labour to make that use of it, that so you may be hereby quite driven out of yourself unto Jesus Christ.

Nom. Believe me, sir, I should be glad I could make such a good use of it, and, therefore, I pray you, give me some directions how I may do it.

Evan. Why, first of all, I would desire you to consider, that in regard that all

mankind were at first created in such an estate as I have declared unto you, the law and justice of God requires that the man who undertakes, by his obedience, to procure his justification and acceptation in the sight of God, either in whole, or in part, be as completely furnished with the habit of righteousness and true holiness, and as free from all corruption of nature, as Adam was in the state of innocency, that so there may not be the least corruption mingled with any of those good actions which he does, nor the least motion of heart or inclination of will towards any of those evil actions which he does not do.

Secondly, I would desire you to consider, that neither you nor any man else, whilst you live upon the earth, shall be so furnished with perfect righteousness and true holiness, nor so free from all corruptions of nature, as Adam was in the state of innocency; so that no good action which you do shall be free from having some corruption mingled with it: nor any evil action which you do not do, free from some motion of heart or inclination of will towards it; and that therefore you can do nothing towards the procuring of your justification and acceptation in the sight of God; the which the prophet David well considering, cries out, ([Psa 143:2](#)) "Enter not into judgment with thy servant, O Lord! for in thy sight shall not man living be justified." Yea, and this made the apostle cry out, "Oh wretched man that I am, who shall deliver me from the body of this death"! ([Rom 7:24](#)). Yea, and this made him desire to be found in Christ, not having his own righteousness which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, ([Phil 3:9](#)).

Nom. But, sir, I am persuaded there be some good actions which I do, that are free from having any corruption at all mixed with them; and some evil actions which I do not do, towards the which I have no motion of heart, or inclination of will at all.

Evan. Surely, neighbour Nomologista, you do not truly know yourself, for I am confident, that any man who truly knows himself, sees such secret corruptions of heart in every duty he performs, as causes him unfeignedly to confess, that whatever good action he does, it is but a polluted stream of a more corrupt fountain. And whatsoever you or any man else do conceive of yourselves, it is most certain, that whatsoever sin is forbidden in the word, or has been practised in the world, that sin every man carries in his bosom, for all have equally sinned in Adam, and therefore original lust is equally in all.

Nom. Sir, I can hardly be persuaded to this.

Evan. Well, neighbour Nomologista, I cannot so well tell how it is with you, but for mine own part, I tell you truly, I find my knowledge corrupted and defiled with ignorance and blindness, and my faith corrupted and defiled with doubting and distrust, and my love to God very much corrupted and defiled with sinful

self-love and love to the world; and my joy in God much corrupted and defiled with carnal joy; and my godly sorrow very much corrupted and defiled with worldly sorrow.

And I find my prayers, my hearing, my reading, my receiving the sacrament, and such like duties, very much corrupted and defiled with dullness, drowsiness, sleepiness, wandering, and worldly thoughts, and the like.

And I find my sanctifying of the Lord's name very much corrupted and defiled, by thinking and speaking lightly and irreverently of his titles; and by thinking, if not by speaking, grudgingly against some acts of his providence.

And I find my sanctifying of the Lord's day very much corrupted and defiled, by sleeping too long in the morning, and by worldly thoughts and words, if not by worldly works.

And I find that all the duties that I have performed, either towards my superiors or inferiors, have been corrupted and defiled, either with too much indulgence, or with too much severity, or with base fears, or base hopes, or some self-end and by-respect.

And I find that all my duties that I have performed, either for the preservation of mine own or other's life, chastity, goods, or good name, have been very much corrupted and defiled, either with a desire of mine own praise, own profit here, or to escape hell, and to obtain heaven hereafter; so that I see no good action which I have ever done free from having some corruption mixed with it.

And as for motion of heart, and inclination of will towards that evil which I have not done, it is also manifest, for though I have not been guilty of idolatry, either in making or worshipping of images, yet have I not been free from carnal imaginations of God in the time of his worship nor from will-worship.

And though I have not been so guilty of profaning the name of the Lord after such a gross manner as some others have been, yet have I not been free from an inclination of heart, and disposition of will thereunto; for I have both thought and spoken irreverently both of his titles, attributes, word, and works, yea, and many times do so to this day.

And though I do not now so grossly profane the Lord's day, as it may be others have done, and do still, yet have I formerly done it grossly, yea, and do still, find an inward disposition of heart, and inclination of will, both to omit those duties which tend to the sanctifying of it, and to do those worldly actions which tend to the profanation of it.

And though when I was a child and young, I did not so grossly dishonour and disobey my parents and other superiors, as some others did, yet I had an inclination of heart and disposition of will thereunto, as it was manifest by my

stubbornness, and by not yielding of willing obedience to their commands nor submitting patiently to their reproofs and corrections.

And though it may be, I have done more of my duty to my inferiors than some others have done, yet have I found an inclination of heart, and a disposition of will, many times to omit those duties which I have performed, so that I have as it were, been fain to constrain myself to do that which I have done.

And though I have not been guilty of the gross act of murder, yet have I had, and have still an inclination of heart and disposition of will thereunto, in that I have been, and am still, many times subject to rash, unadvised, and excessive anger; yea, I have been and still am divers times wrathful and envious towards others that offend me.

And though I never was guilty of the foul and gross act of fornication or adultery, yet have I had an inclination of heart, and disposition of will thereunto, in that I have not been free from filthy imaginations, unchaste thoughts, and inward motions and desire to uncleanness.

And though I was never guilty of the gross act of stealing, yet have I had an inclination of heart, and a disposition of will thereunto, in that I have neither been free from discontentedness with mine own estate, nor from covetous desire after that which belongs to another.

And though I never did bear false witness against any man, yet have I had an inclination of heart and disposition of will thereunto, in that I have not been free from contemning, despising, and thinking too basely of others; neither have I been free from evil surmisings, groundless suspicions, and rash judging of others.

And now, neighbour Nomologista, I pray you tell me whether you do think that some of these corruptions are in you, which you hear are in me.

Nom. Yea, believe me, sir, I must needs confess that some of them are.

Evan. Well, though you have but only one of them in you, yet I pray you consider, that you do hereby transgress one of the ten commandments; and the apostle James says, that "Whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all," ([James 2:10](#)). And call to mind, I also pray you, that a curse is denounced against all those that continue not in "all things which are written in the book of the law to do them." Mind it, I pray you, "that doth not continue in all things": so that although you could for a time do all that the law requires, and avoid all that it forbids, and that never so exactly, yet if you do not continue so doing, but transgress the law once in all your life, and that only in one thought, you are thereby become subject to the curse, which, as you have heard, is eternal damnation in hell.

Nay, let me tell you more, although you never yet had transgressed the law in all

your life hitherto, not so much as in the least thought, nor ever should do whilst you live, yet should you thereby become far short of the perfect fulfilling of the law, and so consequently of your justification and acceptation in the sight of God. Nom. That is very strange to me, sir, for what can be required more, or what can be done more, than yielding of perfect and perpetual obedience?

Evan. That is true indeed; there is no more required, neither can there be more done; but yet you must understand, that the law does as well require passive obedience as active, suffering as well as doing; for our common bond entered into for us all, by God's benefits towards the first man, is by his disobedience become forfeited, both in respect of himself and all mankind; and, therefore, ever since the fall of man, the law and justice of God does not only require the payment of the debt, but also of the forfeiture; there is not only required of him perfect doing, but also perfect suffering. "In the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt die the death," says the Lord, ([Gen 2:17](#)). Nay, let me tell you yet more; in order of justice, the forfeiture ought to be paid before the debt; perfect suffering should go before perfect doing, because all mankind, by reason of that first and great transgression, are at odds and enmity with God; they are all of them children of his wrath, and therefore God, as we may speak with holy reverence, cannot be reconciled unto any man, before a full satisfaction be made to his justice by a perfect suffering, ([Col 1:21](#)): perfect suffering, then, is required for the reconciling of man unto God, ([Eph 2:3](#)), and setting him in the same condition he was in before his fall, and perfect doing is required for the keeping of him in that condition.

Nom. And, sir, is man as unable to pay the forfeiture as he is to pay the debt? I mean, is he as unable to suffer perfectly, as to do perfectly?

Evan. Yea, indeed, every whit as unable; forasmuch as man's sin in eating of the forbidden fruit was committed against God, and God is infinite and eternal, and the offence is always multiplied according to the dignity of the person against whom it is committed: man's offence must needs be an infinite offence, and the punishment must needs be proportionable to the fault; therefore an infinite and eternal punishment is required at man's hands, or else such a temporal punishment, as is equal and answerable to eternal. Now, eternal punishment man cannot sustain, because then he should never be delivered—he should ever be satisfying, and never have satisfied; which satisfaction is such as is the punishment of the devils and damned men in hell, which never shall have an end. And for temporal punishment, which should be equivalent to eternal, that cannot be neither, because the power and vigour of no creature is such that it may sustain a finite and temporal punishment, equivalent to an infinite and eternal; for

sooner should the creature be wasted, consumed, and brought to nothing, than it could satisfy the justice of God by this means; wherefore we may certainly conclude, that no man can satisfy the law and justice of God, either by active or by passive obedience, and so consequently no man shall be justified and accepted in the sight of God by his own doings or sufferings.

Nom. Sir, I see it clearly, and am therein fully convinced, and I hope I shall make that use of it. But, sir, is there no other use to be made of the law than this?

Evan. Yea, neighbour Nomologista, you must not only labour thereby to see your own insufficiency to procure your own justification and acceptation in the sight of God, though that indeed be the chief use that any unjustified person ought to endeavour to make of it, but you must also endeavour to make it a rule of direction to you in your life and conversation.

Nom. But, sir, if I cannot by my obedience to the law do anything towards the procuring of mine own justification, and acceptation in the sight of God, or, which as I do conceive is all one, if I can do nothing towards the procuring of mine own eternal salvation, then methinks all that I do should be in vain, for I cannot see any good I shall get thereby.

Evan. No, neighbour Nomologista, it shall not be in vain; for though you cannot by your obedience to the law, do any thing towards the procuring of your own justification or eternal salvation; yea, and though you should never make such a use of it, as to be thereby driven out of yourself unto Jesus Christ for justification and eternal salvation, but should be everlastingly condemned; yet, this let me tell you, the more obedience you yield unto the law, the more easy shall your condemnation be; for although no man, walk he ever so exactly and strictly according to the law, shall thereby either escape the torments of hell, or obtain the joys of heaven, yet the more exactly and strictly any man walks according to the law, the easier shall his torments be, ([Matt 11:22](#)). So that although you by your obedience to the law cannot obtain the uneasiest place in heaven, yet may you thereby obtain the most easy place in hell: and therefore your obedience shall not be in vain. Nay, let me tell you more, although you by your obedience to the law can neither escape that hell, nor enjoy that heaven that is in the world to come, yet you may thereby escape that hell, and enjoy that heaven which is to be had in this present world; for the Lord dealeth so equally and justly with all men, that every man shall be sure to receive his due at his hands; so that as every man who is truly justified in the sight of God, by faith in Christ's blood, shall for that blood's sake be sure of the joys of heaven, though his life may even after his believing be in many respects unconformable to the law; yet the more unconformable his life is thereunto, the more crosses and afflictions he shall be

sure to meet withal in this life, ([Psa 89:30-32](#)). Even so, though no man that is not justified by faith in Christ's blood shall either escape the torments of hell, or attain the joys of heaven, be his life never so conformable to the law, yet the more conformable his life is thereunto, the less of the miseries and the more of the blessings of this life he shall have; for it is not to men unjustified, though I suppose not only to them that the Lord speaketh, ([Isa 1:19](#)), saying, "If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good things of the land." And does not the Lord in the fifth commandment promise the blessing of long life to all inferiors that are obedient to their superiors? And may we not observe, and is it not found true by experience, that those children who are most careful of doing their duties to their parents, are commonly more free both from their parents' corrections and the Lord's corrections; and are likewise blessed with obedient children themselves, and do also taste of their parents' bounty and the Lord's bounty, as touching the blessings of this life, more than others that are disobedient? And may we not observe, and is it not found true by experience, that those servants that are most faithful and diligent in their places are commonly more free either from the Lord's or their masters' corrections, and are likewise rewarded with such servants themselves, and with other temporal blessings both from their masters and from the Lord, than others that are not so? And may we not observe, and is it not found true by experience, that those wives that are obedient and subject to their husbands, are commonly more free from their frowns, checks, and rebukes; at least they are more blessed with peace of conscience and a good name amongst men, than others that are not so? And may we not observe, that our mere honest men, who for the most part live without committing any gross sin against the law, are commonly more exempted from the sword of the magistrate, and have many earthly blessings more in abundance than such as are gross sinners? And the Scribes and Pharisees, who were strict observers of the law, in regard of the outward man, were no losers by it, "Verily," says our Saviour, "I say unto you, they have their reward," ([Matt 6:2](#)). So that still, you see, your obedience to the law shall not be in vain; wherefore, I pray you, do your best to keep the ten commandments as perfectly as you can. But above all, I beseech you, be careful to consider of that which has been said touching the special use of the law to you, that so through the powerful working of God's Spirit, it may become an effectual means to drive you out of yourself unto Jesus Christ.

Oh, consider, in the first place, what a great number of duties are required and what a great number of sins are forbidden in every one of the ten commandments! And in the second place, consider, how many of those duties you have omitted, and how many of those sins you have committed. And in the

third place, consider, that there has been much corruption mixed with every good duty which you have done, so that you have sinned in doing that which in itself is good; and that you have had an inclination of heart and disposition of will to every sin you have not committed, and so have been guilty of all those sins which you have not done. And in the fourth place, consider, that the law denounceth a curse unto every one which continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. And then, in the fifth place, make application of the curse unto yourself, by saying in your heart, if every one be cursed which continueth not in all things, then surely I am cursed that have continued in nothing. And then, in the sixth place, consider, that before you can be delivered from the curse, the law and justice of God requires that there be a perfect satisfaction made both by paying the debt and the forfeiture to the very utmost farthing; perfect doing and perfect suffering are both of them required. And then, in the last place, consider, that you are so far from being able to make a perfect satisfaction, that you can do nothing at all towards it, and that therefore, as of yourself, you are in a most miserable and helpless condition.

Nom. Well, sir, I do now plainly see that I have been deceived, for I verily thought that the only reason why the Lord gave the law, and why you that are ministers do show us what is required and forbidden in the law, had been, that all men might thereby come to see what the mind and will of the Lord is, and be exhorted, and persuaded to lead their lives thereafter. And I also verily thought that the more any man did strive and endeavour to reform his life and do thereafter, the more he procured the love and favour of God towards him, and the more God would bless him, and do him good, both in this world and in the world to come; yea, and I also verily thought, that it had been in the man's power to have come very near the perfect fulfilling of the law, for I never read nor heard any minister show how impossible it is for any man to keep the law, nor ever make any mention of any such use of the law, as you have done this day.

Evan. Surely, neighbour Nomologista, these have not only been your thoughts, but also the thoughts of many other men; for it is natural for every man to think that he must and can procure God's favour and eternal happiness by his obedience to the law, at the least to think he can do something towards it; for naturally men think that the law requires no more but the external act, and that therefore it is in man's power to keep it perfectly. Is it not an ordinary and common thing for men when they hear or read that there is more required and forbidden in the law than they were aware of, to think with themselves, Surely, I am not right, I have transgressed the law more than I had thought I had done, and therefore God is more angry with me than I had thought he had been; and

therefore to pacify his anger, and procure his favour towards me, I must repent, amend, and do better; I must reform my life according to the law, and so by my future obedience make amends for my former disobedience? And if thereupon they do attain to any good measure of outward conformity, then they think they come near the perfect fulfilling of the law; and if it were not that the doctrine of the Church of England is, that no man can fulfil the law perfectly, and that none but Papists do say the contrary, they would both think and say they did, or hoped they should keep all the commandments perfectly. And upon occasions of this their outward reformation according to the law, they think, yea, and sometimes say, they are regenerate men and true converts, and that the beginning of this their reformation was the time of their new birth and conversion unto God. And if these men do confess themselves to be sinners, it is rather because they hear all others confess themselves so to be, than out of any true sight and knowledge, sense, or feeling they have of any inward heart-corruption. And if they do acknowledge, that a man is not to be justified by the works of the law, but by faith in Christ, it is rather because they have heard it so preached or because they have read it so in the Bible, or some other book, than because of any imperfection which they see in their own works, or any need they see of the righteousness of Jesus Christ. And if they do see any imperfection in their own works, and any need of the righteousness of Jesus Christ, then they imagine that so long as their hearts are upright and sincere, and they do desire and endeavour to do their best to fulfil the law, God will accept of what they do, and make up their imperfect obedience with Christ's perfect obedience, and so will justify and save them; but all this while, their own works must have a hand in their justification and salvation, and so they are still of the works of the law, and therefore under the curse. The Lord be merciful both to you and them, and bring you under the blessing of Abraham!

Nom. Sir, I thank you for your good wishes towards me, and for your great pains which you have now taken with me and so I will for this time take my leave of you; only, I could wish, if it might not be too much trouble to you, that you would be pleased at your leisure, to give me in writing a copy of what you have this day said concerning the law.

Evan. Well, neighbour Nomologista, though I can hardly spare so much time, yet because you do desire it, and in hope you may receive good by it, I will, ere long, find some time to accomplish your desire.

Neo. I pray you, neighbour Nomologista, tarry a little longer, and I will go with you.

Nom. No, I must needs be gone; I can stay no longer.

Evan. Then fare you well, neighbour Nomologista, and the Lord make you to see your sins!

Nom. The Lord be with you, sir.

Neo. Well, sir, now I hope you have fully convinced him that he comes far short of keeping all the commandments perfectly: I hope he will no longer be so well conceited of his own righteousness as he has formerly been. But now, sir, I pray you tell me before I depart, whether you would have me to endeavour to make the same use of the law, which you have advised him to make.

Evan. No, neighbour Neophytus, I look not upon you as an unbeliever, as I did upon him, but I look upon you as one who has already been by the law driven out of yourself unto Jesus Christ; I look upon you as a true believer, and as a person already justified in the sight of God, by faith in Christ, and so as one who are neither to question your inheritance in heaven, nor fear your portion in hell. And therefore I will not persuade you to labour to yield obedience to the law, by telling you, that the more obedient you are thereunto, the easier torments you shall have in hell, as I did him; neither would I have you to make application of the curse of the law

"Oh"! says the Lord, "that my people had hearkened unto me, and Israel had walked in my ways! he should soon have fed them with the finest of wheat, and with honey out of the rock should I have satisfied thee." Besides, the more obedience you yield unto the ten commandments, the more glory you will bring to God, according to that of our Saviour, ([John 15:8](#)), "Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit." To conclude, the more obedience you yield unto the ten commandments, the more good you will do unto others, according to that of the apostle, ([Titus 3:8](#)), "This is a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they which have believed in Christ might be careful to maintain good works; these things are good and profitable unto men."

Neo. But, sir, what if I should not purpose, desire, and endeavour to yield obedience to all the ten commandments, as you say the Lord requires; what then?

Evan. Why, then, although it is true you have no cause to fear that God will proceed against you, as a wrathful judge proceeds against a malefactor, yet have you cause to fear that he will proceed against you as a displeased father does against an offending child; that is to say, although you have no cause to fear that he will unjustify you, and unson you, and deprive you of your heavenly inheritance, and inflict the penalty of the law of works upon you, and so condemn you, for says the apostle, "There is no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus," ([Rom 8:1](#)); yet have you cause to fear that he will hide his fatherly face, and withdraw the light of his countenance from you; and that your conscience will

be ever accusing and disquieting of you, which if it do, then will you draw back, and be afraid to ask anything of God in prayer; for even as a child whose conscience tells him that he has angered and displeased his father, will be unwilling to come into his father's presence, especially to ask of him anything that he wants, even so it will be with you; and besides, you shall be sure to be whipped and scourged with many bodily and temporal chastisements and corrections, according to that which is said concerning Jesus Christ and his seed, even true believers, and justified persons, (*Psa 89:31-33*), "If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; if they break my statutes, and walk not in my commandments, then will I visit their transgressions with the rod, and their iniquities with stripes. Nevertheless, my loving kindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail."

Wherefore, neighbour Neophytus, to apply these things a little more closely to you, and so to conclude, let me exhort you, when you come home, call to mind and consider of every commandment according as you have heard them this day expounded, and resolve to endeavour yourself to do thereafter; and always take notice how and wherein you fall and come short of doing what is required, and of avoiding what is forbidden; and especially be careful to do this when you are called to humble yourself before the Lord in fasting and prayer, and upon occasion of going to receive the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, and so shall you make a right use of the law.

Neo. And, sir, why would you have me more especially to take notice of my sins, when I am called to humble myself before the Lord in fasting and prayer?

Evan. Because the more sinful you see yourself to be, the more humble will your heart be; and the more humble your heart is, the more fit you will be to pray, and the more the Lord will regard your prayers: wherefore, when upon occasion of some heavy and sore affliction, either felt, or feared to come upon yourself, or someone sore judgment and calamity either felt, or feared to come upon the nation or place where you live, the Lord calls you to humble yourself in fasting and prayer, then do you thereupon take occasion to meditate, and consider seriously what duties are required, and what sins are forbidden in every one of the ten commandments, and then consider how many of those duties you have omitted, and how many of those sins you have committed; consider also the sinful manner of performing those duties you have performed, and the base and sinful ends which you have had in the performance of them; consider also how many sinful corruptions there are in our heart, which break not forth in our life, and the disposition of heart which you have naturally to every sin which you do not commit; and then consider, that although the sins which you do now commit

are not a transgression of the law of works, because you are not now under the law, ([Rom 6:14](#)); yet are they a transgression of the law of Christ, because you still are under that law, ([1 Cor 9:31](#)); and though they be not committed against God as standing in relation to you as a wrathful Judge, yet have they been committed against him as he stands in relation to you as a merciful loving Father; and though they subject you not to the wrath of a Judge, nor to the penalty of the law of works, yet they subject you to the anger and displeasure of a loving Father, and to the penalty of the law of Christ.

Whereupon, do you draw near to God by prayer, saying unto him after this manner:

"O merciful and loving Father! I do acknowledge that the sins which I did commit before I was a believer, were a transgression of the law of works, because I was then under that law; yea, and that they were committed against thee, as thou stoodest in relation to me as a judge, and that therefore thou mightest most justly have inflicted the curse or penalty of the law of works upon me, and so have cast me into hell; but seeing that thou hast enabled me to believe the gospel, viz: that thou hast been pleased to give thine own Son Jesus Christ to undertake for me, to become my Surety, to take my nature upon him, and to be made under the law, to redeem me from under the law, ([Gal 4:4](#), [3:13](#), [Rom 5:10](#)); and to be made a curse for me, to redeem me from the curse, and to reconcile me unto thee by his death; now I know it stands not with thy justice to proceed against me by virtue of the law of works, and so cast me into hell. Nevertheless, Father, I know that the sins which I have committed since I did believe have been a transgression of the law of Christ, because I am still under that law: yea, and I do acknowledge, that they have been committed against thee, even against thee, my most gracious, merciful, and loving Father in Jesus Christ, and that it is therefore meet thou shouldst express thy fatherly anger and displeasure towards me, for these sins which thy law has discovered unto me, in bringing this affliction upon me, or this judgment upon the place or nation wherein I live: howbeit, Father, I, knowing that thy fatherly anger towards thy children is never mixed with hatred, but always with love, and that in afflicting of them thou never intendedst any satisfaction to thine own justice, but their amendment, even the purging out of the remainder of those sinful corruptions which are still in them, and the conforming of them to thine own image; I therefore come unto thee this day, to humble myself before thee, and to call upon thy name, not for any need, or power that I do conceive I have to satisfy thy justice, or to appease thy eternal wrath, and to free my soul from hell; for that I do believe Christ has fully done for me already; but I do it in hopes thereby to pacify thy fatherly anger and displeasure towards

me, and to obtain the removal of this affliction or judgment which I feel or fear; wherefore I beseech thee to pardon and forgive these my sins, which have been the procuring cause thereof; yea, I pray thee not only to pardon them, but also to purge them, that so this may be all the fruit, even the taking away of sin, and making me partaker of thy holiness; and then, Lord, remove this affliction and judgment when thy will and pleasure is."

And thus have I showed you the reason why I would have you more especially to take notice of your sins, when you come to humble yourself before the Lord in fasting and prayer.

Neo. And, sir, why would you have me to take notice of my sins, upon occasion of my going to receive the sacrament of the Lord's Supper?

Evan. Because the more sinful you see yourself to be, the more need you will see yourself to have of Christ; and the more need you see yourself to have of Christ, the more will you prize him; and the more you prize Christ, the more you will desire him; and the more you do desire Christ, the more fit and worthy receiver you will be.

Wherefore, when you are determined to receive the sacrament, then take occasion to examine yourself as the apostle exhorts you, behold the face of your soul in the glass of the law, lay your heart and life to that rule, as I directed you before; then think with yourself and commune with your own heart, saying in your heart after this manner, "Though I do believe that all these my sins are for Christ's sake freely and fully pardoned and forgiven, so as that I shall never be condemned for them, yet do I not so fully and comfortably believe it as I ought, but am sometimes apt to question it: and besides, though my sins have not dominion over me, yet I feel them too prevalent in me, and I would fain have more power and strength against them; I would fain have my graces stronger and my corruptions weaker; wherefore I, knowing that Christ in the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, seals up unto me the assurance of the pardon and forgiveness of all my sins; yea, and knowing that the death and bloodshed of Jesus Christ, which is there represented, has in it both a pardoning and purging virtue; yea, and knowing that the more fully I do apprehend Christ by faith, the more strength of grace, and power against corruptions I shall feel:—wherefore I will go to partake of that ordinance, in hope that I shall there meet with Jesus Christ, and apprehend him more fully by faith, and so obtain both more assurances of the pardon of my sins, and the more power and strength against them"; which the Lord grant you for Christ's sake. And thus having also showed you the reason why I would have you more especially to take notice of your sins before you come to receive the sacrament of the Lord's Supper, I will now take my leave of you, for my other

occasions do call me away.

Neo. Well, sir, I do acknowledge, that you have taken great pains both with my neighbour and me this day, for the which I do give you many thanks. And yet I must entreat you to do the like courtesy for me which you promised my neighbour Nomologista, and that is, at your leisure, to write me out a copy of the conference we have had this day.

Evan. Well, neighbour Neophytus, I shall think of it, and it may be, accomplish your desire. And so the God of peace be with you.

Neo. The Lord be with you, sir.

THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE LAW AND THE GOSPEL.

There is little more in all this, viz: "The Marrow," to be attributed to me than the very gathering and composing of it. That which I aim at, and intend therein, is to show unto myself and others that shall read it, the difference betwixt the law and the gospel,—a point, as I conceive, very needful for us to be well instructed in, and that for these reasons:—

First, Because, if we be ignorant thereof, we shall be very apt to mix and mingle them together, and so to confound the one with the other; which, as Luther on the Galatians, p. 31, truly says, "doth more mischief than man's reason can conceive"; and therefore he doth advise all Christians, in the case of justification, to separate the law and the gospel as far asunder as heaven and earth are separated.

Secondly, Because if we know right how to distinguish betwixt them, the knowledge thereof will afford us no small light towards the true understanding of the Scripture, and will help us to reconcile all such places, both in the Old and New Testament, as seem to be repugnant; yea, and it will help us to judge aright of cases of conscience, and quiet our own conscience in time of trouble and distress; yea, and we shall thereby be enabled to try the truth and falsehood of all doctrines; wherefore, for our better instruction on this point, we are first of all to consider and take notice what the law is, and what the gospel is.

Now, the law is a doctrine partly known by nature, teaching us that there is a God, and what God is, and what he requires us to do, binding all reasonable creatures to perfect obedience, both internal and external, promising the favour of God, and everlasting life to all those who yield perfect obedience thereunto, and denouncing the curse of God and everlasting damnation to all those who are not perfectly correspondent thereunto.

But the gospel is a doctrine revealed from heaven by the Son of God, presently after the fall of mankind into sin and death, and afterwards manifested more clearly and fully to the patriarchs and prophets, to the evangelists and apostles, and by them spread abroad to others; wherein freedom from sin, from the curse of the law, the wrath of God, death, and hell, is freely promised for Christ's sake unto all who truly believe on his name.

Thirdly, We are to consider what the nature and office of the law is, and what the nature and office of the gospel is.

Now, the nature and office of the law is to show unto us our sin, ([Rom 3:10](#)), our condemnation, our death, ([Rom 2:1, 7:10](#)). But the nature and office of the gospel is to show unto us, that Christ has taken away our sin, ([John 1:29](#)), and that he

also is our redemption and life, ([Col 1:14](#), [3:4](#)). So that the LAW is a word of wrath, ([Rom 4:14](#)); but the GOSPEL is a word of peace, ([Eph 2:17](#)).

Fourthly, We are to consider where we may find the law written, and where we may find the gospel written.

Now, we shall find this law and this gospel written and recorded in the writings of the prophets, evangelists, and apostles, namely, in the books called the Old and New Testament, or the Scriptures. For, indeed, the law and the gospel are the chief general heads which comprehend all the doctrine of the Scriptures; yet we are not to think that these two doctrines are to be distinguished by the books and leaves of the Scriptures, but by the diversity of God's Spirit speaking in them: we are not to take and understand whatsoever is contained in the compass of the Old Testament, to be only and merely the word and voice of the law; neither are we to think that whatsoever is contained within the compass of the books called the New Testament, is only and merely the voice of the gospel; for sometimes in the Old Testament, God does speak comfort, as he comforted Adam, with the voice of the gospel; sometimes also in the New Testament he does threaten and terrify, as when Christ terrified the Pharisees. In some places, again, Moses and the prophets do play the evangelists; insomuch that Hierom doubts whether he should call Isaiah a prophet or an evangelist. In some places, likewise, Christ and the apostles supply the part of Moses: Christ himself, until his death, was under the law, which law he came not to break, but to fulfil; so his sermons made to the Jews, for the most part, run all upon the perfect doctrine and works of the law, showing and teaching what we ought to do by the right law of justice, and what danger ensues in the non-performance of the same. All which places, though they be contained in the book of the New Testament, yet are they to be referred to the doctrine of the law, ever having included in them a privy exception of repentance and faith in Jesus Christ. As for example, where Christ thus preaches, "Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God," ([Matt 5:8](#)). Again, "Except ye be converted and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven," ([Matt 18:3](#)). And again, "He that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven," ([Matt 7:21](#)). And again, the parable of the wicked servant, cast into prison for not forgiving his fellow, ([Matt 18:30](#)); the casting of the rich glutton into hell, ([Luke 16:23](#)). And again, "He that denieth me before men, I will deny him before my Father which is in heaven," ([Luke 12:9](#)); with divers such other places, all which, I say, do appertain to the doctrine of the law.

Wherefore, in the fifth place, we are to take heed, when we read the Scriptures, we do not take the gospel for the law, nor the law for the gospel, but labour to

discern and distinguish the voice of the one from the voice of the other; and if we would know when the law speaks, and when the gospel speaks, let us consider and take this for a note, that when in Scripture there is any moral work commanded to be done, either for eschewing of punishment, or upon promise of any reward, temporal or eternal—or else when any promise is made with the condition of any work to be done, which is commanded in the law—there is to be understood the voice of the law.

Contrariwise, where the promise of life and salvation is offered unto us freely, without any condition of any law, either natural, ceremonial, or moral, or any work done by us, all those places, whether we read them in the Old Testament, or in the New, are to be referred to the voice and doctrine of the gospel; yea, and all those promises of Christ coming in the flesh, which we read in the Old Testament; yea, and all those promises in the New Testament, which offer Christ upon condition of our believing on his name, are properly called the voice of the gospel, because they have no condition of our mortifying annexed unto them, but only faith to apprehend and receive Jesus Christ; as it is written, ([Rom 3:22](#)), "For the righteousness of God, which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all, and upon all that believe," &c.

Briefly, then, if we would know when the law speaks, and when the gospel speaks, either in reading the word, or in hearing it preached; and if we would skillfully distinguish the voice of the one from the voice of the other, we must consider:—

Law. The law says, "Thou art a sinner, and therefore thou shalt be damned," ([Rom 7:2](#), [2 Thess 2:12](#)).

Gos. But the gospel says, No; "Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners"; and therefore, "believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, ([1 Tim 1:15](#), [Acts 16:31](#)).

Law. Again the law says, "Knowest thou not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God; be not deceived," &c. ([1 Cor 6:9](#)). And therefore thou being a sinner, and not righteous, shalt not inherit the kingdom of God.

Gos. But the gospel says, "God has made Christ to be sin for thee who knew no sin; that thou mightest be made the righteousness of God in him, who is the Lord thy righteousness," ([Jer 23:6](#)).

Law. Again the law says, "Pay me what thou owest me, or else I will cast thee into prison," ([Matt 18:28,30](#)).

Gos. But the gospel says, "Christ gave himself a ransom for thee," ([1 Tim 2:6](#)); "and so is made redemption unto thee," ([1 Cor 1:30](#)).

Law. Again the law says, "Thou hast not continued in all that I require of thee,

and therefore thou art accursed," ([Deut 27:6](#)).

Gos. But the gospel says, "Christ hath redeemed thee from the curse of the law, being made a curse for thee," ([Gal 3:13](#)).

Law. Again the law says, "Thou are become guilty before God, and therefore shalt not escape the judgment of God," ([Rom 3:19, 2:3](#)).

Gos. But the gospel says, "The Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment to the Son," ([John 5:12](#)).

And now, knowing rightly how to distinguish between the law and the gospel, we must, in the sixth place, take heed that we break not the orders between these two in applying the law where the gospel is to be applied, either to ourselves or to others; for albeit the law and gospel, in order of doctrine, are many times to be joined together, yet in the case of justification, the law must be utterly separated from the gospel.

Therefore, whensoever, or wheresoever, any doubt or question arises of salvation, or our justification before God, there the law and all good works must be utterly excluded and stand apart, that grace may appear free, and that the promise and faith may stand alone: which faith alone, without law or works, brings thee in particular to thy justification and salvation, through the mere promise and free grace of God in Christ; so that I say, in the action and office of justification, both law and works are to be utterly excluded and exempted, as things which have nothing to do in that behalf. The reason is this: for seeing that all our redemption springs out from the body of the Son of God, crucified, then is there nothing that can stand us in stead, but that only wherewith the body of Christ is apprehended. Now, forasmuch as neither the law nor works, but faith only, is the thing which apprehendeth the body and passion of Christ, therefore faith only is that matter which justifies a man before God, through the strength of that object Jesus Christ, which it apprehends; like as the brazen serpent was the object only of the Israelites' looking, and not of their hands' working; by the strength of which object, through the promise of God, immediately proceeded health to the beholders: so the body of Christ being the object of our faith, strikes righteousness to our souls, not through working, but through believing.

Wherefore, when any person or persons, do feel themselves oppressed or terrified with the burden of their sins, and feel themselves with the majesty of the law and judgment of God terrified and oppressed, outweighed and thrown down into utter discomfort, almost to the pit of hell, as happens sometimes to God's own dear servants, who have soft and timorous consciences; when such souls, I say, do read or hear any such place of Scripture which appertains to the law, let them, then, think and assure themselves that such places do not appertain or belong to

them; nay, let not such only who are thus deeply humbled and terrified do this, but also let every one that does but make any doubt or question of their own salvation, through the sight and sense of their sin, do the like.

And to this end and purpose, let them consider and mark well the end why the law was given, which was not to bring us to salvation, nor to make us good, and so to procure God's love and favour towards us: but rather to declare and convict our wickedness, and make us feel the danger thereof; to this end and purpose, that we seeing our condemnation, and being in ourselves confounded, may be driven thereby to have our refuge in the Son of God, in whom alone is to be found our remedy. And when this is wrought in us, then the law has accomplished its end in us; and therefore it is now to give place unto Jesus Christ, who, as the apostle says, "is the end of the law," ([Rom 10:3](#)). Let every true convicted person, then, who fears the wrath of God, death, and hell, when they hear or read any such places of Scripture as do appertain to the law, not think the same to belong to them, no more than a mourning weed belongs to a marriage feast; and therefore, removing utterly out of their minds all cogitations of the law, all fear of judgment and condemnation, let them only set before their eyes the gospel, viz: the glad and joyful tidings of Christ, the sweet comforts of God's promises, free forgiveness of sins in Christ, grace, redemption, liberty, psalms, thanks, singing, a paradise of spiritual jocundity, and nothing else; thinking thus within themselves, the law hath now done its office in me, and therefore must now give place to its better; that is, it must needs give place to Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who is my Lord and Master, the fulfiller and accomplisher of the law.

Lastly, As we must take heed and beware that we apply not the law where the gospel is to be applied, so must we also take heed and beware that we apply not the gospel where the law is to be applied. Let us not apply the gospel instead of the law; for, as before, the other was even as much as to put on a mourning-gown at a marriage feast, so this is but even the casting of pearls before swine, wherein is great abuse amongst many; for commonly it is seen, that these proud, self-conceited, and unhumbled persons, these worldly epicures and secure mammonists, to whom the doctrine of the law does properly appertain, do yet notwithstanding put it away from them, and bless themselves with the sweet promises of the gospel, saying, "They hope they have as good a share in Christ as the best of them all, for God is merciful and the like." And contrariwise, the other contrite and bruised hearts, to whom belongs not the law, but the joyful tidings of the gospel, for the most part receive and apply to themselves the terrible voice and sentence of the law. Whereby it comes to pass, that many do rejoice when

they should mourn; and on the other side, many do fear and mourn when they should rejoice. Wherefore, to conclude, in private use of life, let every person discreetly discern between the law and the gospel, and apply to himself that which belongs to him. Let the man or the woman, who did never yet to any purpose [especially in the time of health and prosperity] think of, or consider their latter end, that did never yet fear the wrath of God, nor death, nor devil, nor hell, but have lived, and do still live a jocund and merry life; let them apply the curse of the law to themselves, for to them it belongs: yea, and let all your civil honest men and women, who, it may be, do sometimes think of their latter end, and have had some kind of fear of the wrath of God, death, and hell, in their hearts, and yet have salved up the sore, with a plaster made of their own civil righteousness, with a salve compounded of their outward conformity to the duties contained in the law, their freedom from gross sins, and their upright and just dealing with men; let these hearken to the voice of the law, when it says, "Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them"; but let all self-denying, fearful, trembling souls, apply the gracious and sweet promises of God in Christ unto themselves, and rejoice because their names are written in the Book of Life.

APPENDIX.

THE OCCASION OF THE "MARROW" CONTROVERSY, STATED BY
THE LATE REV. JOHN BROWN, OF HADDINGTON.

While the Church of Scotland was clear and exact in her standards, and many of her preachers truly evangelical, a flood of legal doctrine filled many pulpits about the time of the Revolution.

The Arminian errors of Professor Simpson were also prevalent after this time; but the Assembly used him with great tenderness. However, they were far from being equally kind to such as earnestly endeavoured a clear illustration of the doctrines of God's free grace reigning through the righteousness of Christ. Mr. Hamilton of Airth having published a catechetical treatise concerning the covenant of works and grace, and the sacraments of baptism and the Lord's Supper, in a more evangelical strain than some wished, the Assembly, 1710, prohibited all ministers or members of this church to print, or disperse in writ, any catechism, without the allowance of the Presbytery of the bounds, or the Commission. The Presbytery of Auchterarder having begun to require candidates for licence, to acknowledge it unsound to teach that men must forsake their sins in order to come to Christ, the Assembly, 1717, on the same day they had dealt so gently with Professor Simpson, declared their abhorrence of that proposition as unsound and most detestable—as if men ought only to come to Christ, the alone Saviour from sins, after they have got rid of them by repentance. Mr. James Hog, one of the holiest ministers in the kingdom, having published or recommended a celebrated and edifying tract of the Cromwellian age, called *The Marrow Modern Divinity*, the Assembly, 1720, fell upon it with great fury, as if it had been replete with Antinomian errors, though it is believed many of these zealots never read it, at least had never perused it, in connection with the Second Part of it, which is wholly taken up in the manifestation of the obligation, meaning, and advantage of observing the law of God. They condemned the offering of Christ, as a Saviour to all men, or to sinners as such, and the doctrine of believers' full deliverance from under the law as a broken covenant of works. They asserted men's holiness to be a federal or conditional mean of their obtaining eternal happiness. They condemned these almost express declarations of Scripture, that believers are not under the law,—that they do not commit sin,—that the Lord sees no sin in them, and cannot be angry with them, as Antinomian paradoxes,—and condemned the distinction of the moral law as a covenant of works, and as a binding rule of duty in the hand of Christ. In order to explain these expressions, Messrs. James Hog, Thomas Boston, Ebenezer and Ralph Erskines, Gabriel Watson, and seven others, remonstrated to the next Assembly against these decisions as injurious to

the doctrine of God's grace. And in their answers to the Commission's Twelve Queries, they illustrated these doctrines with no small clearness and evidence. Perhaps influenced by this, as well as by the wide spread detestation of their acts [1720] on that point, the Assembly, 1722, reconsidered the same, and made an act explaining and confirming them. This was less gross and erroneous. Nevertheless, the twelve representers protested against it as injurious to truth; but this protest was not allowed to be marked. The Moderator, by the Assembly's appointment, rebuked them for their reflections on the Assembly, 1720, in their representation, and admonished them to beware of the like in all time coming; against which they protested.

QUERIES AGREED UNTO BY THE COMMISSION OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, AND PUT TO THOSE MINISTERS WHO GAVE IN A REPRESENTATION AND PETITION AGAINST THE 5TH AND 8TH ACTS OF ASSEMBLY 1720, WITH THE ANSWERS GIVEN BY THESE MINISTERS TO THE SAID QUERIES.³⁷⁸

Adhering to and holding, as here repeated, our subscribed Answer given in to the Reverend Commission, when by them called to receive these Queries, we come to adventure, under the conduct of the faithful and true Witness, who has promised the Spirit of truth to lead his people into truth, to make answer to the said Queries. To which, before we proceed, we crave leave to represent, that the title thereto prefixed, viz: "Queries to be put to Mr. James Hog, and other Ministers, who gave in a Representation in Favours of the Marrow, to the General Assembly, 1721," as well as that prefixed to the Commission's overture anent this affair, has a native tendency to divert and bemist the reader, to expose us, and to turn the matter off its proper hinge, by giving a wrong colour to our Representation, as if the chief design of it was to plead, not for the precious truths of the gospel, which we conceive to be wounded by the condemnatory act, but for "The Marrow of Modern Divinity," the which, though we value for a good and useful book, and doubt not but the Church of God may be much edified by it, as we ourselves have been, yet came it never into our minds to hold it, or any other private writing, faultless, nor to put it on a level with our approved standards of doctrine.

QUERY. I.—Whether are there any precepts in the gospel that were not actually given before the gospel was revealed?

378 "A masterly production," says the judicious Mr. Fraser, of Kennoway, "which has undergone many impressions, and which discusses the points at issue with a perspicuity and energy that has commanded the esteem and admiration of Mr. James Hervey, and many others who had no immediate concern in the controversy."

Answer.—The passages in our representation, marked out to us for the grounds of this query, are these:—"The gospel doctrine, known only by a new revelation after the fall. Of the same dismal tendency we apprehend to be the declaring of that distinction of the law, as it is the law of works, and as it is the law of Christ, as the author applies it, to be altogether groundless. The erroneous doctrine of justification, for something wrought in, or done by the sinner, as his righteousness, or keeping the new and gospel law." Now, leaving it to others to judge if these passages gave any just occasion to this question, we answer,—
1st, In the gospel, taken strictly, and as contradistinct from the law, for a doctrine of grace, or good news from heaven, or help in God through Jesus Christ, to lost self-destroying creatures of Adam's race, or the glad tidings of a Saviour, with life and salvation in him to the chief of sinners, there are no precepts; all these, the command to believe, and repent, not excepted, belonging to, and flowing from the law, which fastens the new duty on us, the same moment the gospel reveals the new object.

That in the gospel, taken strictly, there are no precepts, to us seems evident from the holy Scriptures. In the first revelation of it, made in these words,—*"The seed of the woman shall bruise the head of the serpent,"* we find no precept, but a promise containing glad tidings of a Saviour, with grace, mercy, life, and salvation in him, to lost sinners of Adam's family. And the gospel preached unto Abraham, namely, *"In thee,"* i.e., in thy seed, which is in Christ, *"shall all nations be blessed,"* is of the same nature. The good tidings of great joy to all people of a Saviour born in the city of David, who is Christ the Lord, brought and proclaimed from heaven by the angels, we take to have been the gospel, strictly and properly so called; yet is there no precept in these tidings. We find, likewise, the gospel of peace and glad tidings of good things are in Scripture convertible terms; and the word of the gospel, which Peter spoke to the Gentiles, that they might believe, was no other than peace by Jesus Christ, crucified, risen, and exalted to be Judge of quick and dead, with remission of sins through his name, to be received by every one believing in him. Much more might be added on this head, which, that we be not tedious, we pass. Of the same mind, as to this point, we find the body of reformed divines, as to instance in a few, Calvin, Chamier, Pemble, Wendelin, Alting, the professors of Leyden, Witsius, Maestrick, Maresius, Troughton, Essenius.

That all precepts, [those of faith and repentance not excepted,] belong to, and are of the law, is no less evident to us; for the law of creation, or of the ten commandments, which was given to Adam in paradise, in the form of a covenant of works, requiring us to believe whatever God should reveal or promise, and to

obey whatever he should command; all precepts whatsoever must be virtually and really included in it. So that there never was, nor can be, an instance of duty owing by the creature to God, not commanded in the moral law, if not directly and expressly, yet indirectly, and by consequence. The same first commandment, for instance, which requires us to take the Lord for our God, to acknowledge his essential verity, and sovereign authority; to love, fear, and trust in Jehovah, after what manner soever he shall be pleased to reveal himself to us, and likewise to grieve and mourn for his dishonour or displeasure, requires believing in Jehovah, our righteousness, as soon as ever he is revealed to us as such, and sorrowing after a godly sort for the transgression of his holy law, whether by one's self or by others. It is true, Adam was not actually obliged to believe in a Saviour, till, being lost and undone, a Saviour was revealed to him; but the same commandment that bound him to trust and depend on, and to believe the promises of God Creator, no doubt obliged him to believe in God Redeemer, when revealed. Nor was Adam obliged to sorrow for sin ere it was committed. But this same law that bound him to have a sense of the evil of sin in its nature and effects, to hate, loathe, and flee from sin, and to resolve against it, and for all holy obedience, and to have a due apprehension of the goodness of God, obliged him also to mourn for it, whenever it should fall out. And we cannot see how the contrary doctrine is consistent with the perfection of the law; for if the law be a complete rule of all moral, internal and spiritual, as well as external and ritual obedience, it must require faith and repentance, as well as it does all other good works. And that it does indeed require them, we can have no doubt of, when we consider, that without them all other religious performances are, in God's account, as good as nothing; and that sin being, as the Scripture and our own standard tell us, any want of conformity to, or transgression of the law of God, unbelief and impenitency must be so too. And if they be so, then must faith and repentance be obedience and conformity of the same law, which the former are a transgression of, or an inconformity unto; unbelief particularly being a departing from the living God, is, for certain, forbidden in the first commandment, therefore faith must needs be required in the same commandment, according to a known rule. But what need we more, after our Lord has told us, that faith is one of the weightier matters of the law? and that it is not a second table duty which is there meant, is evident to us, by comparing the parallel place in Luke, where, in place of faith, we have the love of God. As for repentance, in case of sin against God, it becomes naturally a duty; and though neither the covenant of works nor of grace admitted of it, as any expiation of sin, or federal condition giving right to life, it is a duty included in every commandment, on the supposal of a transgression.

What moves us to be the more concerned for this point of doctrine is, that if the law does not bind sinners to believe and repent, then we see not how faith and repentance, considered as works, are excluded from our justification before God, since in that case they are not works of the law, under which character all works are in Scripture excluded from the use of justifying in the sight of God. And we can call to mind that, on the contrary doctrine, Arminius laid the foundation of his rotten principles, touching sufficient grace, or rather natural power. "Adam," says he, "had not power to believe in Jesus Christ, because he needed him not; nor was he bound to believe, because the law required it not. Therefore, since Adam by his fall did not lose it, God is bound to give every man power to believe in Jesus Christ." And Socinians, Arminians, Papists, and Baxterians, by holding the gospel to be a new, proper, preceptive law, with sanction, and thereby turning it into a real, though milder covenant of works, have confounded the law and the gospel, and brought works into the matter and cause of a sinner's justification before God. And, we reckon, we are the rather called to be on our guard here, that the clause in our representation, making mention of the new, or gospel law, is marked out to us, as one of the grounds of this query, which we own to be somewhat alarming. Besides all this, the teaching that faith and repentance are gospel commandments, may yet again open the door to Antinomianism, as it sometimes did already, if we may believe Mr. Cross, who says, "History tells us that it sprung from such a mistake, that faith and repentance were taught and commanded by the gospel only, and that as they contained all necessary to salvation, so the law was needless."

On this head also, namely, that all precepts belong to the law, we might likewise adduce a cloud of witnesses beyond exception, such as Pemble, Essenius, Anth, Burgess, Rutherford, Owen, Witsius, Dickson, Fergusson, Troughton, Larger Catechism on the duties required, and sins forbidden in the first commandment. But, without insisting further, we answer,—

2dly, In the gospel, taken largely for the whole doctrine of Christ and the apostles, contained in the New Testament, or for a system of all the promises, precepts, threatenings, doctrines, histories, that any way concern man's recovery and salvation, in which respect, not only all the ten commandments, but the doctrine of the covenant of works belong to it, but in this sense, the doctrine is not contradistinct from the law;—in the gospel, taken thus at large, we say, there are doubtless many precepts that were not actually given [that is, particularly and expressly promulgated or required] before the gospel was revealed. Love to our enemies, to instance in a few of many, mercy to the miserable, bearing of the cross, hope and joy in tribulations, in prospect of their having a desired issue,

love, thankfulness, prayer, and obedience to a God Redeemer, zealous witnessing against sin, and for truth, in case of defection from the faith or holiness of the gospel, confessing our faults to and forgiving one another. All the ceremonial precepts under the Old Testament together with the institutions of Christ under the New, faith in Jesus Christ, repentance unto life, with many more, to say nothing of personal and particular precepts, were not actually given before the gospel was revealed; all which are nevertheless reducible to the law of the ten commandments, many of them being plain duties of the law of nature, though they had no due and proper objects, nor occasions of being exercised in an innocent state. It is true, there are many of them we had never heard of, without the gospel had been revealed; yet are they not, therefore, in any proper sense, precepts of the gospel, but of the law, which is exceeding broad, extending to new objects, occasions, and circumstances. The law says one thing to the person unmarried, and another thing to the same person when married; one thing to him as a child, another thing to him as a parent, &c., yet is it the same law still. The law of God being perfect, and like unto its Author, must reach to every condition of the creature; but if for every new duty or new object of faith there behoved to be a new law, how strangely must laws be multiplied! The law itself [even as in the case of a man] may meet with any changes, and yet remain the same as to its essence. Now, as to faith and repentance, though ability to exercise them, and acceptance of them, be by the gospel, yet it is evident they must be regulated by the same law, the transgression of which made them necessary. The essence of repentance, it is plain, lies in repeating and renewing, with a suitable frame of spirit, the duties omitted, or in observing the law one had violated. For as the divine perfections are the rule and pattern of God's image in man, as well in his regeneration as in his creation, so the holy law of God is the rule of our repentance, as well as of our primitive obedience. And why faith, when it has God Mediator, or God Redeemer, for its object, may not be from the same law as when it had God Creator, or God Preserver for its objects, we cannot see.

QUERY II.—Is not the believer now bound, by the authority of the Creator, to personal obedience to the moral law, though not in order to justification?

Ans.—What is given us for the ground of this query, is the following clause of our representation, viz:—"Since believers are not under it, to be thereby justified or condemned, we cannot comprehend how it continues any longer a covenant of works to them, or as such to have a commanding power over them, that covenant form of it being done away in Christ with respect to believers." This clause of the representation being so much one, even in words, with our Confession, we could never have expected the Reverend Commission would have moved a query upon

it; but since they have been pleased to think otherwise, we answer affirmatively:—

The believer, since he ceases not to be a creature by being made a new creature, is, and must ever be bound to personal obedience to the law of the ten commandments, by the authority of Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, his Creator. But his authority is, as to him, issued by and from the Lord Jesus Christ, at whose mouth he receives the law, being as well his Lord God Creator, as his Lord God Redeemer, and having all the fullness of the Godhead dwelling in him; nor can nor will the sinful creature ever apply himself to obedience acceptable to God, or comfortable to himself, without the Creator's authority come to him in that channel.

We are clear and full of the same mind with our Confession, that the moral law of the ten commandments does for ever bind all, as well justified persons as others, to the obedience thereof, not only in regard of the matter contained in it, but also in respect of the authority of God the Creator who gave it, and that Christ does not in the gospel any way dissolve, but much strengthen this obligation; for how can it lose anything of its original authority, by being conveyed to the believer in such a sweet and blessed channel as the hand of Christ, since both he himself is the supreme God and Creator, and since the authority, majesty, and sovereignty of the Father is in his Son, he being the same in substance, equal in power and glory? "Beware of Him," says the Lord unto Israel, concerning Christ the angel of the covenant, "and obey his voice, provoke him not: for my name is in him." That is, as we understand it, my authority, sovereignty, and other adorable excellencies, yea the whole fullness of the Godhead is in him, and in him only will I be served and obeyed. And then it follows, "But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak." The name of the Father is so in him; he is so of the same nature with his Father, that his voice is the Father's voice: "If thou obey his voice, and do all that I speak."

We desire to think and speak honourably of Him, whose name is "Wonderful, Counsellor, the Mighty God, the Everlasting Father, and the Prince of Peace." And it cannot but exceedingly grate our ears, and grieve our spirits, to find such doctrines or positions vented in this Church, especially at a time when the Arian heresy is so prevalent in our neighbour nations, as have an obvious tendency to darken and disparage his divine glory and authority, as that, if a believer ought not to receive the law of the ten commandments at the hand of God, as he is Creator out of Christ, then he is not under its obligation, as it was delivered by God the Creator, but is loosed from all obedience to it, as it was enacted by the authority of the Lord Creator; and that it is injurious to the infinite majesty of the Sovereign

Lord Creator, and to the honour of his holy law, to restrict the believer to receive the ten commandments only at the hand of Christ. What can be more injurious to the infinite majesty of the sovereign Lord Redeemer; by whom all things were created that are in heaven and in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones or dominions, principalities or powers, than to speak as if the Creator's authority was not in him, or as if the receiving the Creator's law from Christ did loose men from obedience to it, as enacted by the authority of the Father? Woe unto us, if this doctrine be the truth, for so should we be brought back to consuming fire indeed; for, out of Christ, "He that made us will have no mercy upon us; nor will he that formed us show us any favour." We humbly conceive, the Father does not reckon himself glorified, but contemned by Christians offering obedience to him as Creator out of Christ. Nor does the offering to deal with him after this sort, or to teach others so, discover a due regard to the mystery of Christ revealed in the gospel; for it is the will of the Father, the Sovereign Lord Creator, that all men should honour the Son, even as they honour himself; and that at, or in the name of Jesus every knee should bow; and that every tongue should confess Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father, who having in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, by whom also he made the worlds, and with an audible voice from heaven has said, "This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased hear ye him." Were it not we would be thought tedious, Perkins, Durham, Owen, and others, might have been heard on this head. But we proceed to—

QUERY III.—Doth the annexing of a promise of life, and a threatening of death to a precept, make it a covenant of works?

We answer, as in our representation, That the promise of life, and threatening of death, superadded to the law of the Creator, made it a covenant of works to our first parents, proposed; and their own consent, which sinless creatures could not refuse, made it a covenant of works accepted. "A law," say the judicious Durham, "doth necessarily imply no more than, first, to direct; secondly, to command, enforcing that obedience by authority. A covenant doth further necessarily imply promises made upon some conditions, or threatenings added if such a condition be not performed. Now, says he, this law may be considered without the consideration of a covenant; for it was free to God to have added or not to have added promises; and the threatenings, upon supposition the law had been kept, might never have taken effect." From whence it is plain, in the judgment of this great divine, the law of nature was turned into a covenant by the addition of a promise of life and threatening of death. Of the same mind is Burgess and the London ministers, *Vindicie Legis*, page 61. "There are only two

things which go to the essence of a law, and that is—1st, direction; 2d, obligation. First, direction: therefore a law is a rule: hence the law of God is compared to light. Second, obligation; for therein lieth the essence of sin that it breaketh this law, which supposes the obligatory force of it. In the next place, there are two consequents of the law, which are ad bene esse, that the law may be the better obeyed; and this indeed turneth the law into a covenant. First the sanction of it by way of promise; that is a mere free thing: God, by reason of that dominion which he had over man, might have commanded his obedience, and yet never made a promise of eternal life unto him. And, secondly, as for the other consequent act of the law, to curse and punish, this is but an accidental act, not necessary to a law, for it comes in upon supposition of transgression. A law is a complete law, obliging, though it do not actually curse; as in the confirmed angels it never laid any more than obligatory and mandatory acts upon them; for that they were under a law is plain, because otherwise they could not have sinned, for where there is no law, there is no transgression."

Though there is no ground from our representation to add more on this head, yet we may say, that a promise of life made to a precept of doing,—that is, in consideration or upon condition of one's doing, be the doing more or less, it is all one, the divine will in the precept being the rule in this case, is a covenant of works. And as to believers in Christ, though in the gospel, largely taken, we own there are promises of life, and threatenings of death, as well as precepts; and that godliness hath the promise, not only of this life, but of that which is to come, annexed to it, in the order of the covenant: yet we are clear no promise of life is made to the performance of precepts, nor eternal death threatened in case of their failings whatsoever in performing, else should their title to life be founded not entirely on Christ and his righteousness imputed to them, but on something in or done by themselves; and their after sins should again actually bring them under vindictive wrath and the curse of the law; which, upon their union with Christ who was made a curse for them, to redeem them from under it, they are, according to Scripture and our Confession, for ever delivered from. Hence we know of no sanction the law, standing in the covenant of grace hath with respect to believers besides gracious rewards, all of them freely promised on Christ's account for their encouragement in obedience, and fatherly chastisement and displeasure, in case of their not walking in his commandments; which to a believer are no less awful and much more powerful restraints from sin than the prospect of the curse and hell itself would be. The Reverend Commission will not, we hope, grudge to hear that eminent divine, Mr. Perkins, in a few words, on this head, who having put the objection, "In the gospel there are promises of life upon

condition of our obedience, as [Romans 8:13](#), 'If ye through the Spirit,'" &c.; answers, "The promises of the gospel are not made to the work, but to the worker; and to the worker, not for his work, but for Christ's sake according to his work: e.g., The promise of life is not made to the work of mortification, but to him that mortifies his flesh; and that not for his mortification, but because he is in Christ, and his mortification is the token and evidence thereof." This, as it is the Old Protestant doctrine, so we take it to be the truth. And as to the believer's total and final freedom from the curse of the law upon his union with Christ, Protestant divines, particularly Rutherford and Owen, throughout their writings, are full and clear on this head.

QUERY IV.—If the moral law, antecedent to its receiving the form of a covenant of works, had a threatening of hell annexed?

Ans.—Since the law of God never was, nor will ever in this world be the stated rule, either of man's duty towards God, or of God's dealing with man, but as it stands in one of the two covenants of works and grace, we are at a loss to discover the real usefulness of this query, as well as what foundation it has in our representation.

As to the intrinsical demerit of sin, we are clear, whether there had ever been any covenant of works or not, it deserves hell, even all that an infinitely holy and just God ever has or shall inflict for it; yet what behoved to have been the Creator's disposal of the creature, in the supposed event of sin's entering, without a covenant being made, we incline not here to dip into; but we reckon it is not possible to prove a threatening of hell to be inseparable from the law of creation, the obligation of which, because resulting from the nature of God, and of the creature, is eternal and immutable: for confirmed angels, glorified saints, yea, and the human nature of Christ, are all of them naturally, necessarily, and eternally obliged to love, obey, depend on, and submit unto God, and to make him their blessedness and ultimate end; but none, we conceive, will be peremptory in saying, they have a threatening of hell annexed to the law they are under. And we can by no means allow, that a believer, delivered by Christ from the covenant of works, is still obnoxious, upon every new transgression, to the threatening of hell, supposed to be inseparably annexed to the law of creation, or of the ten commandments; which law every reasonable creature must for ever be under, since this would, in effect, be no other than, after he is delivered from hell in one respect, to bind him over to it in another. Whatever threatening one may suppose belonged to the moral law of the ten commandments, antecedently to its receiving a covenant form, all was, for certain, included in the sanction of the covenant of works: so that Christ, in bearing the curse of it, redeemed believers from the hell,

vindictive wrath and curse, their sins in any sort deserved; the hand-writing that was against them he cancelled, tore to pieces, and nailed to his cross. Hence the threatening of hell and the curse are actually separated from the law of the ten commandments, which believers are under as a rule of life; and to hold otherwise is the leading error, yea, the very spring and fountain-head of Antinomianism; on all which, Burgess, Rutherford, and others, may be heard.

QUERY V.—If it be peculiar to believers to be free of the commanding power of the law, as a covenant of works?

Though our saying we cannot comprehend how the covenant of works, as such, continues to have a commanding power over believers, that covenant form of it being done away in Christ with respect to them, gives no sufficient foundation to this query, since we affirm nothing concerning any but believers, whose freedom from the commanding power of that covenant, the query seems, as much as we do, to allow of; we answer affirmatively: for, since it is only to believers the Spirit of God in Scripture says, "Ye are not under the law," the main import of which phrase is, subjection to the commanding power of it, as a covenant,— "but under grace"; and since they only are, by virtue of their union with Christ, actually freed from being under the law, by Christ's being made under it, i.e., under its command, as above, as well as under its curse for them; and since according to our Confession, it is the peculiar privilege of believers, which, therefore, believers have no interest in, not to be under the law as a covenant of works, to be justified or condemned thereby, we can allow no other, besides believers, to be invested with that immunity.

All unbelievers within, as well as without, the pale of the visible church, since they seek righteousness only by the works of the law, and are strangers to the covenant of grace, we always took to be debtors to the whole law, in their own persons. And this their obligation, under the DO, or commanding power of that covenant, we took to be inviolably firm, till such time as by faith they had recourse to him who is "the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth"; else we thought, and do still think, if their obligation to the command of that covenant be dissolved, merely by their living under an external gospel dispensation, they would be cast quite loose from being under any covenant at all, contrary to the common received doctrine of the Protestant churches, namely, that every person whatsoever is in and under one or other of the two covenants of works and grace; nor could they, unless they be under the commanding power of the covenant of works, be ever found transgressors of the law of that covenant, by any actual sin of their own, nor be bound over anew under the covenant-curse thereby.

The covenant of works, it is true, is, by the fall, weak and ineffectual, as a covenant, to give us life, by reason of our weakness and disability to fulfil it, being antecedently sinners, and obnoxious to its curse, which no person can be, and yet at the same time have a right unto its promise. Hence, for any to seek life and salvation by it now, is no other than to labour after an impossibility; yet does it nevertheless continue in full force, as a law requiring of all sinners, while they continue in their natural state, without taking hold, by faith, of Christ and the grace of the new covenant; requiring of them, we say, personal and absolutely perfect obedience, and threatening death upon every the least transgression. From the commanding power of which law, requiring universal holiness in such rigour, as that, on the least failure in substance, circumstance, or degree, all is rejected, and we are determined transgressors of the whole law; believers, and they only, are freed, as we said above. "But to suppose a person," says Dr. Owen, "by any means freed from the curse due unto sin, and then to deny that, upon the performance of the perfect sinless obedience which the law requires, he should have right to the promise of life thereby, is to deny the truth of God, and to reflect dishonour upon his justice. Our Lord himself was justified by the law; and it is immutably true, that he who does the things of it, shall live in them." "It is true," adds the same author, "that God did never formally and absolutely renew, or give again this law, as a covenant of works, a second time; nor was there any need that so he should do, unless it were declaratively only. And so it was renewed at Sinai; for the whole of it being an emanation of eternal right and truth, it abides, and must abide in full force for ever. Wherefore, it is only so far broken as a covenant, that all mankind having sinned against the command of it, and so by guilt, with the impotency to obedience, which ensued thereupon, defeated themselves of any interest in its promise, and possibility of attaining any such interest, they cannot have any benefit by it. But as to its power to oblige all mankind unto obedience, and the unchangeable truths of its promises and threatenings, it abides the same as it was from the beginning. The introducing of another covenant, [adds he again on the same head,] inconsistent with, and contrary to it, does not instantly free men from the law as a covenant; for, though a new law abrogates a former law inconsistent with it, and frees all from obedience, it is not so in a covenant, which operates not by sovereign authority, but becomes a covenant by consent of them with whom it is made. So there is no freedom from the old covenant, by the constitution of the new, till it be actually complied with. In Adam's covenant we must abide under obligation to duty and punishment, till by faith we be interested in the new."

From all which it appears to be no cogent reasoning to say, if the unbeliever be

under the commanding power of the covenant of works, then would he be under two opposite commands at once, viz: to seek a perfect righteousness in his own person, and to seek it also by faith in a surety; for, though the law requires of us now, both active and passive righteousness in our own persons, and likewise, upon the revelation of Jesus Christ in the gospel, as Jehovah our righteousness, obliges us to believe in and submit to him as such, yet, as it is in many other cases of duties, the law requires both these of us, not in sensu composito, as they say, but in sensu diviso. The law is content to sustain and hold for good the payment of a responsible surety, though itself provides none; and wills us, being insolvent of ourselves, cheerfully, thankfully, and without delay, to accept of the non-such favour offered unto us. But till the sinner, convinced of his undoneness otherwise, accept of, use, and plead that benefit in his own behalf, the law will, and does go on in its just demands and diligence against him. Having never had pleasure in the sinful creature, by reason of our unfaithfulness, it can easily admit of the marriage to another husband, upon a lawful divorce, after fair count and reckoning, and full satisfaction and reparation made for all the invasions upon, and violations of the first husband's honour; but, when the sinner, unwilling to hear of any such motion, still cleaves to the law, its first husband, what wonder the law, in that case, go on to use the sinner as he deserves? In short, this pretended absurdity, at worst, amounts to no more than this,—Make full payment yourself, or find me good and sufficient payment by a surety, till which time I will continue to proceed against you, without mitigation or mercy. Wherefore, the unbeliever is justly condemned by the law, both because he did not continue in all things written in the book of the law to do them, and because he did not believe on the name of the Son of God.

QUERY VI.—If a sinner, being justified, has all things at once that are necessary for salvation? And if personal holiness, and progress in holy obedience, is not necessary to a justified person's possession of glory, in case of his continuing in life after his justification?

Ans.—The ground of this query, marked out to us, is, in these words of holy Luther,—"For in Christ I have all things at once, neither need I anything more, that is necessary unto salvation." And to us it is evident, that this is the believer's plea, viz: Christ's most perfect obedience to the law, for him, in answer unto its demand of good works for obtaining salvation, according to the tenor of the first covenant, which plea the representation alleges to be cut off and condemned by the Act of Assembly, But, without saying any thing of the old Popish reflection on the doctrine of free justification by faith, without works, as it was taught by Luther and other reformers, or the hardship of having this question put to us, as if

we had given ground of being suspected for enemies to gospel holiness, which our consciences bear us witness, is our great desire to have advanced in ourselves and others, as being fully persuaded, that without it neither they nor we shall see the Lord; we answer to the first part of the query—

That, since a justified person, being passed from death to life, translated from the power of darkness into the kingdom of God's dear Son, and blest with all the spiritual blessings in Christ, is, by virtue of his union with him, brought into and secured in a state of salvation; and therefore, in the language of the Holy Ghost, actually, though not completely, saved already; and since, in him, he has particularly a most perfect, law-binding, and law-magnifying righteousness, redemption in his blood, even the forgiveness of sins, peace with God, access, acceptance, wisdom, sanctification, everlasting strength, and, in one word, an over-flowing, ever-flowing fullness, from which, according to the order of the covenant, he does, and shall receive whatever he wants; hence, according to the Scripture, in Christ all things are his and in him he is complete. Considering, we say, these things, we think a justified person has in Christ at once all things necessary to salvation, though of himself he has nothing.

To the second part of the query we answer, that personal holiness, and justification, being inseparable in the believer, we are unwilling, so much as the query does, to suppose their separation. Personal holiness we reckon so necessary to the possession of glory, or to a state of perfect holiness and happiness, as is the morning light to the noon-day warmth and brightness,—as is a reasonable soul to a wise, healthy, strong, and full grown man,—as an antecedent is to its consequent,—as a part is to the whole; for the difference betwixt a state of grace and of glory, we take to be gradual only, according to the usual saying, "Grace is glory begun, and glory grace in perfection." So necessary, again, as motion is to evidence life, or in order to walking, not only habitual, but actual holiness and progress in holy obedience, one continuing in life, we are clear, are so necessary, that without the same none can see the Lord. And as it is not only the believer's interest, but his necessary and indispensable duty, to be still going on "from strength to strength, until he appear before the Lord in Zion"; so the righteous, we believe, "will hold on his way, and he who is of clean hands will grow stronger and stronger": for though the believer's progress in holy obedience, by reason of the many stops, interruptions, and assaults he frequently meets with from Satan, the world, and in-dwelling corruption, is far from being alike at all times, yet "the path of the just," though he frequently fall, will be "as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day." Though he may, at times "become weary and faint in his mind," yet shall he, by waiting on the Lord, "renew his

strength, and mount up as with eagles' wings," &c. But still the believer has all this in and from Christ: for whence can our progress in holiness come, but from the supply of his Spirit? Our walking in holy obedience, and every good motion of ours, must be in him, and from him, who is the Way and the Life, who is our head of influences, and the fountain of our strength, and who "works in us both to will and to do." "Abide in me," says he, "and I in you. For without me ye can do nothing. If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered."

But if the meaning of the query be, of such a necessity of holy obedience, in order to the possession of glory, as imports any kind of causality, we dare not answer in the affirmative; for we cannot look on personal holiness, or good works, as properly federal and conditional means of obtaining the possession of heaven, though we own they are necessary to make us meet for it.

QUERY VII.—Is preaching the necessity of a holy life, in order to the obtaining of eternal happiness, of dangerous consequence to the doctrine of free grace?

Ans.—The last of the two clauses of the eighth act of Assembly, being complained of in the representation, is the first and main ground of this query. And ere we make answer to it, we crave leave to explain ourselves more fully as to the offence we conceive to be given by that act; namely, that, in opposition to, and in place of the believer's plea of Christ's active righteousness, in answer to the law, demanding good works, for obtaining salvation according to the tenor of the first covenant, cut off, as we apprehend, by the fifth act; ministers are ordered, in the eighth act, to preach the necessity of our own personal holiness, in order to the obtaining of everlasting happiness. As also, that our inherent holiness seems to be put too much on the same foot, in point of necessity, for obtaining everlasting happiness, with justification by the Surety; which the frame of the words, being as follows, will well admit, viz: "Of free justification through our blessed Surety, the Lord Jesus Christ, received by faith alone; and of the necessity of an holy life, in order to the obtaining of everlasting happiness." Moreover, that the great fundamental of justification is laid down in such general terms, as adversaries will easily agree to, without mention of the Surety's righteousness, active or passive, or the imputation of either; especially since a motion in open Assembly for adding the few, but momentous words,—imputed righteousness, was slighted. And, finally, that that act is so little adapted to the end it is now given out to have been designed for, viz:—a testimony to the supreme Godhead of our glorious God and Saviour Jesus Christ, and against Arianism, especially since not the least intimation or warning against that damnable heresy is to be found in the act itself,

nor was made to that Assembly, in passing of it.

To the query, we answer, that we cordially and sincerely own a holy life, or good works, necessary, as an acknowledgment of God's sovereignty, and in obedience to his command: for this is the will of God, even our sanctification; and, by a special ordination, he has appointed believers to walk in them: necessary, for glorifying God before the world, and showing the virtues of him who hath called us out of darkness into his marvellous light: necessary, as being the end of our election, our redemption, effectual calling, and regeneration; for "the Father chose us in Christ, before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy; the Son gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works"; and by the Holy Spirit are we created in Christ Jesus unto them: necessary, as expressions of our gratitude to our great Benefactor; for being bought with a price, we are no more our own, but henceforth, in a most peculiar manner bound, in our bodies and in our spirits, which are his, to glorify, and by all possible ways, to testify our thanksgiving to our Lord Redeemer and Ransomer; to him "who spared not his own Son, but gave him up to the death for us all"; to him "who humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross, for us": necessary, as being the design, not only of the world, but of all ordinances and providences; even that as he who has called us is holy, so we should be holy in all manner of conversation: necessary, again, for evidencing and confirming our faith, good works being the breath, the native offspring and issue of it: necessary, for making our calling and election sure; for they are, though no plea, yet a good evidence for heaven, or an argument confirming our assurance and hope of salvation: necessary, to the maintaining of inward peace and comfort, though not as the ground and foundation, yet as effects, fruits, and concomitants of faith: necessary, in order to our entertaining communion with God even in this life; for, "if we say we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth": necessary, to the escaping of judgments, and to the enjoyment of many promised blessings; particularly there is a necessity of order and method, that one be holy before he can be admitted to see and enjoy God in heaven; that being a disposing mean, preparing for the salvation of it, and the king's highway chalked out for the redeemed to walk into the city: necessary, to adorn the gospel and grace our holy calling and profession: necessary, further, for the edification, good, and comfort, of fellow-believers: necessary, to prevent offence, and to stop the mouths of the wicked; to win likewise the unbelieving, and to commend Christ and his ways to the consciences: necessary, finally, for the establishment, security, and glory of churches and nations. Though we firmly believe holiness necessary upon all these

and more accounts, and that the Christian ought to live in the continued exercise of gospel repentance, which is one main constituent of gospel holiness, yet we dare not say a holy life is necessary in order to the obtaining of eternal happiness; for, to say nothing of the more gross sense of these words, [manifestly injurious to the free grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, by faith in whose righteousness alone we are appointed to obtain salvation, from first to last,] which yet is obvious enough, though we are far from imputing it to the Assembly; we cannot, however they may be explained into an orthodox meaning, look upon them as wholesome words, since they have at least an appearance of evil, being such a way of expression as Protestant churches and divines, knowing the strong natural bias in all men towards seeking salvation, not by faith in our Lord Jesus Christ, but by works of righteousness done by themselves, and the danger of symbolizing with Papists and other enemies of the grace of the gospel, have industriously shunned to use on that head; they choosing rather to call holiness and good works necessary duties of the persons justified and saved, than conditions of salvation; consequents and effects of salvation already obtained, or antecedents, disposing and preparing the subject for the salvation to be obtained, than any sort of causes, or proper means of obtaining the possession of salvation; which last honour, the Scripture, for the high praise and glory of sovereign grace, seems to have reserved peculiarly unto faith; and rather to say, that holiness is necessary in them that shall be saved, than necessary to salvation; that we are saved, not by good works, but rather to them, as fruits and effects of saving grace; or that holiness is necessary unto salvation, not so much as a mean to the end, as a part of the end itself; which part of our salvation is necessary, to make us meet for the other that is yet behind.

Wherefore, since this way of speaking of holiness with respect to salvation, is, we conceive, without warrant in the holy Scripture, dissonant from the doctrinal standards of our own and other reformed churches, as well as from the chosen and deliberate speech of reformed divines treating on these heads; and since it being at best but proposition male sonans, may easily be mistaken, and afterwards improved, as a shade or vehicle, for conveying corrupt sentiments, anent the influence of works upon salvation; we cannot but reckon preaching the necessity of holiness in such terms to be of some dangerous consequence to the doctrine of free grace. In which apprehension we are the more confirmed, that at this day the doctrine of Christ, and his free grace, both as to the purity and efficacy of the same, seems to be much on the wane, and Popery, with other dangerous errors and heresies destructive of it, on the waxing; which certainly calls aloud to the churches of Christ, and to his ministers in particular, for the

more zeal, watchfulness, and caution, with reference to the interests of truth; and that especially at such a time, *cum hereticis nec nomina habeamus communia, ne eorum errori favere videamur*.

If in any case, certainly in framing acts and standards of doctrine, there is great need of delicacy in the choice of words; for the words of the Holy Ghost in Scripture, under which we include such as in meaning and import are equivalent to them, being an ordinance of divine institution, for preserving the truth of the gospel, if these be once altered or varied, all the wisdom and vigilance of men will be ineffectual to that end. And it is well known, by costly experience to the churches of Christ, that their falling in with the language or phrase of corrupt teachers, instead of serving the interest of truth, which never looks so well as in its own native simplicity, does but grieve the stable and judicious, stagger the weak, betray the ignorant, and, instead of gaining, harden and open the mouths of adversaries. And that it is said in a text, "They do it to obtain a corruptible crown, but we an incorruptible," will not warrant the manner of speech in the query; for the word, in the original, signifies only to receive or apprehend, being accordingly rendered in all Latin versions we have seen, and in our own translation in the verse immediately preceding, viz: "One receiveth the prize"; and though the word did signify to obtain, in the most strict and proper sense it could not make for the purpose, unless it were meant of the believer's obtaining the incorruptible crown, not by faith, but by works. And that an ill chosen word in a standard may prove more dangerous to the truth, than one not so justly rendered in a translation, with several other things on this head, might be made very evident, were it not that we have been, we fear, tedious on it already.

QUERY VIII.—Is knowledge, belief, and persuasion, that Christ died for me, and that he is mine, and that whatever he did and suffered, he did and suffered for me, the direct act of faith, whereby a sinner is united to Christ, interested in him, instated in God's covenant of grace? Or, is that knowledge a persuasion included in the very essence of that justifying act of faith?

Ans. The query, it is evident, exceedingly narrows the import and design of the Representation in the place referred to; for there we assert nothing positively concerning the passages relating to faith, but remonstrate against condemning them, as what to us seemed to hurt the appropriating act of faith, and to fix a blot upon the Reformation, reformed churches, and divines, who had generally taught concerning faith, as in the condemned passages; all which we might say, without determining whether the persuasion spoke of in the query was the very direct and formal act of justifying faith, yea or no. But now, since the query is put so close, and since the matter in question is no other than the old Protestant doctrine on

that head, as we shall endeavour to make appear, the Reverend Commission, we humbly conceive, cannot take it amiss, if we, in the first place, inquire into the true sense and meaning of this way of speaking of faith, that we are now questioned about.

The main of the condemned passages the query refers to, runs not in the order therein set down, but as follows: "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved"; that is, "Be verily persuaded in your heart that Christ Jesus is yours, and that you shall have life and salvation by him; that whatever Christ did for the redemption of mankind, he did it for you": being in matter the same with what has been commonly taught in the Protestant churches, and, in words of the renowned Mr. John Rogers, of Dodham, [a man so noted for orthodoxy, holiness, and the Lord's countenancing of his ministry, that no sound Protestants in Britain or Ireland, of what denomination soever, would, in the age wherein he lived, have taken upon them to condemn as erroneous] his definition of faith, which we have as follows: "A particular persuasion of my heart that Christ Jesus is mine, and that I shall have life and salvation by his means; that whatsoever Christ did for the redemption of mankind, he did it for me." Where one may see, though the difference in words be almost none at all, yet it runs rather stronger with him than in the Marrow.

In which account of saving faith, we have, first, the general nature of it; viz: a real persuasion, agreeing to all sorts of faith whatsoever; for it is certain, whatever one believes, he is verily persuaded of. More particularly, it is a persuasion in the heart, whereby it is distinguished from a general, dead, and naked assent in the head, which one gives to things that no way affect him, because he reckons they do not concern him. But with the heart man believes here; "If thou believest with all thine heart," says the Scripture. For as a man's believing in his heart the dreadful tidings of the law, or its curse, imports not only an assent to them as true, but a horror of them as evil; so here, the being persuaded in one's heart of the glad tidings of the gospel, bears not only an assent unto them as true, but a relish of them as good.

Then we have the most special nature of it, viz: an appropriating persuasion, or a persuasion, with application to a person's self, that Christ is his, &c. The particulars whereof are, first, that Christ is yours; the ground of which persuasion is the offer and grant of Christ as a Saviour in the word, to be believed in for salvation, by all to whom the gospel is made known. By which offer and setting forth of Christ as a Saviour, though before we believe, we wanting union with him, have no actual or saving interest in him, yet he is in some sense ours, namely, so as it is lawful and warrantable for us, not for fallen angels, to take

possession of him and his salvation by faith; without which, our common interest in him as a Saviour, by virtue of the offer and grant in the word, will avail us nothing. But though the call and offer of the gospel, being really particular, every one, both in point of duty and in point of interest, ought to appropriate, apply, or make his own the thing offered, by believing, they having good and sufficient ground and warrant in the word so to do; yet is it either neglected and despised, or the truth and sincerity of it suspected and called in question, until the Holy Spirit, by setting home the word of the gospel, with such a measure of evidence and power as is effectual, satisfies the convinced sinner, that, with application to himself in particular, "it is a faithful saying, worthy of all acceptance, that Jesus Christ came to save sinners," and enables him to believe it. Thus the persuasion of faith is begotten, which is always proportioned to the measure of evidence and power from above that sovereign grace is pleased to put forth for working of it. The next branch of the persuasion is, "that you shall have life and salvation by him," namely, the life of holiness as well as of happiness; salvation from sin as well as from wrath, not in heaven only, but begun, carried on here, and completed hereafter;—the true notion of life and salvation, according to the Scriptures, and as Protestant divines are wont to explain it. Wherefore this persuasion of faith is inconsistent with an unwillingness to part with sin, a bent or purpose of heart to continue in it. There can be little question, we apprehend, whether this branch of the persuasion belongs to the nature of justifying faith; for salvation being above all things in a sensible sinner's eye, he can never believe any thing to his satisfaction, unless he sees ground to believe comfortably concerning it. Few therefore will, we conceive, differ from Dr. Collins, laying it down as a conclusion on this very head, namely, that "a Christian cannot have true, saving, justifying faith, unless he doth [I do not say, unless he think he doth, or unless he saith he doth, but, unless, he doth] believe, and is persuaded that God will pardon his sins." Further this being a believing on the Son for life and salvation, is the same with receiving of him, [as this last is explained by the Holy Spirit himself, ([John 1:12](#)),] and likewise evidently bears the soul's resting on Christ for salvation; for it is not possible to conceive a soul resting on Christ for salvation, without a persuasion that it shall have life and salvation by him, namely, a persuasion of the same measure and degree as resting is.

The third branch of the persuasion, "that whatsoever Christ did for the redemption of mankind, he did it for you,"—being much the same, in other words, with these of the apostle—"Who loved me, and gave himself for me"; and coming in the last place, we think none will question but whosoever believes, in the manner before explained, may and ought to believe this in the like measure

and in the same order. And it is certain, all who receive and rest on Christ for salvation, believe it, if not explicitly, yet virtually and really.

Now, as this account of justifying faith runs in terms much less strong than those of many eminent divines, who used to define it by a persuasion of God's love, of his special mercy to one's self, of the remission of his sins, &c.; so it is the same for substance and matter, though the words be not the same with that of our Shorter Catechism, viz: "A receiving and resting upon Christ alone for salvation, as he is offered to us in the gospel": where it is evident the offer of Christ to us, though mentioned in the last place, is to be believed first; for till the soul be persuaded that Christ crucified is in the gospel set forth, offered, and exhibited to it as if expressed by name, there can be no believing on him. And when the offer is brought home to a person by the Holy Ghost, there will be a measure of persuasion that Christ is his, as above explained. And that receiving, or believing in, and resting on him for salvation, cannot be without some measure of persuasion that one shall have life and salvation by him, was said already. But more directly to the query.

We answer, 1st, Since our reformers and their successors, such as Luther, Calvin, Melancthon, Beza, Bullinger, Bucer, Knox, Craig, Melvil, Bruce, Davidson, Forbes, &c.,—men eminently endowed with the spirit of truth and who fetch their notions of it immediately from the fountain of the holy Scripture; the most eminent doctors and professors of theology that have been in the Protestant churches, such as Ursinus, Zanchius, Junius, Piscator, Rollock, Daneus, Wendelinus, Chamierus, Sharpus, Bodius, Pareus, Altingius, Triglandii, [Gisbertus and Jacobus] Arnoldus, Maresius; the four professors of Leyden, viz: Walleus, Rivetus, Polyander, Thysius; Wollebius, Heideggerus, Essenius, Turretinus, &c.; with many eminent British divines, such as Perkins, Pemble, Willet, Gouge, Roberts, Burgess, Owen, &c.; the churches themselves of Helvetia, the Palatinate, France, Holland, England, Ireland, Scotland, in their standards of doctrine; all the Lutheran churches, who, in point of orthodoxy on the head of justification and faith, are second to none; the renowned synod of Dort, made up of eminent divines, called and commisionate from seven reformed states and kingdoms, besides those of the several provinces of the Netherlands; since these, we say, all of them stand for that special, fiducia, confidence, or appropriating persuasion of faith spoken of in the condemned passages of the Marrow, upon which this query is raised; the synod of Dort, besides the minds of the several delegates on this head, in their several suffrages anent the Five Articles, declaring themselves plainly both in their final decisions concerning the said articles, and in their solemn and ample approbation of the

Palatine Catechism, as agreeable to the word of God in all things, and as containing nothing that ought either to be altered or amended; which Catechism being full and plain as to this persuasion of faith, has been commented upon by many great divines, received by most of all the reformed churches, as a most excellent commend of the orthodox Christian doctrine, and particularly by the Church of Scotland, as the Rev. Mr. Robert Wodrow lately told his Majesty King George, in the dedication of his history; and since we, with this whole church and nation are, by virtue of the awful tie of the oath of God in our national covenant, bound ever to abhor and detest the Popish general and doubtful faith, with all the erroneous decrees of Trent; among which, in opposition to the special fiducia of faith therein condemned this is established; being by Protestants, so called, mainly for their denying and opposing the confidence and persuasion of faith, with application to one's self, now in question; by which renunciation our forefathers, no doubt, pointed at, and asserted to be held and professed as God's undoubted truth and verity, that particular and confident, or assured faith, then commonly known and maintained in this church, as standing plain and express in her standards, to the profession and defence of which they in the same covenant promising and swearing by the great name of the Lord our God, bound themselves and us: and since the same persuasion of faith, however the way of speaking on that head is come to be somewhat altered, was never by any judicatory of a reformed Church, until now, denied or condemned: considering all these things, we say, and of what dangerous consequence such a judicial alteration may be, we cannot, we dare not consent unto the condemnation of that point of doctrine; for we cannot think of charging error and delusion in a matter of such importance upon so many Protestant divines, eminent for holiness and learning; upon the Protestant churches; and upon our own forefathers, so signally owned of the Lord; and also on the standards of Protestant doctrine, in this Church, for nigh an hundred years after her reformation: else, if we should thus speak, we are persuaded we would offend against the generation of his children. Nor can it ever enter into our minds, that the famous Assembly of Westminster had it so much as once in their thought, to depart in this point from the doctrine of their own, and of this church, which they were all of them by the strongest ties bound to maintain; or to go off from the synod of Dort, which had but so lately before them settled the Protestant principles as to doctrine; and by so doing yield up to Socinians, Arminians, and Papists, what all of them have a mortal aversion to, namely, the special fiducia or appropriating persuasion of faith, which Protestant divines before and since that time contended for to their utmost, as being not only a precious truth, but a point of vast consequence to religion. And

we are sure the Assemblies of this Church understood, and received their confessions and catechisms larger and shorter, as entirely consistent with our confessions and catechisms before that time, as we have already made evident in our representation, from the acts of Assembly receiving and approving the Westminster Confession and Catechisms.

Answer 2d, It is to be considered, that most of the words of the Holy Ghost, made use of in the Old and New Testament, for expressing the nature of faith and believing, do import the confidence or persuasion in question; and that confidence and trust in the Old Testament are expounded by faith and believing in the New; and the same things attributed to the latter, as were wont to be attributed to the former; that diffidence and doubting are in their nature acts and effects contrary to faith; that peace and joy are the native effects of believing; that the promises of the gospel, and Christ in his priestly office therein held forth, are the proper objects of justifying faith; that, faithfulness in God, and faith in the believer, being relatives, and the former the ground of the latter, our faith should answer to his faithfulness, by trusting his good word of promise for the sake of it; that it is certain a believer in the exercise of justifying faith does believe something with reference to his own salvation upon the ground of God's faithfulness in the promise; that no other person whatsoever does or can believe; which if it be not to this purpose, that now Christ is and will be a Saviour to him, that he shall have life and salvation by him, we are utterly at a loss to conceive what it can be; that persuasion, confidence, and assuredness, are so much attributed to faith in the Scripture, and the saints in Scripture ordinarily express themselves in their addresses to God in words of appropriation; and finally, that according to our Larger Catechism, faith justifies a sinner in the sight of God, as an instrument, receiving and applying Christ, and his righteousness held forth in the promise of the gospel, and resteth thereupon for pardon of sin, and for the accepting and accounting one's person righteous before God for salvation; the which, how faith can do without some measure of the confidence, or appropriating persuasion we are now upon, seems extremely hard to conceive. Upon these considerations, and others too long to be here inserted, we cannot but think, that confidence, or trust in Jesus Christ, as our Saviour, and the free grace and mercy of God in him as crucified, offered to us in the gospel for salvation, [including justification, sanctification, and future glory,] upon the ground and security of the divine faithfulness plighted in the gospel promise; and upon the warrant of the divine call and command to believe in the name of the Son of God; or, which is the same, in other words, a persuasion of life and salvation, from the free love and mercy of God, in and through Jesus Christ, a crucified Saviour offered to us, upon the

security and warrant aforesaid, is the very direct, uniting, justifying, and appropriating act of faith, whereby the convinced sinner becomes possessed of Christ and his saving benefits, instated in God's covenant and family; taking this always along, as supposed, that all is set home and wrought by the Holy Spirit, who brings Christ, his righteousness, salvation, and whole fullness, nigh to us in the promise and offer of the gospel; clearing at the same time our right and warrant to intermeddle with all, without fear of vicious intromission, encouraging and enabling to a measure of confident application, and taking home of all to ourselves freely, without money and without price.

This confidence, persuasion, or whatever other name it may be called by, we take to be the very same with what our Confession and Catechisms call accepting, receiving, and resting on Christ offered in the gospel for salvation; and with what polemic and practical divines call "Fiducia specialis misericordia," Fiducial application," "fiducial apprehension," "fiducial adherence," "recumbence," "affiance," "fiducial acquiescence," "appropriating persuasion," &c. All which, if duly explained, would issue in a measure of this confidence or persuasion we have been speaking of. However, we are fully satisfied this is what our fathers and the body of Protestant divines, speaking with the Scriptures called "the assurance of faith." That once burning and shining light of this church, Mr. John Davidson, though in his Catechism he defines faith by a "hearty assurance" that our sins are freely forgiven us in Christ; or, a sure persuasion of the heart that Christ by his death and resurrection has taken away our sins, and clothing us with his own perfect righteousness, has thoroughly restored us to the favour of God; which he reckoned all one with a "Hearty receiving of Christ offered in the gospel for the remission of sins"; yet in a former part of the same Catechism he gives us to understand what sort of assurance and persuasion it was he meant, as follows: "And certain it is," he says, "that both the enlightening of the mind to acknowledge the truth of the promise of salvation to us in Christ, and the sealing up of the certainty thereof in our hearts and minds, [of the which two parts, as it were, faith consists,] are the works and effects of the Spirit of God." In like manner, in our first Confession of Faith, Art. 3, 12, it is called, "An assured faith in the promise of God revealed to us in his word; by which faith we apprehend Christ Jesus, with the graces and benefits promised in him."—"This faith, and the assurance of the same, proceeds not from flesh and blood." And in our first Catechism, commonly called Calvin's Catechism, faith is defined by a "sure persuasion" and "steadfast knowledge" of God's tender love towards us, according as he has plainly uttered in his gospel, that he will be a Father and Saviour to us, through the means of Jesus Christ; and again, "faith which God's

Spirit worketh in our hearts, assuring of God's promises made to us in his holy Gospel." In the Summula Catechismi, or Rudimenta Pietatis, to the question, "Quid est fides?" the answer is, "Cum mihi persuadeo Deum me omnesque sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare"; and in the margin, "Nam in fide duplex persuasio, 1. De amore Dei erga nos; 2. De Dei beneficiis que ex amore fluunt, Christo nimirum, cum omnibus suis bonis," &c. And to that question, "Quomodo fide percipimus, et nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?" the answer is, "Dum nobis persuademus Christi mortem et crucifixionem non minus ad nos pertinere quam si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus. Persuasiio autem hec est vere fidei." From all which it is evident, they held, that a belief of the promises of the gospel, with application to oneself, or a confidence in a crucified Saviour, for a man's own salvation, is the very essence of justifying faith; or, that we become actually possessed of Christ, remission of sins, &c., in and by the act of believing, or confidence in him, as above explained. And this with them was the assurance of faith, which widely differs from the Antinomian sense of the assurance or persuasion of faith which is, that Christ, and pardon of sin, are ours, no less before believing than after; a sense which we heartily disclaim.

Whether these words in the query, viz: "Or, is that knowledge a persuasion included in the very essence of that justifying act of faith"; be exegetic of the former part of it, or a new branch of the query; we answer, that we have already explained the persuasion of faith by us held, and do think, that in the language of faith, though not in the language of philosophy, knowledge, and persuasion, relating to the same object, go hand in hand in the same measure and degree. It is evident that the confidence or persuasion of faith for which we plead, includes, or necessarily and infallibly infers consent and resting, together with all the blessed fruits and effects of faith, in proportion to the measure of it. And that we have mentioned consent, we cannot but be the more confirmed in this matter, when we consider, that such a noted person as Mr. Baxter, though he had made the marriage consent to Christ, as King and Lord, the formal act of justifying faith, as being an epitome of all gospel obedience, including and binding to all the duties of the married state, and so giving right to all the privileges: and had thereby, as well as by his other dangerous notions about justification, and other points connected therewith, scattered through his works, corrupted the fountain, and endangered the faith of many; yet after all, came to be of another mind, and had the humility to tell the world so much; for Mr. Cross informs us [Serm. on [Romans 4:2](#), p. 148,] that Mr. Baxter, in his little book against Dr. Crisp's errors, says, "I formerly believed the formal nature of faith to lie in consent; but now I

recant it. I believe," says he, "it lies in trust: this makes the right to lie in the object; for it is, I depend on Christ as the matter or merit of my pardon, my life, my crown, my glory."

There are two things further, concerning this persuasion of faith, that would be adverted to: one is, that it is not axiomatical, but real; that is, the sinner has not always, at his first closing with Christ, nor afterwards, such a clear, steady, and full persuasion that Christ is his, that his sins are forgiven, and that he eventually shall be saved, as that he dare profess the same to others, or even positively assert it within himself; yet, upon the first saving manifestation of Christ to him, such a persuasion and humble confidence is begotten, as is real and relieving, and particular as to himself and his own salvation, and which works a proportionable hope as to the issue; though, through the humbling impressions he has of himself and his own guilt at the time, the awe of God's majesty, justice, and holiness on his spirit, and his indistinct knowledge of the doctrine of the gospel, with the grounds and warrants of believing therein contained, he fears to express it directly and particularly of himself. The other is, that whatever is said of the habit, actings, strength, weakness, and intermittings of the exercise of saving faith, the same is to be said of this persuasion in all points. From all which it is evident, the doubts, fears, and darkness, so frequently to be found in true believers, can very well consist with this persuasion in the same subject; for though these may be, and often are in the believer, yet they are not of his faith, which in its nature and exercise is as opposite to them as light is to darkness, the flesh to the Spirit; which though they be in the same subject, yet are contrary the one to the other, (Gal 5:17). And, therefore, faith wrestles against them, though with various success, it being sometimes so far overcome and brought under by the main force and much superior strength of prevailing unbelief, that it cannot be discerned more than the fire is when covered with ashes, or the sun when wrapt up in thick clouds. The confidence and persuasion of faith being in many, at first especially, but as the grain of mustard-seed cast into the ground, or like a spark amidst the troubled sea of all manner of corruption and lust, where the rolling waves of unbelieving doubts and fears, hellish temptations and suggestions, and the like, moving on the face of that depth, are every now and then going over it; and, were there not a divine hand and care engaged for its preservation, would effectually extinguish and bury it. What wonder that in such a case it many times cannot be discerned? yet will it still hold so much of the exercise of justifying faith, so much persuasion. Yea, not only may a believer have this persuasion and not know it for the time, [as says Collins, Roberts, Amesius, and others, who distinguish the persuasion from the sense of it,] but he, being under the power of temptation and confusion

of mind, may resolutely deny he has any such persuasion or conscience; while it is evident to others at the same time, by its effects, that he really has it: for which, one may, among others, see the holy and learned Haliburton, in his "Inquiry into the Nature of God's Act of Justification," p. 27. And if one would see the consistence of faith's persuasion with doubting, well discoursed and illustrated, he may consult Downham's "Christian Warfare." But we—

Answer 3dly, There is a full persuasion and assurance, by reflection, spiritual argumentation, or inward sensation, which we are far from holding to be of the essence of faith; but this last, being mediate, and collected by inference, as we gather the cause from such signs and effects as give evidence of it, is very different from that confidence or persuasion, by divines called the assurance of faith. "Sanctification," says Rutherford, "does not evidence justification, as faith doth evidence it, with such a sort of clearness, as light evidenceth colours, though it be no sign or evident mark of them; but as smoke evinces fire, and as the morning star in the east evinces the sun will early rise, or as the streams prove there is a head-spring whence they issue, though none of these make what they evidence visible to the eye; so doth sanctification give evidence of justification, only as marks, signs, effects, give evidence to the cause." He calls it a light of arguing and of heavenly logic, by which we know that we know God, by the light of faith, because we keep his commandments. "In effect," says he, "we know rather the person must be justified, in whom these gracious evidences are, by hearsay report or consequence, than that we know or see justification, or faith itself, in abstracto; but the light of faith, the testimony of the Spirit by the operation of free grace, will cause us, as it were, with our eyes, to see justification and faith, not by report, but as we see the sun-light." Again he says, "We never had a question with Antinomians touching the first assurance of justification, such as is proper to the light of faith. He [Cornwall] might have spared all his arguments to prove that we are first assured of our justification by faith, not by good works, for we grant the arguments of one sort of assurance, which is proper to faith, and they prove nothing against another sort of assurance, by signs and effects, which is also divine." Further, as to the difference between these two kinds of assurance: the assurance of faith has its object and foundation without the man, but that of sense has them within him. The assurance of faith looks to Christ, the promise and covenant of God, and says, "This is all my salvation; God has spoken in his holiness, I will rejoice"; but the assurance of sense looks inward at the works of God, such as the person's own graces, attainments, experiences, and the like. The assurance of faith giving an evidence to things not seen, can claim an interest in, and plead a saving relation to a hiding, withdrawing God.

Zion said, "My Lord hath forgotten me"; and the spouse, "I opened to my beloved, but my beloved had withdrawn himself, and was gone." So he may be a forgetting and withdrawing God to my feeling, "and yet to my faith, my God and my Lord still," says holy Rutherford; "even as the wife may believe the angry and forsaking husband is still her husband." But on the other hand, the assurance of sense is the evidence of things seen and felt. The one says, "I take him for mine"; the other says, "I feel he is mine." The one says with the church, "My God, though he cover himself with a cloud, that my prayer cannot pass through, yet will hear me"; the other, "My God has heard me." The one says, "He will bring me forth to the light, and I shall behold his righteousness"; the other, "He has brought me forth to the light, and I do behold his righteousness." The one says, "Though he should kill me, yet will I trust in him"; the other, "He smiles and shines on me, therefore, will I love him and trust in him."

Upon the whole, we humbly conceive, were the nature and grounds of faith's persuasion more narrowly and impartially under the guidance of the Spirit of truth, searched into and laid open, it would, instead of discouraging weak Christians, exceedingly tend to the strengthening and increase of faith, and consequently have a mighty influence on spiritual comfort, and true gospel holiness, which will always be found to bear proportion to faith, as effects do to the efficacy and influence of their causes.

QUERY IX.—What is that act of faith, by which a sinner appropriates Christ and his saving benefits to himself?

Ans.—This question being plainly and fully answered in what is said on the immediately foregoing, we refer thereto, and proceed to the tenth.

QUERY X.—Whether the revelation of the divine will in the word, affording a warrant to offer Christ unto all, and a warrant to all to receive him, can be said to be the Father's making a deed of gift and grant of Christ unto all mankind? Is this grant to all mankind by sovereign grace? And whether is it absolute or conditional!

Ans.—Here we are directed to that part of our representation where we complain that the following passage is condemned, viz: "The Father hath made a deed of gift or grant unto all mankind, that whosoever of them shall believe in his Son, shall not perish"; and where we say, "That this treatment of the said passage seems to encroach on the warrants aforesaid, and also upon sovereign grace, which hath made this grant, not to devils, but to men, in terms than which none can be imagined more extensive"; agreeable to what we have already said in our representation. We answer to the first part of the question, that by the "deed of gift or grant unto all mankind," we understand no more than the revelation of the

divine will in the word, affording warrant to offer Christ to all, and a warrant to all to receive him; for although we believe the purchase and application of redemption to be peculiar to the elect, who were given by the Father to Christ in the counsel of peace, yet the warrant to receive him is common to all. Ministers, by virtues of the commission they have received from their great Lord and Master, are authorized and instructed to go preach the gospel to every creature, i.e., to make a full, free, and unhampered offer of him, his grace, righteousness, and salvation, to every rational soul to whom they may in providence have access to speak. And though we had a voice like a trumpet, that could reach all the corners of the earth, we think we would be bound, by virtue of our commission, to lift it up, and say, "To you, O men, do we call, and our voice is to the sons of men. God hath so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believes in him should not perish, but have everlasting life." And though this "deed of gift and grant, that whosoever believeth in Christ shall not perish," &c. is, neither in our representation, nor in the passages of the book condemned on that head, called a "deed of gift, and grant of Christ," yet, being required to give our judgment in this point, we think, that agreeable to the Holy Scripture, it may be so called, as particularly appears from the text last cited, ([John 3:16](#)), where by the giving of Christ, we understand not only his eternal destination by the Father to be the Redeemer of an elect world, and his giving him unto the death for them, in the fullness of time, but more especially a giving of him in the word unto all, to be received and believed in. The giving here cannot be a giving in possession, which is peculiar only unto them who actually believe, but it must be such a giving, granting, or offering, as warrants a man to believe or receive the gift, and must therefore be anterior to actual believing. This is evident enough from the text itself: he gave him, "that whosoever believeth in him should not perish," &c. The context also, to us, puts it beyond controversy: the brazen serpent was given, and lifted up as a common good to the whole camp of Israel, that whosoever in all the camp, being stung by the fiery serpents, looked thereunto, might not die, but live. So here Christ is given to a lost world, in the word, "that whosoever believes in him should not perish," &c. And in this respect, we think, Christ is a common Saviour, and his salvation is a common salvation; and it is "glad tidings of great joy unto all people," that unto us [not to angels that fell] this Son is given, and this Child is born, whose name is called Wonderful, &c. ([Isa 9:6](#)).

We have a Scripture also to this purpose, ([John 6:32](#)), where Christ, speaking to a promiscuous multitude, makes a comparison between himself and the manna that fell about the tents of Israel in the wilderness, and says, "My Father giveth you

the true bread from heaven." As the simple raining of the manna about their camp is called a giving of it, (verse 21), before it was tasted, or fed upon; so the very revelation and offer of Christ is called [according to the judicious Calvin on the place] a giving of him, ere he be received and believed on.

Of this giving of Christ to mankind lost, we read also, (1 John 5:11), "And this is the record, that God hath given unto us eternal life, and this life is in his Son." This giving in the text is not, we conceive, a giving in possession, in greater or lesser measure, but a giving by way of grant and offer, whereupon one may warrantably take possession, and the party to whom is not the election only, but lost mankind; for the record of God here must be such a thing as warrants all to believe on the Son of God. But it can be no such warrant to tell, "that God hath given eternal life to the elect"; for the making of a gift to a certain select company of persons, can never be a warrant for all men to receive or take possession of it. This will be further evident, if we consider that the great sin of unbelief lies in not believing this record of God,— "He that believes not hath made God a liar," says the apostle, (verse 10), "because he believes not the record that God gave so his Son"; and then it followeth, (verse 11), "And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life," &c. Now, are we to think that the rejecting of the record of God is a bare disbelieving of this proposition, "That God hath given eternal life unto the elect?" No, surely; for the most desperate unbelievers, such as Judas and others, believe this; and their belief of it adds to their anguish and torment. Or do they, by believing this, set to their seal that God is true? No; they still continue, notwithstanding of all this, to make him a liar, in "not believing this record of God," that to lost mankind, and to themselves in particular, God hath given eternal life, by way of grant, so as they, as well as others, are warranted and welcome, and every one to whom it comes, on their peril, required by faith to receive or take possession of it. By not receiving this gifted and offered remedy, with application and appropriation, they fly in the face of God's record and testimony; and therefore do justly and deservedly perish, seeing the righteousness, salvation, and kingdom of God, was brought so near to them, in the free offer of the gospel, and yet they would not take it. The great pinch and strait, we think, of an awakened conscience, does not lie in believing that God hath given eternal life to the elect, but in believing or receiving Christ, offered to us in the gospel, with particular application to the man himself, in Scripture called "an eating the flesh, and drinking the blood of the Son of man." And yet, till this difficulty be surmounted, in greater or lesser measure, he can never be said to believe in Christ, or receive and rest upon him for salvation. The very taking or receiving must needs presuppose a giving of Christ; and this giving may be, and is, for the

most part, where there is no receiving; but there can be no receiving of Christ for salvation where there is not revelation of Christ in the word of the gospel, affording warrant to receive him, and then, by the effectual operation of the Spirit, persuading and enabling the sinner to embrace him upon this warrant and offer. "A man," says the Spirit of God, ([John 3:27](#)), "can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven." Hence Mr. Rutherford, in his "Christ Dying and Drawing," &c., page 442, says that "reprobates have as fair a warrant to believe as the elect have."

As to the second part of this question, i.e., "Is this grant made to all mankind by sovereign grace? and, Whether is it absolute or conditional" we answer, that this grant, made in common to lost mankind, is from sovereign grace only; and it being ministers' warrant to offer Christ unto all, and people's warrant to receive him, it cannot fail to be absolutely free; yet so as none can be possessed of Christ and his benefits, till by faith they receive him.

QUERY XI.—Is the division of the law, as explained and applied in the Marrow, to be justified, and which cannot be rejected without burying several gospel truths?

Ans.—We humbly judge the tripartite division of the law, if rightly understood, may be admitted as orthodox; yet, seeing that which we are concerned with, as contained in our representation, is only the divisions of the law into the law of works and the law of Christ, we say, that we are still of opinion, that this distinction of the law is carefully to be maintained; in regard that by the law of works we, according to the Scripture, understand the covenant of works, which believers are wholly and altogether delivered from, although they are certainly under the law of the ten commandments in the hand of a Mediator. And if this distinction of the law, thus applied, be overthrown, and declared groundless, several sweet gospel- truths must unavoidably fall in the ruins of it. For instance, if there be no difference put between the law as a covenant, and the law as a rule of life to believers, in the hand of Christ, it must needs follow, that the law still retains its covenant-form with respect to believers, and that they are still under the law in this formality, contrary to Scripture, ([Rom 6:14](#), [7:1-3](#)), and to the Confession of Faith, chap. 19, sect. 6. It would also follow, that the sins of believers are still to be looked upon as breaches of the covenant of works, and consequently, that their sins not only deserve the wrath and curse of God, [which is a most certain truth,] but also make them actually liable to the wrath of God, and the pains of hell for ever, which is true only of them that are in a state of black nature: Less. Cat. quest. 19, and contrary to Confess. of Faith, chap. 19, sect. 1. It will likewise follow, that believers are still to eye God as a vindictive

and wrathful Judge, though his justice be fully satisfied in the death and blood of their blessed Surety, apprehended by faith. These and many other sweet gospel truths, we think, fall in the ruins of the foresaid distinction condemned as groundless.

QUERY. XII.—Is the hope of heaven and fear of hell to be excluded from the motives of the believer's obedience? And if not, how can the Marrow be defended, that expressly excludes them, though it should allow of other motives?

Ans.—Here we are referred to the third particular head, wherein we think the Marrow injured by the Assembly's act, which for brevity's sake we do not transcribe: but agreeable both to our representation and the scope of the Marrow, we answer, That taking heaven for a state of endless felicity in the enjoyment of God in Christ, we are so far from thinking that this is to be excluded from being a motive of the believer's obedience, that we think it the chief end of man, next to the glory of God; (*Psa 83:25*), "Whom have I in heaven but thee?" &c. Heaven, instead of being a reward to the believer, would be a desolate wilderness to him without the enjoyment of a God in Christ. The Lord and the Lamb are the light of that place. God himself is the portion of his people; he is their shield and exceeding great reward. The very cope-stone of the happiness of heaven lies in being "for ever with the Lord, and in beholding of his glory"; and this indeed the believer is to have in his eye, as the recompense of reward, and a noble motive of obedience. But to form conceptions of heaven as a place of pleasure and happiness, without the former views of it, and to fancy that this heaven is to be obtained by our own works and doings, is unworthy of a believer, a child of God, in regard it is slavish, legal, mercenary, and carnal.

As for the fear of hell being a motive of the believer's obedience, we reckon it one of the special branches of that glorious liberty wherewith Christ hath made his people free, that they yield obedience to the Lord, not out of slavish fear of hell and wrath, but out of a child-like love and willing mind, Confess, chap. 20, sect. 6. "Christ hath delivered us out of the hands of our enemies, that we might serve him without fear, in holiness and righteousness, all the days of our lives," (*Luke 1:74,75*). A filial fear of God and of his fatherly displeasure, is worthy of the believer, being a fruit of faith, and of the spirit of adoption; but a slavish fear of hell and wrath, from which he is delivered by Christ, is not a fruit of faith, but of unbelief. And in so far as a believer is not drawn with love, but driven on in his obedience with a slavish fear of hell, we think him, in so far under a spirit of bondage. And judging this to be the Marrow's sense of rewards and punishments with respect to a believer, we think it may and ought to be defended.

And this doctrine, which we apprehend to be the truth, stands supported not only

by Scripture and our Confession of Faith, but also by the suffrages of some of our soundest divines; for instance Mr. Rutherford:—"Believers," says he, "are to be sad for their sins, as offensive to the authority of the Lawgiver and the love of Christ, though they be not to fear the eternal punishment of them"; for sorrow for sin, and fear for sin are most different to us. Again, says the same author, "Servile obedience, under apprehension of legal terror, was never commanded in the spiritual law of God to the Jews, more than to us." Durham, "The believer [says he] being freed from the law as a covenant, his life depends not on the promise annexed to the law, nor is he in danger by the threatenings adjoined to it, both these to believers being made void through Christ." And to conclude, we are clearly of Dr. Owen's mind anent the use of threatenings of everlasting wrath with reference unto believers, who, though he owns them to be declarative of God's hatred of sin, and his will to punish it, yet in regard the execution of them is inconsistent with the covenant, and God's faithfulness therein, says, "The use of them cannot be to beget in believers an anxious, doubting, solicitous fear about the punishment threatened, grounded on a supposition that the person fearing shall be overtaken with it, or a perplexing fear of hell-fire; which, though it oftentimes be a consequence of some of God's dispensations toward us of our own sins, or the weakness of our faith, is not any where prescribed unto us as a duty, nor is the ingenerating of it in us the design of any of the threatenings of God." His reasons, together with the nature of that fear, which the threatening of eternal wrath ought to beget in believers, may be viewed among the rest of the authorities.

These are some thoughts that have offered to us upon the queries, which we lay before the Reverend Commission with all becoming deference, humbly craving, that charity, which thinketh no evil, may procure a favourable construing of our words, so as no sense may be put upon, nor inference drawn from, them which we never intended. And in regard the tenor of our doctrine, and our aims in conversation, have, though with a mixture of much sinful weakness, been sincerely pointed at the honour of the Lord Jesus as our king as well as priest, as our sanctification as well as our righteousness, we cannot but regret our being aspersed, as turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and casting off the obligation of the holy law of the ten commands; being persuaded that the damnation of such as either do or teach so, is just and unavoidable, if mercy prevent it not. But now if, after this plain and ingenuous declaration of our principles, we must still lie under the same load of reproach, it is our comfort, that we have the testimony of our conscience clearing us in that matter, and doubt not the Lord will in due time bring forth our righteousness as the light, and our

judgment as the noon-day. We only add, that we adhere to our representation and petition in all points; and so much the rather that we have already observed the sad fruits, and bad improvement made of the Assembly's deed, therein complained of.

These answers, contained in this and the preceding pages, [viz: of the manuscript given in,] are subscribed at Edinburgh, March 12th, 1722, by us,

MESSRS. JAMES HOG, Carnock.

THOMAS BOSTON, Etterick.

JOHN WILLIAMSON, Inveresk.

JAMES KID, Queensferry.

GABRIEL WILSON, Maxton.

EBENEZR ERSKINE, Portmoack.

RALPH ERSKINE, Dunfermline.

JAMES WARDLAW, Dunfermline.

HENRY DAVIDSON, Galashiels.

JAMES BATHGATE, Orwel.

WILLIAM HUNTER, Lilliesleaf.

THE END.

Indexes

Index of Scripture References

Genesis

1 1 1:2 1:24-26 1:26 1:26 1:27 1:27 1:27 1:31 2:17 2:17 2:17 2:17 3 3:2 3:3
3:8 3:10 3:15 3:15 3:15 3:17 3:19 3:22 3:22 3:23 3:24 4:1 4:2 4:2 4:5 5 5:5
6:2 9:6 11:10 11:10 11:11 12:3 12:7 12:18 13:8 13:9 14:18 14:19 15 15:1 16:5
17:1 17:7 17:14 18:19 18:19 18:27 18:32 21:5 21:12 24:9 26:4 27:9 27:20 28:11
30:2 30:30 31:4 31:16 31:17 31:35 31:35 32:9 32:10 32:28 32:30 42:21 43:1 43:3
44:32 44:33 46:29 47:12 48:12 48:15 48:16 49:10 49:18

Exodus

1:1 3 4:10 4:13 4:23 5:2 12:5 12:6 12:7 16:28-30 17:2 19:1 19:8 19:8 19:8 19:8
19:8 19:8 19:20 19:20 19:25 20 20:1-17 20:2 20:2 20:18 20:19 20:20 20:21 21:12
21:18 21:22 22:11 23:21 24 24 24:4 24:4 24:7 24:7 25:22 30:36 32:8 32:9 32:16
34:1 34:27 34:27 34:30 34:35

Leviticus

1:1 1:4 1:4 16:21 16:21 16:21 16:22 18:5 18:5 18:5 19:3 19:4 19:12 19:16 19:17
19:18 19:18 19:35 36:41

Numbers

16:46 20:12 21:8 23:21 23:21 35:16

Deuteronomy

1:17 1:27 1:37 4:6 4:10 4:12 4:13 4:13 5:2 5:2-22 5:3 5:3 5:6 5:6 5:6 5:13
5:23-28 5:28 6:7 6:7 7:21 8:17 9:10 9:10 9:11 9:15 15:8 15:9 17:18 18:15 18:17
18:18 22:2 22:3 24:14 24:15 25:13-15 27:6 27:26 27:26 27:26 27:26 28 28 28:2
28:16 28:26 28:47 28:58 28:58 28:66 29:29 32:4 32:18 33:9

Joshua

7:19 7:21 24:15

Judges

17:13

1 Samuel

1:8 2:13 2:15 6:8 6:9 9:10 9:13 14:39 18:23

2 Samuel

9:6 9:8 10:3 10:16 10:17 11:12 12:10-14 13 15:13 16:21 18:3 18:21 23:21

1 Kings

2:19 8:31 17:18 18:27 21:25

2 Kings

4:2 4:2 4:9 4:10 4:22 4:23 5:6 5:13 6:11 7:2 7:4 18:4 20:7 22:19

1 Chronicles

20:18-28 20:22

2 Chronicles

15:2 17:4 28:9 35:21 35:22

Ezra

2:3 2:68

Nehemiah

8:10 8:12 9:33 13:16 13:17

Esther

2:2

Job

1 5:27 8:14 13:15 13:15 19:11 19:25 19:25 21:11 21:12 21:14 23:12 31:1 31:16
31:24 32:21 32:22 38:41

Psalms

1:2 1:2 3:7 4:7 10:4 12:4 14:4 15:2 15:4 15:24 16:3 16:11 17:15 19:1 21:1 22:1
25:11 25:11 26:6 30:5 30:7 31:22 37:1 37:4 37:21 37:21 37:30 39:9 40:6 40:7
40:8 40:8 40:12 40:12 42:1 45:10 45:11 49:12 49:13 50:21 50:22 51:12 51:12
55:22 62:8 65:3 73:25 73:25 78:11 78:36 81:13 81:16 83:18 83:25 85:8-10 89:14
89:19 89:19 89:30-32 89:30-32 89:30-34 89:31 89:31-33 89:31-33 89:32 90:18 92:2
101:6 104:1 104:5 106:16 106:40 110:3 110:3 112:5 116:7 116:12 119:6 119:37
119:49 119:50 119:63 119:105 119:120 119:120 119:136 130 135:6 139:14 143:2
145:8

Proverbs

1:8 5:19 5:19 5:20 5:21 6:2 6:17 6:25 7:10 7:13 8:4 9:2-4 11:15 11:19 11:26
13:7 13:19 13:24 15:1 16:5 17:9 17:9 17:19 17:22 17:22 18:2 18:9 19:14 20:14
20:19 21:17 22:1 22:26 22:27 23:26 23:26 23:30 23:31 23:33 24:1 24:1 24:21
25:9 26:20 28:20 29:19 29:25 29:25 29:29 30:8 31:2 31:8 31:9 31:13 31:15 31:19
31:27

Ecclesiastes

3:4 5:1 5:3 5:4 5:6 5:19 7:29 7:29 9:2 10:15 10:15 10:17

Song of Solomon

2:16 4:7 5:2

Isaiah

1:3 1:4 1:10 1:19 5:4 5:8 7:9 7:10 8:13 9:6 9:6 9:6 9:13 19:22 22:12-14 25:6
26:3 26:3 26:11 27:4 27:9 29:13 30:22 33:22 35:8 35:9 42:1 44:6 44:24 45:17
47:4 49:8 53 53:1 53:1 53:1 53:5 53:6 53:6 53:6 53:6 53:10 53:11 53:11 54
54:9 54:9 55:1 55:3 55:3 58 58:1 58:3 58:13 62:2 63:16 65:5 66:2 66:11

Jeremiah

3:4 4:2 4:22 5:7 5:8 5:22 5:22 7:3 7:9 7:20 10:24 10:25 17:5 23:6 23:6 23:6
23:10 29:6 31:19 31:33 31:33 33:6 38:4 38:6 50:20

Lamentations

3:1 3:33 3:40

Ezekiel

16 16:4-8 16:6 18:4 18:7 18:21 18:22 23:14 33:14 33:16 33:30 36:27 36:27 36:31
36:31 36:31 36:31

Daniel

5:22 6:10

Hosea

2:19 3:5 3:9 3:14 4:2 6 6:7 7:5 10:1 11:8 13:4 14:1 14:3 14:4 14:8

Joel

1:2 1:14

Amos

7:10

Micah

7:19 7:19

Habakkuk

1:16 2:4 2:4 3:16

Zechariah

4:3 4:4 5:4 7:5 7:6 7:16 12:10 12:10 13:1

Malachi

3:6 3:15 3:16 4:2

Matthew

1:21 3:2 3:2 3:6 3:17 3:17 3:26 4:10 5 5:1 5:3 5:8 5:9 5:16 5:16 5:18 5:20
5:22 5:22 5:28 5:34-37 5:48 6:2 6:7 6:9 6:12 6:12 6:14 6:20 6:21 6:26 7:1 7:9
7:12 7:17 7:21 7:28 7:29 8:5 8:6 8:13 8:26 9:12 10:8 10:28 10:28 10:37 11:19
11:19 11:22 11:28 11:28 11:28 11:29 11:30 12:7 12:11 12:12 12:31 14:31 15:9
15:9 15:9 15:14 15:27 16:6 16:12 16:24 17:4 17:5 17:5 17:5 18:3 18:26 18:28
18:30 19:16 19:16 19:17 19:17 19:17-19 19:18 20:6 20:22 21:29 21:31 21:31 22:1
22:4 22:14 22:23 22:37 22:37-39 23:4 23:23 23:25 24:20 24:49 25:21 25:36 26:26
26:41 26:73 27:51 28:18

Mark

1:15 1:15 1:15 1:35 1:38 1:39 3:3-5 3:29 4:16 4:17 4:24 4:26-28 6:21 6:22 9:24
9:24 10:17 10:49 15:34 15:34 15:42 16 16 16 16:2 16:9 16:15 16:15 16:15 16:15
16:16 16:16 16:16

Luke

1:53 1:58 1:59 1:59 1:71-75 1:74 1:74 1:74 1:74 1:75 1:75 2:30 2:31 5:8 6:35
7:30 7:37-47 7:47 8:15 9:55 10:17-22 10:19 10:20 10:25-28 10:25-28 10:28 11:21
11:22 11:41 11:42 12:9 12:29 12:29 13:3 13:16 14:18-20 15:16 15:21 16 16:23

17:5 18:9 18:9-11 18:11 18:12-14 18:13 21:34 22:19 22:62 23:54 24:14 24:17
24:47

John

1:3 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:12 1:13 1:16 1:29 2:4 2:19 2:21 3:14 3:15
3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16-18 3:17 3:18 3:18 3:18
3:19 3:27 3:27 3:31 3:33 3:35 3:36 4:6 4:14 4:24 4:24 5:12 5:22 5:22 5:24 5:39
5:42 5:45 5:46 6:12 6:28 6:29 6:29 6:32 6:35 6:37 6:37 6:44 6:44 6:45 6:47
7:3 7:18 8:36 8:56 8:56 9:27 10:15 10:15 10:20 11:26 12:1 12:23 12:30 12:32
12:47 12:47 12:48 14:6 14:6 14:6 14:11 14:15 14:15 14:19 14:19 14:21 14:26
15:5 15:8 15:16 17 17:6 17:17 17:20 17:21 19:3 20:19 20:26 20:31

Acts

2:1 2:21 2:22 2:37 2:38 2:42 3:22 3:22 3:22 4:12 4:12 4:12 4:12 5:31 6:11 6:13
7:37 7:45 8:6 8:30 8:37 8:38 10:33 11:33 12:22 13:14 13:15 13:38 13:38 13:39
13:39 13:39 13:44 15:1 15:9 15:9 15:11 15:11 15:11 16:28 16:30 16:31 16:31
16:31 16:31 16:31 17:11 17:11 17:11 17:23 17:31 20:7 20:9 20:28 20:32 21:20
23:8 25:2 26:18 26:18 26:18 26:18

Romans

1:1 1:2 1:2 1:8 1:16 1:17 1:19 1:19 1:20 1:20 1:21 1:21 1:21 2:1 2:2 2:4 2:7
2:14 2:15 2:17 2:24 2:24 2:28 2:29 3 3:2 3:8 3:8 3:9 3:10 3:18 3:19 3:19 3:19
3:19 3:19 3:19 3:19 3:19 3:20 3:22 3:24 3:27 3:27 3:27 3:27 3:27 3:27 3:31 3:31
3:31 3:31 4:2 4:3 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:14 4:15 4:15 4:16 4:16 4:24 4:25 4:48 5:1 5:5
5:6 5:8 5:9 5:9 5:10 5:10 5:12 5:12 5:12 5:12 5:13 5:14 5:14 5:14 5:15 5:20
6:2 6:7 6:7 6:10 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14 6:14
6:14 6:23 7 7 7:1-6 7:2 7:4 7:4 7:4 7:4 7:4 7:4 7:4 7:4-6 7:5 7:6 7:6 7:7 7:9 7:10
7:12 7:13 7:14 7:15 7:19 7:24 8 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:1 8:3 8:3
8:3 8:4 8:10 8:13 8:13 8:15 8:15 8:15 8:16 8:30 8:33 8:33 8:33-39 8:34 8:34
8:34 9 9:4 9:10 9:20 9:31 9:32 10:3 10:4 10:4 10:5 10:5 10:5 10:5 10:5 10:9
10:9 10:13 10:16 10:17 10:17 11:6 11:6 11:15 11:29 11:29 11:33 11:34 11:36
12 12:2 12:10 12:12 12:12 12:14 12:17 13:3 13:4 13:4 13:4 13:8-10 13:9 14:13
14:15 14:15 14:23 15:30 15:31 16 16:4 16:27

1 Corinthians

1:2 1:2 1:23 1:30 1:30 1:30 1:30 1:31 2:2 2:4 3:21 4:1 4:7 4:21 5:2 5:7 6:9
6:17 7:5 7:10 7:36 7:38 9:16 9:21 9:21 9:31 10:1 10:2 10:2 10:6 10:8 10:13
10:14 10:16 11:26 11:28 11:30 11:30 11:32 13:5-7 13:7 13:9 13:9 13:9 14:15
14:15 14:15 14:16 15:10 15:20 15:22 15:26 15:44 15:47 15:47 15:56 15:56 15:56
15:57 15:66 16:2 16:22

2 Corinthians

1:1 1:9 1:23 2:16 3 3:5 3:6-9 3:7 3:9 3:13 3:17 4:13 4:13 4:16 5 5:1-6 5:14
5:19 5:19 5:19 5:20 5:20 5:21 5:21 5:21 5:21 6:14 7:1 7:11 11:2 12:11 12:14
13:5 13:5 13:5 13:5 13:5

Galatians

1:4 1:6 1:7 1:20 1:24 2 2:16 2:19 2:19 2:19 2:20 2:20 2:20 2:20 2:20 2:20
2:20 3:2 3:6 3:7 3:8 3:8 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10
3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:10 3:11 3:12 3:12 3:12 3:13 3:13 3:13 3:13
3:13 3:13 3:16 3:17 3:17 3:18 3:18 3:19 3:19 3:19 3:21-24 3:24 4 4:1-3 4:3
4:4 4:4 4:4 4:4 4:4 4:4 4:4 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:5 4:15 4:18 4:21 4:24 4:24
4:24 4:24 4:24 4:30 5:1 5:3 5:4 5:6 5:13 5:17 5:18 6:2 6:2 6:2 6:6

Ephesians

1:3-5 1:4 1:4 1:4 1:4 1:6 1:13 2 2:3 2:3 2:3 2:6 2:8 2:10 2:17 3:17 4:20 4:21
4:24 4:29 4:31 4:31 4:31 4:32 5:1 5:2 5:3 5:4 5:5 5:6 5:21 5:22 5:22 5:23 5:25
5:25 5:25 5:33 6:1 6:2 6:4 6:5

Philippians

1:21-23 1:23 1:27 1:27 1:27 3:6 3:7-9 3:9 3:9 3:9 3:12 3:19 4:9

Colossians

1:3 1:14 1:19 1:20 1:21 1:23 1:23 2:6 2:6 2:6 2:9 2:14 2:14 2:14 2:14 2:14
2:14 2:23 3:5 3:10 3:12 3:13 3:16 3:16 3:16 3:16-24 3:18-22 3:19 3:22 3:24 4:6
1496

1 Thessalonians

1:3 1:10 2:13 2:13 2:13 2:13 4:3 4:5 4:9 4:15 5:17 5:18

2 Thessalonians

1:6 1:8 1:11 2:12 2:13

1 Timothy

1:5 1:7 1:8 1:8 1:9 1:13 1:15 1:15 2:2 2:6 2:6 2:8 2:8 2:9 2:9 2:12 2:12 2:12
3:16 4:3 4:8 5:8 5:8 5:8 5:17 5:18 6:6-8 6:9

2 Timothy

1:7 1:9 1:9 1:12 2:1 2:10 3:5 3:5 3:6 3:7

Titus

2:1 2:4 2:5 2:10 2:11 2:12 2:14 3:1 3:2 3:4 3:5 3:5 3:5 3:5 3:8 3:8 3:9

Philemon

1:1 1:7

Hebrews

1:2 2:3 2:9 2:14 2:15 2:15 4:1 4:1 4:2 4:2 4:2 4:3 4:13 4:16 6:2 6:6 6:9 6:16
7:1-3 7:1-4 7:19 7:22 7:25 7:25 8:8 8:22 9:11 9:14 9:14 9:14 9:19 9:20 9:22
9:24 9:26 10:1 10:2 10:5-7 10:8 10:16 10:22 10:22 11:4 11:6 11:6 11:6 11:6
11:6 11:9 11:10 11:13 11:13 11:26 11:26 11:27 12:1 12:2 12:9 12:18 12:19 12:20

12:22 12:23 12:23 12:24 12:28 12:28 12:28 12:29 13:5 13:5 13:5 13:8 13:17
13:20 13:21 22:21

James

1:5 1:6 1:17 1:17 1:19 1:22 2:1 2:2 2:10 3:2 4:8 5:4 5:12 5:13 5:13 5:16

1 Peter

1:2 1:6 1:8 1:9 1:17 1:19 2:2 2:13 2:17 2:18 2:18 2:20 3:1 3:2 3:6 3:7 3:7 3:9
3:18 3:19 3:21 4:8 5:2 5:6

2 Peter

1:10 2:17 2:19

1 John

1:8 1:8 1:17 3:4 3:6 3:6 3:7 3:9 3:10 3:15 3:19 3:23 3:23 4:13 4:16 4:18 4:18
4:19 4:19 4:19 5:1 5:3 5:10 5:10 5:11 5:11 5:11 5:11 5:12 5:13 5:16 5:21

2 John

1:1

3 John

1:1

Jude

1:3 1:4 1:4

Revelation

1:3 1:3 1:10 2:23 3:14 3:15 3:16 3:19 3:20 13:8 19:10 22:17 22:17 22:17 22:17